

МИНИСТЕРСТВО ЗДРАВООХРАНЕНИЯ И СОЦИАЛЬНОГО РАЗВИТИЯ
ВОЛГОГРАДСКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ МЕДИЦИНСКИЙ
УНИВЕРСИТЕТ
Кафедра иностранных языков с курсом латинского языка

Жура В.В., Мартинсон Ж.С., Протопопова Н.В., Черватюк Н.В., Губа Т.И.
**ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК И ОСНОВЫ МЕДИЦИНСКОЙ
ТЕРМИНОЛОГИИ**
для иностранных студентов
(на английском языке)

*Рекомендуется Учебно-методическим объединением по медицинскому и
фармацевтическому образованию вузов России в качестве учебного пособия
для студентов высших медицинских учебных заведений*

Волгоград 2009

УДК 807.1: 61.001.4 (075)

Рекомендовано к печати ЦМС Волгоградского государственного медицинского университета.

Рецензенты: зав. каф. иностранных языков Самарского государственного медицинского университета, профессор, доктор филологических наук Е. В. Бекишева
зав. каф. иностранных языков Саратовского государственного медицинского университета, доцент, кандидат социологических наук Е.В. Чернышкова

ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК И ОСНОВЫ МЕДИЦИНСКОЙ ТЕРМИНОЛОГИИ: УЧЕБНОЕ ПОСОБИЕ ПО ЛАТИНСКОМУ ЯЗЫКУ И ОСНОВАМ МЕДИЦИНСКОЙ ТЕРМИНОЛОГИИ (на английском языке) для иностранных студентов медицинских вузов, обучающихся по специальности «Лечебное дело» и «Стоматология». – Волгоград: ВолГМУ, 2009. - 334 с.

Учебное пособие разработано в Волгоградском государственном медицинском университете на кафедре иностранных языков с курсом латинского языка. Предназначено для иностранных студентов, проходящих обучение на лечебном и стоматологическом факультетах на языке-посреднике (английском). Пособие состоит из трех больших разделов: анатомическая терминология, клиническая терминология и фармацевтическая терминология. Структура каждого раздела зависит от специфики изучаемого в нем языкового материала.

Составители:

Жура Виктория Валентиновна – д. ф. н., доцент, зав. кафедрой иностранных языков с курсом латинского языка Волгоградского государственного медицинского университета.

Мартинсон Жанна Сергеевна – к. соц. н., доцент кафедры иностранных языков с курсом латинского языка Волгоградского государственного медицинского университета.

Протопопова Наталья Владиленовна – ст. преподаватель кафедры иностранных языков с курсом латинского языка Волгоградского государственного медицинского университета.

Черватюк Надежда Владимировна – ст. преподаватель кафедры иностранных языков с курсом латинского языка Волгоградского государственного медицинского университета.

Губа Татьяна Ивановна – к.соц.н., доцент кафедры иностранных языков с курсом латинского языка Волгоградского государственного медицинского университета.

INTRODUCTION

The professionally oriented course *The Basics of Latin Medical Terminology* is an integral part of training medical students of any speciality. Mastering this course in the first year of medical education helps to educate a doctor well versed in professional terminology. The need to master a set of professional terms underlies the design and content of the present textbook. Elements of Latin grammar are presented in consistency with the needs of teaching basic medical terminology. Students are taught the knowledge and skills that are mainly required for *nomination* – naming special medical and biological notions with Latin terms.

The Basics of Latin Medical Terminology consists of three main sections: Anatomical Terms, Clinical Terms and Pharmaceutical Terms. Each section is structured as a succession of Units. The structure of units in different sections varies depending on the peculiarities of the presented information.

The first section *Anatomical Terms* includes 11 units. Each unit contains a Grammar Commentary explaining basic points of Latin grammar. The Grammar Commentary highlights the differences in the nature of English and Latin (the former being an analytic language, the latter – a synthetic language); it gives some basic information on building both English and Latin medical terms and the ways of correlating them. There are also comments on the meaning of most common Latin prefixes, the process of substantivation of adjectives, the names of intestines and coats, the formation of adjective compounds and muscle nominations. The Grammar Commentary is followed by exercises to develop practical skills in reading, accenting syllables, doing English-Latin and back translation of terms. Units end with vocabulary extensions listing anatomy terms of frequent occurrence. The Latin terms are supplied with both English and Russian equivalents. The English section may contain several variants of translation. Some of them belong to what P. Newmark calls an *academic* layer of medical vocabulary. Others may be *professional* words, i. e. formal words used by experts

in their practice. If a word is given in parentheses it means that it is either a descriptive term or a *popular* word which is not part-and-parcel of medical vocabulary. The first English equivalent is also transcribed.

The second section deals with clinical terms of Greek origin and is arranged in 8 units. Clinical terms are those signifying various aspects of pathological, diagnostic and therapeutic processes. The second section is structured as a succession of Vocabulary Extensions listing the most common clinical terms and Greek stems for deriving new words as well as Greek and Latin prefixes which are provided with exercises for practicing the words. The continuity between the Greek, Latin, English and Russian languages is established by presenting Latin, English and Russian stems alongside with Greek stems. The practical exercises are intended to develop the skills of interpreting and building Greek clinical terms.

The third section consists of 7 units. Each unit starts with a brief commentary on either linguistic or extralinguistic peculiarities of the categories underlying the theory and practice of pharmacy and pharmacology. It is followed by a Vocabulary Extension which may contain information about units used in generic drug names, common dosage forms, medicinal agents and herbs, chemical elements, acids, salts and ethers as well as list phrases commonly used in prescriptions. The units also include a number of exercises to practice vocabulary items and prescriptions in English to be translated into Latin.

Brief Historical Background of Latin Medical Vocabulary Development

Latin has been a means of professional communication in the field of medicine for many years. What is nowadays called Latin medical terminology actually consists of the words of Latin and Greek origin. These were the languages spoken in ancient Greece and Rome. The modern Latin language had its origin in ancient Greece. Celebrated Greek doctors and scientists described the most important parts of human body and internal organs in their papers. When the times of Roman domination started, Latin (the language of Romans) was greatly affected by Greek. Many Greek medical terms were borrowed by Latin; new words were coined according to the patterns used in Greek.

In the Middle Ages and the Renaissance period Latin was the formal language of science. All medical papers were written in Latin, scientific symposiums were conducted in Latin. Nowadays medical Latin is still of great importance as it is a universally recognized means of professional communication in the field of medicine.

The Latin Language (*lingua Latina*) belongs to the Italic group of Indo-European Languages. Originally, it was the language of the latines (*latini*), a tribe which inhabited the central part of modern Italy, the citizens of ancient Rome as well as italic tribes which were under Roman domination by 100 A.D.

Latin, the language of the ancient Romans, was properly, as its name implies, the language spoken in the plain of Latium, lying south of the Tiber, which was the first territory occupied and governed by the Romans. It is a descendant of an early form of speech commonly called Indo-European (by some Indo-Germanic), from which are also descended most of the important languages now in use in Europe, including among others English, German, the Slavic and the Celtic languages, and further some now or formerly spoken in Asia, as Sanskrit, Persian, Armenian. Greek likewise belongs to the same family. The Romance (or Romanic) languages, of which the most important are Italian, French, Provencal, Spanish, Portuguese, and Roumanian, are modern descendants

of spoken Latin. The earliest known forms of Latin are preserved in a few inscriptions. These increase in number as we approach the time when the language began to be used in literature, that is, about B.C. 250. It is the comparatively stable language of the classical period (B.C. 80-A.D.14) that is ordinarily meant when we speak of Latin, and it is mainly this that is described in this manual.

SECTION I

ANATOMICAL TERMS

UNIT 1

PHONETICS

The Latin Alphabet. Classification of sounds. Orthography. Pronunciation

The Latin alphabet is the same as the English (which is in fact borrowed from it) except that it does not contain J, U, and W. The Latin alphabet was borrowed in very early times from a Greek alphabet (though not from that most familiar to us) and did not at first contain the letters G and Y. It consisted of capital letters only, and the small letters with which we are familiar did not come into general use until the close of the eighth century of our era.

The Latin names of the consonants were as follows: B, be (pronounced bay); C, ce (pronounced *kay*); D, de (day); F, ef; G, ge (*gay*); H, ha; K, ka; L, el; M, em; N, en; P, pe (*pay*); Q, qu (*koo*); R, er; S, es; T, te (*tay*); X, ix; Z, zeta (the Greek name, pronounced *dzayta*). The sound of each vowel was used as its name. The character C originally meant G, a value always retained in the abbreviations C. and Cn. In early Latin C came also to be used for K, and K disappeared except in a few words, as Kal. (*Kalendae*). Thus there was no distinction in writing between the sounds of g and k. Later this defect was remedied by forming (from C) the new character G. This took the alphabetic place formerly occupied by Z, which had gone out of use.

In Cicero's time, Y (originally a form of V) and Z were introduced from the ordinary Greek alphabet to represent sounds in words derived from the Greek, and they were put at the end of the Latin alphabet. I and V were used both as vowels and as consonants. V originally denoted the vowel sound u (*oo*), and F stood for the sound of the English consonant w. When F acquired the value of our f, V came to be used for the sound of w as well as for the vowel u.

Classification of Sounds

The simple Vowels are a, e, i, o, u, y.

The Diphthongs are ae, au, ei, eu, oe, ui, and, in early Latin, ai, oi, ou. In the diphthongs both vowel sounds are heard, one following the other in the same syllable.

Consonants are either voiced (sonant) or voiceless (surd). Voiced consonants are pronounced with the same vocal murmur that is heard in vowels; voiceless consonants lack this murmur.

1. The voiced consonants are b, d, g, l, r, m, n, z, consonant i (j), v.
2. The voiceless consonants are p, t, c (k, q), f, h, s, x.

Consonants are classified in the following way:

Voiced (mediae) b d g

Mutes Voiceless (tenues) p t c (k, q)

Aspirates ph th ch

Nasals m n (before c, g, q)

Liquids l, r

Fricatives (Spirants) fs, z

Sibilants s, z

Semivowels u (v), j

Double consonants are x (= cs) and z (= dz); h is merely a breathing.

1. Mutes are pronounced by blocking entirely, for an instant, the passage of the breath through the mouth, and then allowing it to escape with an explosion (distinctly heard before a following vowel). Between the explosion and the vowel there may be a slight puff of breath (h), as in the Aspirates (ph, th, ch).
2. Labials are pronounced with the lips, or lips and teeth.
3. Dentals (sometimes called Linguals) are pronounced with the tip of the tongue touching or approaching the upper front teeth.

4. Palatals are pronounced with a part of the upper surface of the tongue touching or approaching the palate.
5. Fricatives (or Spirants) are consonants in which the breath passes continuously through the mouth with audible friction.
6. Nasals are like voiced mutes, except that the mouth remains closed and the breath passes through the nose.

The vowels *i* and *u* serve as consonants when pronounced rapidly before a vowel so as to stand in the same syllable. Consonant *i* has the sound of English consonant *y*; consonant *u* (*v*) that of English consonant *w*.

Consonants *i* (*j*) and *u* (*v*) are sometimes called Semivowels.

NOTE 1. The Latin alphabet did not distinguish between the vowel and consonant sounds of *i* (*j*) and *u* (*v*), but used each letter (*I* and *V*) with a double value. In modern books *i* and *u* are often used for the vowel sounds, *j* and *v* for the consonant sounds; but in printing in capitals *J* and *U* are avoided. The characters *J* and *U* are only slight modifications of the characters *I* and *V*. The ordinary English sounds of *j* and *v* did not exist in classical Latin, but consonant *u* perhaps approached English *v* in the pronunciation of some persons.

NOTE 2. In the combinations *qu*, *gu*, and sometimes *su*, *u* seems to be the consonant *w*. Thus, *aqua*, *anguis* (compare English *quart*, *anguish*, *suave*). In these combinations, however, *u* is reckoned neither as a vowel nor as a consonant.

Orthography

Latin spelling varied somewhat with the changes in the language and was never absolutely settled in all details. Thus, we find *lubet* as earlier, and *libet* as later forms. Other variations are *optumus* and *optimus*, *gerundus* and *gerendus*. The spelling of the first century of our era, known chiefly from inscriptions, is tolerably uniform, and is commonly used in modern editions of the classics.

After v (consonant u), o was anciently used instead of u (*voltus*, *servos*), and this spelling was not entirely given up until the middle of the first century of our era. The older quo became cu in the Augustan period; in the second century of our era the spelling quu established itself in some words: *cum*, older *quom*; *equos*, *ecus*, later *equus*; *sequontur*, *secuntur*, later *sequuntur*; similarly *exstinguont*, *exstingunt*, later *exstinguunt*.

NOTE. In most modern editions the spelling *quu* is adopted, except in *cum*.

Between consonant i and a preceding a, e, o, or u, an i was developed as a transient sound, thus producing a diphthong ai, ei, etc., before the consonant i. In such cases but one i was written: as, *aio* (for ai-io), *maius* (for *mai-ius), *peius* (for *pei-ius).

NOTE. Some variations are due to later changes in Latin itself, and these are not now recognized in classical texts.

1. Unaccented ti and ci, when followed by a vowel, came to be pronounced alike.
2. The sound of h was after a time lost and hence this letter was often omitted or mistakenly written (as, *humor* for *umor*).
3. The diphthong *ae* early in the time of the Empire acquired the value of long open *e* (about like English *e* in *there*), and similarly *oe* after a time became a long close *e* (about like the English *ey* in *they*); and so both were often confused in spelling with *e*: as, *coena* or *caena* for the correct form.

Pronunciation

The so-called Roman Pronunciation of Latin aims to represent approximately the pronunciation of classical times.

VOWELS: *a* as in *father*; *e* as in *eh?* *e* as in *net*; *i* as in *machine* .

DIPHTHONGS: *ae* like *ay*; *ei* as in *eight*; *oe* like *oy* in *boy*; *eu* as *eh'oo*; *au* like *ow* in *now*; *ui* as *oo'ee*.

CONSONANTS are the same as in English, except that c and g are as in *come*, *get*, never as in *city*, *gem*; s as in *sea*, *lips*, never as in *ease*. Consonant i is like y in *young*; v (consonant u) like w in *wing*. Nasalization of the preceding vowel, which was also lengthened and final m in an unaccented syllable probably had a similar nasalizing effect on the preceding vowel. Ph, th, ch, are properly like p, t, k, followed by h (which may, for convenience, be neglected); but ph probably became like (or nearly like) f soon after the classical period, and may be so pronounced to distinguish it from p. Z is as dz in *adze*. Bs is like ps; bt is like pt. NOTE. Latin is sometimes pronounced with the ordinary English sounds of the letters. The English pronunciation should be used in Roman names occurring in English (as, Julius Caesar); and in familiar quotations, as, *e pluribus unum*; *viva voce*; *vice versa*; *a fortiori*; *veni, vidi, vici*, etc.

LATIN ALPHABET

Letter	Name and pronunciation	Letter	Name and pronunciation
Aa	<i>a as in 'father'</i>	Nn	<i>en</i>
Bb	<i>bay</i>	Oo	<i>o as in 'four'</i>
Cc	<i>kay</i>	Pp	<i>pay</i>
Dd	<i>day</i>	Qq	<i>koo</i>
Ee	<i>e as in 'pet'</i>	Rr	<i>er</i>
Ff	<i>ef</i>	Ss	<i>es</i>
Gg	<i>gay</i>	Tt	<i>tay</i>
Hh	<i>ha</i>	Uu	<i>oo</i>
Ii	<i>i as in 'it'</i>	Vv	<i>vee</i>
Kk	<i>ka</i>	Xx	<i>ix</i>
Ll	<i>el</i>	Yy	<i>ipsilon</i>
Mm	<i>em</i>	Zz	<i>dzayta</i>

EXERCISES

1. Read aloud paying attention to the pronunciation of the vowels *a, o, u* and consonants *h, g, r*:

hepar	liver	печень
hilus	hilum, hilus	ворота
ala	wing	крыло
minor	lesser	малый
arteria	artery	артерия
lamina	lamina, plate	пластинка
abdomen	abdomen, belly	живот
fovea	depression, pit	ямка
fibula	calf-bone, peroneal bone	малоберцовая кость
femur	thigh-bone, thigh	бедро
linea aspera	rough line	шероховатая поверхность
palma	palm	ладонь
infundibulum	funnel	воронка
regio	region, area	область
inferior	inferior, lower	нижний
anterior	anterior, front	передний
membrana	membrane	перепонка
manubrium sterni	manubrium of breastbone	рукоятка грудины
vena	vein	вена
humerus	shoulder bone	плечевая кость
gingiva	gum	десна
ulna	elbow bone	локтевая кость
uvula	uvula	язычок
apertura	aperture, hole, orifice	апертура
atlas	atlas (I cervical vertebra)	атлант
ampulla	ampoule	ампула
frontalis	frontal	лобный
tibia	tibia, shin bone	большеберцовая кость

2. Read and explain the rules of pronouncing letters *"i"* and *"j"*:

i [i] j [j]

intestinum	intestine, bowel, gut	кишка
infraspinalis	infraspinal	подостный
iater	physician	врач
paries inferior	inferior wall	нижняя стенка

jugum	ridge, eminence	возвышение
jugularis	jugular	ярёмный
fossa infratemporalis	infratemporal depression	подвисочная ямка
internus	inner, internal	внутренний
ligamentum	ligament	связка
junctura	junction	соединение
iliacus	iliac	подвздошный
canalis palatinus major	greater palatal duct	большой небный канал
jejunum	jejunum	тощая кишка
insula	island	островок
tuberculum majus (maius)	greater tubercle	малый бугорок

3. *Read and explain the rules of pronouncing letter "c":*

c [ts] before - e, i, y

c [k] before - a, o, u

- ae, oe

- all consonants

- at the end of the word

caput	head	голова
collum	neck	шея
cavitas	cavity, hollow, pit	полость
occiput	back of the head, hind head	затылок
truncus	trunk	туловище
facies	face, surface	поверхность
caecus	blind	слепой
cerebrum	cerebrum, brain	большой мозг
clavicularis	clavicular	ключичный
scapula	shoulder blade	лопатка
accessorius	additional, accessory	добавочный
musculus	muscle	мышца
cementum	cement	цемент
cavum cranii	skull cavity	полость черепа
lacrimalis	lacrimal	слёзный
cartilago	cartilage, gristle	хрящ
condylus	condyle	нарост, мыщелок
biceps	biceps (muscle)	двуглавая мышца
cellula	cell	клетка
corpus	body	тело
sulcus palatinus	palatal shallow/furrow	нёбная борозда
sulci palatini	palatal furrows	нёбные борозды
vertebrae cervicales	cervical vertebrae	шейные позвонки
vertebrae sacrales	sacral vertebrae	крестцовые позвонки
os coccygis	coccygeal bone, coccyx	копчиковая кость

bucca	cheek	щека
buccae	cheeks	щёки

4. Read paying attention to the pronunciation of the letters "ss" and "s":

s [s]

ss [s]

s [z] - between vowels

- between vowel and a consonant 'm' or 'n' in the words of Greek origin

fossa	depression, pit, hollow	ямка
fissura	fissure, cleft, crack	щель
incisura	incisure, notch	вырезка
mesenterium	mesentery	брыжейка
impressio	impression	вдавление
sinus	sinus, cavity	синус, пазуха
mucosus	mucous	слизистый
sigmoideus	sigmoid	сигмовидный
nasolacrimalis	nasolacrimal	носолезный
septum nasi	partition of the nose	перегородка носа
sulcus sinus transversi	furrow of transverse sinus	борозда поперечной пазухи
canalis hypoglossalis	sublingual duct	подъязычный канал
sternum	breastbone	грудина
circulus venosus	venous circle	венозный круг
processus styloideus	styloid process	шиловидный отросток
basis cranii	base of the skull	основание черепа
segmentum	segment	сегмент
pars petrosa	petrous part	каменистая часть
chiasma	decussation, crossing	перекрест
fissura	fissure, cleft, groove	щель
dens incisivus	incisor	резцовый зуб
platysma	subcutaneous muscle	подкожная мышца шеи
mesogastrium	mesogastrium	средняя часть живота

5. Read paying attention to the pronunciation of the letters "x" and "z":

x [ks]

z [z] exception: *Zincum, influenza*

flexio	flexion, bending	сгибание
axis	axis (II cervical vertebra)	ось, второй шейный позвонок
externus	external	наружный
maxillaris	maxillary	верхнечелюстной

fornix	vault, arch	свод
index	forefinger	указательный палец
punctum fixum	fixed point	точка прикрепления
plexus	plexus	сплетение
larynx	larynx	гортань
dexter	right	правый
maxilla	upper jaw	верхняя челюсть
circumflexus	circumflex, bending around	оггибающий
radix	root, radix	корень
extremitas	1. extremity, limb 2. end	конец
os coxae	hip bone	тазовая кость
stratum zonale	zonal layer	поясной слой
zygomaticus	zygomatic	скуловой
trapezius	trapeziform	трапециевидный
zona orbicularis	orbicular zone	круговая зона
vena azygos	azygos vein	непарная вена

6. Read paying attention to the pronunciation of the diphthongs :

ae [e]	aë [ae]
oe [e]	oë [oe]
au [au]	eu [eu]

vertebrae	vertebrae	позвонки
costae	ribs	ребра
caecus	blind	слепой
pleura	pleural membrane	плевра
auricularis	auricular	ушной
corpus vesicae felleae	body of the gallbladder	тело желчного пузыря
aponeurosis	aponeurosis, sheath	апоневроз
pseudomembrana	false membrane	ложная мембрана
uropoëticus	uropoetic	мочеобразующий
oedema	dropsy, hydrops	отёк
diploë	diploe	диплоэ
corpus vesicae urinariae	body of urinary bladder	тело мочевого пузыря
aër	air	воздух
auris	ear	ухо
auricula	auricle	ушная раковина
haema	blood	кровь
oesophagus	gullet	пищевод
haematopoëticus	haematopoetic	кроветворный
dyspnoë	shortness of breath	одышка
regio glutaеа	gluteal area	ягодичная область
peronaeus	peroneal, fibular	малоберцовый

neurocranium	cerebral skull	мозговой череп
caudalis	caudal	хвостовой

7. Read paying attention to the pronunciation of the letters "qu" and "ngu":

qu [kv] ngu [ngv] before vowels
[ngu] before consonants

squama occipitalis	occipital scale	затылочная чешуя
lamina quadrigemina	tetrahedral plate	четырёхгранная пластинка
aqu(a)eductus	aqueduct, conduit	акведук
quadratus	square	квадратный
vertebra quinta	the fifth vertebra	пятый позвонок
linea obliqua	oblique line	косая линия
lingua	tongue	язык
lingula	uvula	язычок
inguinalis	inguinal	паховый
unguis	nail	ноготь
squamosus	scaly	чешуйчатый
os triquetrum	triangular bone	трёхгранная кость
sublingualis	sublingual	подъязычный
angulus	corner; angle	угол
sanguis	blood	кровь
sanguineus	sanguineous	кровеносный

8. Read paying attention to the pronunciation of the letters "ti":

ti [tsi] - before vowels
[ti] - after consonants "x" and "s"

adductio	adduction	приведение
abductio	abduction	отведение
periodontium	peridental membrane	периодонт
supinatio	supination	супинация (поворот опущенной руки ладонью кнаружи)
articulatio	articulation, joint	сустав
eminentia	eminence	возвышение
tibia	shin bone	большеберцовая кость
ostium	entrance	отверстие, вход
spatia intercostalia	intercostal spaces	межрёберные промежутки
digestio	digestion	пищеварение
distantia trochanterica	trochanteric distance	расстояние между двумя

substantia spongiosa	spongy substance	вертелами
foramina nutricia	nutritious holes	губчатое вещество
mixtio	mixture	питательные отверстия
masticatio	mastication	смесь
intestinum	intestine	жевание
		кишка

9. Read paying attention to the pronunciation of the digraphs and combinations of letters:

ch [h]	ph [f]
rh [r]	th [t]

nucha	neck	выя (шея)
thyroideus	thyroid	щитовидный
thorax	chest	грудная клетка
linea nuchae superior	superior cervical line	верхняя выйная линия
tuberculum pharyngeum	pharyngeal tubercle	глоточный бугорок
os sphenoidale	wedge-shaped bone	клиновидная кость
fossa hypophysialis	hypophyseal hollow	гипофизарная ямка
labyrinthus ethmoidalis	ethmoidal labyrinth	решетчатый лабиринт
kyphosis	cyphosis	кифоз
hemispherium	hemisphere	полушарие
sectiones hypothalami	sections of hypothalamus	разрезы гипоталамуса
splanchnologia	splanchnology	спланхнология
sphincter	sphincter (muscle)	сфинктер
bronchus	bronchus	бронх
ductus choledochus	common bile duct	общий желчный проток
os scaphoideum	(scaphoid) boat-shaped bone	ладьевидная кость
ductus thoracicus	thoracic duct	грудной проток
os ischii	ischial bone	седалищная кость
incisura ischiadica major	greater sciatic notch	большая седалищная вырезка
vena saphena	subcutaneous vein	подкожная вена
nodus lymphaticus	lymph node	лимфатический узел
arteria ophthalmica	ophthalmic artery	глазная артерия

10. Read paying attention to the Greek prefixes and roots with the letter 'y':

systema	system	система
syndesmosis	syndesmosis (junction of bones with the help of fibrous connective tissue)	синдесмоз (соединение костей при помощи волокнистой соединительной ткани)
synostosis	synostosis (static junction of bones with the help of	синостоз (неподвижное соединение костей при

hypoglossus	bone tissue)	помощи костной ткани)
hypothalamus	hypoglossal, sublingual	подъязычный
systole	hypothalamus	гипоталамус, подбугорье
	systole (heartbeat, cardiac	систола (ритмическое
	beating)	сокращение сердца)
myologia	myology (study of	миология (учение о
	muscles)	мышцах)
apophysis	apophysis (bone process)	апофиз (отросток)
hypophysis	hypophysis (lower	гипофиз (нижний
	appendage of the brain)	придаток мозга)
hypogastrium	hypogastrium,	подчревьё
	hypogastric region (lower	
	region of the abdomen)	

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 1

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
ála	ala, wing	[ˈeɪlə]	крыло
anterior	anterior, front	[ænˈti riə]	передний
arcus	arch (arc)	[a:t]	дуга
caput	head (also of bones, internal organs)	[hed]	голова, головка (костей, внутренних органов)
cerebralis	cerebral	[ˈserəbrəl]	мозговой, относящийся к головному мозгу
collum	neck (of bones, internal organs)	[nek]	шея, шейка (костей, внутренних органов)
columna	column	[ˈkɒləm]	столб
corpus	body	[ˈbɒdi]	телo
cranium	cranium, skull	[ˈkreɪniəm] [skʌl]	череп
cranialis	cranial	[ˈkreɪniəl]	черепной
crista	crista, crest (ridge)	[ˈkristə]	гребень
dexter	dexter, right	[ˈdekstə]	правый
distalis	distal (distant)	[ˈdistəl]	дистальный, более удаленный от центра
dorsum	dorsum, the back	[do:səm]	спина, спинка; тыл
dorsalis	dorsal (back)	[ˈdo:səl]	дорсальный, спинной, тыльный
externus	external	[ɪkˈstɜːnl]	наружный
foramen	foramen (hole, opening)	[fou ˈreɪmən]	отверстие
homo	human (human being, man)	[ˈhju:mən]	человек
horizontalis	horizontal	[ˌhɒriˈzɒntl]	горизонтальный
inferior	inferior, lower	[ɪnˈfɪəriə]	нижний
internus	internal	[ɪnˈtɜːnl]	внутренний
lateralis	lateral (sidelong)	[ˈlætərəl]	латеральный, боковой
major	larger, greater	[ˈmeɪdʒə]	большой
medialis	medial	[ˈmi:diəl]	медиальный
medianus	median	[ˈmi:diən]	срединный
medius	middle	[ˈmi:dl]	средний
minor	lesser, smaller	[ˈlesə]	малый
os	bone	[baʊn]	кость

pars	part	[pa:t]	часть
posterior	posterior (located behind or at the back)	[po'stiəriə]	задний
profundus	profound, deep	[prə'faund]	глубокий
proximalis	proximal, (closest / nearest to the body)	['proksiməl]	проксимальный, ближайший к туловищу
sinister	left	[left]	левый
skeleton	skeleton	['skeliton]	скелет
superficialis	superficial (located on the surface)	[,su:pə'fi:l]	поверхностный
superior	superior, upper	[su:'piəriə]	верхний
thorax	chest	['θo:ræks]	грудная клетка
thoracicus	thoracic	[θo:'ræsik]	грудной
truncus	trunk	[trʌŋk]	туловище, ствол
ventralis	ventral (front)	['ventrəl]	вентральный (передний)
vertebra	vertebra (a section of the backbone)	['vɜ:tibrə]	позвонок
vertebralis	vertebral	['vɜ:tibrəl]	позвоночный

UNIT 2

SYLLABLES, ACCENT

Syllables

Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. In the division of words into syllables a single consonant (including consonant *i* and *v*) between two vowels is written and pronounced with the following vowel. Doubled consonants are separated.

NOTE 1. Some extend the rule for single consonants to any consonant group (as *sp*, *st*, *gn*) that can begin a word.

NOTE 2. A syllable ending with a vowel or diphthong is called open: all others are called close. Thus in *pa-ter* the first syllable is open, the second close. In compounds the parts are separated: *ab-est*, *dis-cern*, *du-plex*.

The Quantity of a Vowel or a Syllable is the time occupied in pronouncing it. Two degrees of Quantity are recognized, long and short. In syllables, quantity is measured from the beginning of the vowel or diphthong to the end of the syllable. Vowels are either long or short by nature, and are pronounced accordingly.

A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short: as in *via*, *nihil*. A diphthong is long: as in *foedus*. So, also, a vowel derived from a diphthong. A vowel formed by contraction is long. A vowel before *ns*, *nf*, *gn*, is long.

NOTE. But the quantity of the vowel before *gn* is not certain in all cases. A vowel before *nd*, *nt*, is regularly short: as in *amandus*, *amant*.

NOTE. The Romans sometimes marked vowel length by a stroke above the letter (called an apex), as *ī* ; and sometimes the vowel was doubled to indicate length. An *I* made higher than the other letters was occasionally used for indicating length. But none of these devices came into general use.

The Quantity of the Syllable is important for the position of the accent and in versification. A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is said to be long by nature. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants (except a mute before l or r) or by a double consonant (x, z) is said to be long by position, but the vowel is pronounced short: as, *est, ter-a, sax-um, Me-zen-tius*.

NOTE. When a consonant is doubled the pronunciation should show this distinctly. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by a mute before l or r is properly short, but may be used as long in verse. Such a syllable is said to be common.

NOTE 1. In syllables long by position, but having a short vowel, the length is partly due to the first of the consonants, which stands in the same syllable with the vowel. In syllables of "common" quantity (as the first syllable of *patrem*) the ordinary pronunciation was *pa-trem*, but in verse *pat-rem* was allowed so that the syllable could become long.

NOTE 2. In final syllables ending with a consonant, and containing a short vowel, the quantity in verse is determined by the following word: if this begins with a vowel the final consonant is joined to it in pronunciation; if it begins with a consonant the syllable is long by position.

NOTE 3. In rules for quantity h is not counted as a consonant, nor is the apparently consonantal u in *qu, gu, su*. A syllable whose vowel is a, e, o, or u, followed by consonant i, is long whether the vowel itself is long or short as in *mai-ior, pe-ius*.

NOTE. The length of a syllable before consonant *i* is due to a transitional sound (vowel i) which forms a diphthong with the preceding vowel: *ma ior* (for *mai-ior*).

ACCENT

Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable: as *Ro'ma, fi'des, tan'go*. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the Penult if that is long (as *ami'cus, mone'tur, contin'git*); otherwise on the Antepenult (as *do'minus, ala'cris, dissocia'bilis*). When an enclitic is joined to a word, the accent falls on

the syllable next before the enclitic, whether long or short: as, *dea'que*, *amare've*, *tibi'ne*, *ita'que* (and ... so), as distinguished from *i'taque* (therefore).

For practical purposes we will be guided by the following rules: The place of stress depends on the quantity (length or shortness) of the penultimate syllable.

1. The vowel in the penultimate syllable is long when:

- It contains a diphthong (*peritonāēum*, *peronāēus*, *diāēta*);
- The vowel is followed by two or more consonants or by letters x or z (*colūmna*, *extērnus*, *labyrīnthus*, *medūlla*, *metacārpus*)

NOTE. By exception vowels followed by the combinations br, tr, pr, dr, bl, pl, tl, dl and by Greek digraphs ph, th, rh, ch are short: *cholēdochus*, *palpēbra*, *triquētrus*; with the stress on the antepenultimate syllable.

2. The vowel in the penultimate syllable is short when it is followed by another vowel so the antepenultimate syllable is stressed: *trochlēa*, *parīes*, *ossēus*, *acromīon*.

There are also words to which we cannot apply the rules; the quantity of the vowel is shown in the dictionary form: *forāmen*, *aspēra*.

There are certain suffixes in Latin whose vowel if it is in the penultimate syllable has a certain quantity. Thus we distinguish long suffixes -al-, -ar-, -at-, -ur-, -os-, -in- and short suffixes -ul-, -ol-, -ic-: *fractūra*, *vitamīnum*, *maxillāris*, *nervōsus*, *foveōla*, *granūlum*, *zygomāticus*.

EXERCISES

1. Read two-syllable words:

femur	thigh bone	бедро
arcus	arch	дуга
atlas	atlas (I cervical vertebra)	1-й шейный позвонок
bursa	pouch, sac	сумка
bulbus	bulb	луковица
sternum	breastbone	грудина
barba	beard	борода
cauda	tail	хвост
cavum	cavity	полость
cornu	corn, horn	рог, рожок
collum	neck	шейка
costa	rib	ребро
minor	lesser	малый
manus	hand	кисть руки
larynx	larynx	гортань
sella	saddle	седло
vomer	vomer	сошник
apex	apex, tip	верхушка
ramus	branch	ветвь

2. Define whether the second (last but one) syllable is long or short and stress the following words:

patella	patella, knee-cap	надколенник
arcus vertebrae	arch of vertebra	дуга позвонка
medulla ossium	bone marrow	костный мозг
ligamentum	ligament	связка
membrum inferius	inferior limb (extremity)	нижняя конечность
epigastrium	epigastric region, epigastrium	надчревьё
cochlea	cochlea	улитка
processus transversus	transverse process	поперечный отросток
facies poplitea	popliteal surface	подколенная поверхность
ductus choledochus	bile duct	желчный проток
corpus maxillae	body of the upper jaw	тело верхней челюсти
quadruplex	quadruple	четвертной
periosteum	periosteum, periost	надкостница
palpebra superior	upper eyelid	верхнее веко
cerebrum	cerebrum, brain	большой (головной) мозг

3. Stress the words paying attention to the long and short syllables:

incisura vertebralis	vertebral notch	позвоночная вырезка
mentalis	mental (genial)	подбородочный
clavicularis	clavicular	ключичный
fossa glandulae lacrimalis	depression of lacrimal gland	ямка слезной железы
fossa pterygopalatina	pterygopalatine depression	крыло-нёбная ямка
foramen spinosum	spinal opening	остистое отверстие
sulcus pulmonalis	pulmonary furrow	легочная борозда
pars squamosa	scaly part	чешуйчатая часть
processus zygomaticus	zygomatic process	скуловой отросток
incisura supraorbitalis	supraorbital notch	надглазничная вырезка
incisura mandibulae	notch of the lower jaw	вырезка нижней челюсти
hyomandibularis	hyomandibular	подъязычно-нижнечелюст- ной
cribrosus	cribriform	решетчатый
pelvinus	pelvic	тазовый
nodi pancreatici	pancreatic lymph nodes	панкреатические лимфати- ческие узлы
glomerulus	glomerule	клубочек
pubicus	pubic	лобковый
foveolae granulares	minute pits	зернистые ямочки
hamulus pterygoideus	wing-shaped (aliform) hamulus (uncus)	крыловидный крючок
geniculum	geniculum	коленце

4. Write down and stress Latin terms. Pick out borrowings from Greek:

myologia	myology	миология
osteologia	osteology	остеология
trachea	trachea	трахея
gingiva	gum	десна
peroneus	peroneal, fibular (nerve, muscle)	малоберцовый (нерв, мышца)
cartilagineus	cartilaginous	хрящевой
carpeus	carpal	запястный
gluteus	gluteal	ягодичный
pylorus	pylorus, pyloric orifice	привратник
peritoneum	peritoneum	брюшина
metathalamus	metathalamus (the part of the brain behind thalamus)	метаталамус (часть мозга позади зрительного бугра)
glossopharyngeus	glossopharyngeal	языко-глоточный
os coccygis	coccygeal bone,	копчиковая кость,

os palatinum	coccyx	копчик
alae vomeris	palatine bone	нёбная кость
lamina horizontalis	wings of the plowshare	крылья сошника
	horizontal plate	горизонтальная пластинка
orbita oculi	orbit	глазница
pars superior duodeni	upper part of duodenum	верхняя часть двенадцатиперстной кишки
articulatio sacrococcygea	sacrococcygeal joint	крестцово-копчиковый сустав
organon gustus	organ of taste	орган вкуса
musculus levator fornicis	muscle lifting fornix	мышца, поднимающая свод
apertura thoracis inferior	lower aperture of chest	нижняя апертура грудной клетки
nervus trigeminus	trigeminal [V cranial] nerve	тройничный нерв
labyrinthus ethmoidalis	ethmoidal labyrinth	решетчатый лабиринт
corpus mandibulae	body of lower jaw	тело нижней челюсти
geniculum canalis facialis	geniculum [genu] of facial canal	коленце лицевого канала
minimus	least, smallest	наименьший

5. Define whether the second syllable is long or short, put the stress:

diploë	diploe (spongy substance of flat bones of the skull)	диплоэ
septum nasi osseum	bony septum/partition of nose	костная перегородка носа
concha nasalis superior	superior nasal concha (turbinate)	верхняя носовая раковина
ramus hyoideus	sublingual (hypoglossal) branch	подъязычная ветвь
lineae transversae	transverse lines	поперечные линии
fissura transversa cerebri	transverse groove of brain	поперечная щель большого (головного) мозга
angulus mastoideus	mastoid angle	сосцевидный угол
condylus occipitalis	occipital condyle	затылочный мыщелок
fovea trochlearis	trochlear pit	блоковидная ямка
nucleus pulposus	pulpous nucleus	студенистое ядро
os trapezoideum	trapezoid bone	трапециевидная кость
ligamentum longitudinale	anterior longitudinal	передняя продольная

anterior	ligament	связка
recessus subpopliteus	subpopliteal recess	подколенное углубление
nervus laryngeus inferior	lower laryngeal nerve	нижний гортанный нерв

6. Read and explain the rules of reading and stress of the anatomical terms:

angulus sphenoidalis	wedge-shaped angle	клиновидный угол
arteria stylomastoidea	stylomastoid artery	шило-сосцевидная артерия
sinus maxillaris	maxillary sinus	верхнечелюстная пазуха
corpus maxillae	body of the upper jaw	тело верхней челюсти
canales alveolares	alveolar canals	альвеолярные каналы
cauda pancreatis	tail of pancreas	хвост поджелудочной железы
arcus vertebrae	arch of vertebra	дуга позвонка
pedunculi arcus vertebrae	pedicles of arch of vertebra	ножки дуги позвонка
crista sacralis mediana	median sacral crest	срединный крестцовый гребень
lamina medialis processus pterygoidei	medial plate of wing-shaped process	медиальная пластинка крыловидного отростка
vertebrae thoracicae	thoracic vertebrae	грудные позвонки
regiones membri superioris	regions of upper extremity	области верхней конечности
hiatus sacralis	sacral hiatus	крестцовая щель
sulcus venae subclaviae	furrow of subclavian vein	борозда подключичной вены
apex partis petrosae	tip of petrous part	верхушка каменистой части
apertura thoracis inferior	orifice of the chest	нижняя апертура грудной клетки
juga alveolaria	alveolar eminences	альвеолярные возвышения
nervus hypoglossus	sublingual nerve	подъязычный нерв
linea nuchae inferior	lower line of the nape (back of the neck)	нижняя выйная линия
processus pterygoidei	wing-shaped processes	крыловидные отростки
facies diaphragmatica	phrenic surface	диафрагмальная поверхность
septum sinuum sphenoidalium	partition of wedge-shaped sinuses	перегородка клиновидных пазух
regio inguinalis dextra	right inguinal region	правая паховая область
margo linguae	edge of tongue	край языка
rete genus articulare	articular network of knee	коленная суставная сеть

pars nasalis	nasal part	носовая часть
canaliculus chordae tympani	small channel of cord of eardrum	каналец барабанной струны
apertura externa	external orifice of	наружная апертура
aqu(a)eductus vestibuli	aqueduct of vestibule	водопровода преддверия

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 2

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
acromion	acromion, <i>outward extension (process) of the shoulder bone forming the point of the shoulder</i>	[эк'roumiэн]	акромион (гребень лопатки)
acromialis	acromial	[эк'roumiэл]	акромиальный
articulatio	articulation, joint	[a:,tikju'lei[n]	сустав
articularis	articular	[a:'tikjulə]	суставной
brachium	brachium, shoulder	['breikiəm]	плечо
brachialis	brachial	['breikiəl]	плечевой
canalis	canal	[kə'næl]	канал
cingulum	cingulum, cincture, (girdle)	['siŋjuləm]	пояс
clavicula	clavicle, collarbone	['klævikl]	ключица
clavicularis	clavicular	[klə'vikjulə]	ключичный
coccyx	coccyx	['koksiks]	копчик
coccygeus	coccygeal	[,koksi'djiəl]	копчиковый
costa	rib	[rib]	ребро
costalis	costal	['kostəl]	реберный
fissura	fissure, <i>narrow, deep, slitlike opening</i>	['fi]э]	щель, борозда
foramen	foramen, <i>opening for passage of blood vessels and nerves into and from a bone</i>	[fourei'men]	отверстие
fossa	fossa: depression or cavity in bone	['fosə]	яма, ямка (удлиненной формы)
fovea	fovea (<i>a round hollow, pit</i>)	['foviə]	ямка (округлая)
humerus	humerus (upper arm bone, shoulder bone)	['hjumərəs]	плечевая кость
incisura	incisure, notch	[in'sijə]	вырезка

jugularis	jugular	[ˈdʒʊɡjʊlə]	яремный
mandibula	mandible, lower jaw	[ˈmændɪbl]	нижняя челюсть
maxilla	maxilla, upper jaw	[mæˈksɪlə]	верхняя челюсть
mandibularis	mandibular	[ˌmænˈdɪbjʊlə]	нижнечелюстной
maxillaris	maxillary	[mæˈksɪləri]	верхнечелюстной
membrum	member, limb, extremity	[ˈmembə]	член, конечность
olecranon	olecranon, <i>process on the medial lower arm bone (ulna) which extends behind the elbow joint (elbow process)</i>	[ouˈlekrənən]	олекранон (локтевой отросток)
periosteum	periosteum, <i>strong, fibrous, vascular membrane covering the surface of a long bone except at the ends</i>	[ˌperiˈostiəm]	надкостница
pharyngeus	pharyngeal	[feˈrɪndʒiəl]	глоточный
processus	process	[ˈprouəs]	отросток
radius	radius, <i>lateral lower arm bone</i>	[ˈreɪdiəs]	лучевая кость
radialis	radial	[ˈreɪdiəl]	лучевой
scapula	scapula, shoulderblade	[ˈskæpjʊlə]	лопатка
scapularis	scapular	[ˈskæpjʊlə]	лопаточный
thoracicus	thoracic	[θoːˈresɪk]	грудной
transversus	transverse	[ˈtrænzvɜːs]	поперечный
tuber	tuber, <i>rounded process on a bone; serves for attachment of muscles or tendons</i>	[ˈtjuːbə]	бугор
tuberculum	tubercle, <i>smaller rounded process on a bone; serves for attachment of muscles or tendons</i>	[ˈtjʊbɪkl]	бугорок
ulna	ulna, <i>medial lower arm bone (elbow bone)</i>	[ˈʌlnə]	локтевая кость
ulnaris	ulnar	[ˈʌlnə]	локтевой

UNIT 3

DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS

Parts of speech

Words are divided into eight Parts of Speech: Nouns, Adjectives (including Participles), Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections. A Noun is the name of a person, place, thing, or idea: as *Caesar*, *Rome*, *domus*. Names of particular persons and places are called Proper Nouns; other nouns are called Common.

NOTE 1. An Abstract Noun is the name of a quality or idea: as *senectus* (old age). A Collective Noun is the name of a group, class, or the like: as *turba* (crowd); *exercitus* (army). An Adjective is a word that attributes a quality: as *bonus* (good); *fortis* (brave, strong).

NOTE 2. A Participle is a word that attributes quality like an adjective, but, being derived from a verb, retains in some degree the power of the verb to assert, e.g. *destillatus*.

NOTE 3. Etymologically there is no difference between a noun and an adjective, both being formed alike. So, too, all names originally attribute quality, and any common name can still be so used. Thus, King William distinguishes this William from other Williams, by the attribute of royalty expressed in the name king. A Pronoun is a word used to distinguish a person, place, thing, or idea without either naming or describing it: as *ego* (I), *qui* (who), *tu* (you). Nouns and pronouns are often called Substantives. A Verb is a word which is capable of asserting something: as *sum* (I am); *amat* (he loves). NOTE 4. In all modern speech the verb is usually the only word that asserts anything, and a verb is therefore supposed to be necessary to complete an assertion. Strictly, however, any adjective or noun may, by attributing a quality or giving a name, make a complete assertion. In the infancy of language there could have been no other means of asserting, as the verb is of comparatively late development. An Adverb is a word

used to express the time, place, or manner of an assertion or attribute: as *hodiē* (today), *hinc* (there, then).

NOTE 5. These same functions are often performed by cases of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives, and by phrases or sentences. In fact, all adverbs were originally cases or phrases, but have become specialized by use. A Preposition is a word which shows the relation between a noun or pronoun and some other word or words in the same sentence: as *per* (through), *ad* (up to).

NOTE 6. Most prepositions are specialized adverbs. The relations expressed by prepositions were earlier expressed by case-endings. A Conjunction is a word which connects words, or groups of words, without affecting their grammatical relations: as *et* (and); *sed* (but); *seu* (or).

Inflection

Latin is an inflected language. Inflection is a change made in the form of a word to show its grammatical relations. Inflectional changes sometimes take place in the body of a word, or at the beginning, but oftener in its termination: *vox* (a voice); *vocis* (of a voice); *voco* (I call); *vocat* (he calls); *vocet* (let him call); *vit* (he has called); *tangit* (he touches); *tetigit* (he touched). Terminations of inflection had originally independent meanings which are now obscured. They correspond nearly to the use of prepositions, auxiliaries, and personal pronouns in English. Thus, in *vocat*, the termination is equivalent to he or she; in *vocis*, to the preposition *of*; and in *vocet* the change of vowel signifies a change of mood.

Inflectional changes in the body of a verb usually denote relations of tense or mood, and often correspond to the use of auxiliary verbs in English: *frangit* (he breaks or is breaking); *fregit* (he broke or has broken); *mordet* (he bites); *momordit* (he bit). The inflection of Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Participles to denote gender, number, and case is called Declension, and these parts of speech are said to be declined. The inflection of Verbs to denote voice, mood, tense, number, and person is called Conjugation, and the verb is said to be conjugated.

NOTE. Adjectives are often said to have inflections of comparison. These are, however, properly stem-formations made by derivation.

Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are not inflected and are called Particles.

Root, Stem, and Base

The body of a word, to which the terminations are attached, is called the **Stem**. The Stem contains the idea of the word without relations; but, except in the first part of a compound (as *arti-fex* (*artificer*)), it cannot ordinarily be used without some termination to express them. Thus the stem *voc-* denotes voice; with -s added it becomes *vox*, a voice or the voice, as the subject or agent of an action; with -is it becomes *vocis*, and signifies *of a voice*.

NOTE. The stem is in many forms so united with the termination that a comparison with other forms is necessary to determine it.

A **Root** is the simplest form attainable by analysis of a word into its component parts. Such a form contains the main idea of the word in a very general sense, and is common also to other words either in the same language or in kindred languages. Thus the root of the stem *voc-is* is *voc*, which does not mean to call, or I call, or calling, but merely expresses vaguely the idea of calling, and cannot be used as a part of speech without terminations. With *a* it becomes *voca-*, the stem of *vocare* (to call); with *av-* it is the stem of *vocavit* (he called); with *ato-* it becomes the stem of *vocatus* (called); with *ation-* it becomes the stem of *vocationis* (of a calling). With its vowel lengthened it becomes the stem of *vox*, *voc-is* (a voice: that by which we call). This stem *voc-*, with -alis added, means *belonging to a voice*; with -ula, *a little voice*.

The Stem may be the same as the root: as in *duc-is* (*of a leader*), *fer-t* (he bears); but it is more frequently formed from the root:

1. By changing or lengthening its vowel: as in *scob-s* (sawdust) (*SCAB*, shave); *reg-is* (of a king) (*REG*, direct); *voc-is* (of a voice) (*VOC*, call).

2. By the addition of a simple suffix (originally another root): as in *fuga-* (stem of *fuga*, flight (*FUG* + *a-*)); *regi-s* (you rule) (*REG* + stem-ending *e/o-*); *sini-t* (he allows) (*SI* + *ne/o-*).
3. By two or more of these methods: as in *duci-t* (he leads) (*DUC* + stem ending *e/o-*).
4. By derivation and composition, following the laws of development peculiar to the language.

The **Base** is that part of a word which is unchanged in inflection: as *serv-* in *servus*; *mens-* in *mensa*; *ign-* in *ignis*. The Base and the Stem are often identical, as in many consonant stems of nouns (as, *reg-* in *reg-is*). If, however, the stem ends in a vowel, the latter does not appear in the base, but is variously combined with the inflectional termination. Thus the stem of *servus* is *servo-*; that of *mensa*, *mensa*; that of *ignis*, *igni-*.

Inflectional terminations are variously modified by combination with the final vowel or consonant of the Stem, and thus the various forms of Declension and Conjugation developed.

Gender

Genders distinguished in Latin are three: **Masculine**, **Feminine**, and **Neuter**. The gender of Latin nouns is either natural or grammatical. Natural Gender is distinction as to the sex of the object denoted: as, *puer* (M.), boy; *puella* (F.), girl; *rex* (M.), king; *regina* (F.), queen.

NOTE 1. Many nouns have both a masculine and a feminine form to distinguish sex: as *cervus*, *cerva* (stag, doe); *cliens*, *clienta* (client); *victor*, *victrix* (conqueror). Many designations of persons (as *nauta*, sailor) usually though not necessarily male are always treated as masculine. Similarly names of tribes and peoples are masculine: as *Romani* (the Romans).

NOTE 2. A few neuter nouns are used to designate persons as belonging to a class: as *mancipium* (your slave, your chattel). Many pet names of girls and boys are neuter in form: as, *Paegnium*, *Glycerium*.

NOTE 3. Names or classes or collections of persons may be of any gender: as *agmen* (N.) (army); *operae* (F. plur.) (workmen); *copiae* (F. plur.) (troops); *senatus* (M.) (senate); *cohors* (F.) (cohort); *concilium* (N.) (council).

Grammatical Gender is a formal distinction as to sex where no actual sex exists in the object. It is shown by the form of the adjective joined with the noun: as *lapis magnus* (M.) (a great stone), *manus mea* (F.) (my hand).

Names of Male beings, and of Rivers, Winds, Months, and Mountains, are masculine: *pater* (father); *Tiberis* (the Tiber); *auster* (south wind); *Ianuarius* (January); *Apenninus* (the Apennines).

NOTE. Names of Months are properly adjectives, the masculine noun *mensis*, month, being understood: as *Ianuarius* (January). A few names of Rivers ending in -a (as *Allia*), with the Greek names *Lethe*; and *Styx*, are feminine; others are variable or uncertain.

Names of Female beings, of Cities, Countries, Plants, Trees, and Gems, of many Animals (especially Birds), and of most abstract Qualities, are feminine: *mater* (mother); *Iulia* (Julia); *Roma* (Rome); *Italia* (Italy); *rosa* (rose); *sapphirus* (sapphire); *anas* (duck); *veritas* (truth). Some names of Towns and Countries are masculine: as *Sulmo*, *Gabii*, (plur.); or neuter as *Tarentum*, *Illyricum*. A few names of Plants and Gems follow the gender of their termination: as *acanthus* (M.) (bearsfoot); *opalus* (M.) (opal).

NOTE. The gender of most of the above may also be recognized by the terminations, according to the rules given under the several declensions. The names of Roman women were usually feminine adjectives denoting their gens or house.

Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, terms or phrases used as nouns, and words quoted merely for their form, are neuter: *fas* (right), *nihil* (nothing), *gummi* (gum), *scire tuum* (your knowledge, to know); *triste vale* (a sad farewell).

Many nouns may be either masculine or feminine, according to the sex of the object. These are said to be of Common Gender: as *bos* (ox or cow), *parens* (parent).

NOTE. Several names of animals have a grammatical gender, independent of sex. These are called epicene. Thus *lepus* (hare) is always masculine, and *vulpes* (fox) is always feminine.

Number and Case

Nouns, Pronouns, Adjectives, and Participles are declined in two Numbers, singular and plural; and in six Cases, nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative, vocative.

The Nominative is the case of the Subject of a sentence. The Genitive may generally be translated by the English Possessive, or by the Objective with the preposition of. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object. It may usually be translated by the Objective with the preposition to or for. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object of a verb. It is used also with many of the prepositions. The Ablative may usually be translated by the Objective with from, by, with, in, or at. It is often used with prepositions. The Vocative is the case of Direct Address.

All the cases, except the nominative and vocative, are used as object cases; and are sometimes called Oblique Cases. In names of towns and a few other words appear traces of another case (the Locative), denoting the place where - as *Romae* - at Rome.

NOTE. Still another case, the Instrumental, appears in a few adverbs.

Declension of Nouns

Declension is produced by adding terminations originally significant to different forms of stems, vowel or consonant. The various phonetic corruptions in the language have given rise to the several declensions. Most of the case-endings, as given in Latin, contain also the final letter of the stem. Adjectives are, in general, declined like nouns, and are etymologically to be classed with them; but they have several peculiarities of inflection.

Nouns are inflected in five Declensions, distinguished by the final letter (characteristic) of the Stem, and by the case-ending of the Genitive Singular.

Below you will find the table of case-endings of the Nominative and Genitive Singular (Nominative Singular and Genitive Singular of III Declension masculine and feminine nouns excluded) to give you the most general idea of how extensive their paradigm is.

DECLENSIONS OF THE 5 Types

Declension	I	II		III			IV		V
Gender	f	m	n	m	f	n	m	n	f
Nom. Sing.	-a	-er -um	-us -on			-ma, -en, -us	-us	-u	-es
Gen. Sing.	-ae	-i		-is			-us		-ei

The Stem of a noun may be found, if a consonant stem, by omitting the case-ending; if a vowel stem, by substituting for the case-ending the characteristic vowel.

The following are General Rules of Declension: The Vocative is always the same as the Nominative, except in the singular of nouns and adjectives in -us of the second declension, which have -e in the vocative. It is not included in the paradigms, unless it differs from the nominative. In neuters the Nominative and Accusative are always alike, and in the plural end in -a. The Accusative singular of all masculines and feminines ends in -m; the Accusative plural in -s. In the last three declensions (and in a few cases in the others) the Dative singular ends in i. The Dative and Ablative plural are always alike. The Genitive plural always ends in -um. Final -i, -o, -u of inflection are always long; final -a is short, except in the Ablative singular of the first declension; final -e is long in the first and fifth declensions, short in the second and third. Final -is and -us are long in plural cases.

FIRST DECLENSION (a-STEMS)

The Stem of nouns of the First Declension ends in -a. The Nominative ending is -a (the stem-vowel shortened), except in Greek nouns.

Latin nouns of the First Declension are thus declined: *stella*, F. (star)

STEM *stella*-

SINGULAR

Nom. *stella*
Gen. *stellae*
Dat. *stellae*
Acc. *stellam*
Abl. *stella*
Voc. *stella*

PLURAL

Nom *stellae*
Gen. *stellarum*
Dat. *stellis*
Acc. *stellas*
Abl. *stellis*
Voc. *stellae*

The Latin has no article; hence *stella* may mean a star, the star, or simply star.

Gender in the First Declension

Nouns of the first declension are Feminine. Exceptions: Nouns masculine from their signification: as *nauta*, sailor. So a few family or personal names: as *Murena*, *Dolabella*, *Scaevola*; also, *Hadria*, the Adriatic. The genitive singular anciently ended in -ai (dissyllabic), which is occasionally found: as *aulai*. The same ending sometimes occurs in the dative, but only as a diphthong. An old genitive in -as is preserved in the word *familias*, often used in the combinations *pater (mater, filius, filia) familias* (plur. *patres familias* or *familiarum*). The Locative form for the singular ends in -ae; for the plural in -is as *Romae* (at Rome); *Athenis* (at Athens). The genitive plural is sometimes found in -um instead of -arum, especially in Greek patronymics, as *Aeneadum* (sons of Aeneas), and in compounds with -*caela* and -*gena*, signifying dwelling and descent: as *caelicolum* (celestials); *Troiugenum* (sons of Troy); so also in the Greek nouns *amphora* and *drachma*. The dative and ablative plural of *dea*, goddess, *filia* (daughter) end in an older form -abus (*deabus*, *filiabus*) to distinguish them from the corresponding cases of *deus*, god, and *filius*, son (*deis*, *filiis*).

SECOND DECLENSION (o-STEMS)

The Stem of nouns of the Second Declension ends in o-: as *viro-* (stem of *vir*, man), *servo-* (stem of *servus* or *servos*, slave), *bello-* (stem of *bellum*, war). The Nominative is formed from the stem by adding *s* in masculines and feminines, and *m* in neuters, the vowel *o* being weakened to *u*. In most nouns whose stem ends in *ro-* the *s* is not added in the Nominative, but *o* is lost, and *e* intrudes before it, if not already present: as *ager* - stem *agro-*; cf. *puer* - stem *puero-*. Exceptions: *erus*, *hesperus*, *iuniperus*, *morus*, *numerus*, *taurus*, *umerus*, *uterus*, and many Greek nouns. The stem-vowel *o* has a variant form *e*, which is preserved in the Latin vocative singular of nouns in -us: as, *serve*, vocative of *servus*, slave.

NOTE. In composition this -e- appears as -i-. Thus, *belli-ger*, warlike (from *bell-o/e-*, stem of *bellum*, war).

Nouns of the Second Declension in -us (-os) and -um (-om) are thus declined:

Masculine
SINGULAR

Nom.	servus (os)
Gen.	servi
Dat.	servo
Acc.	servum (-om)
Abl.	servo
Voc.	serve

PLURAL

Nom.	servi
Gen.	servorum
Dat.	servis
Acc.	servos
Abl.	servis
Voc.	servi

Neuter
SINGULAR

Nom.	bellum
Gen.	belli
Dat.	bello
Acc.	bellum
Abl.	bello
Voc.	bellum

PLURAL

Nom.	bella
Gen.	bellorum
Dat.	bellis
Acc.	bella
Abl.	bellis
Voc.	bella

Nouns of the Second Declension in -er and -ir are thus declined: *puer*, M. (boy); *ager*, M. (field); *vir*, M. (man)

STEM Masc. *puero-* STEM Masc. *viro-*

SINGULAR

Nom.	puer
Gen.	pueri

Dat. puero
 Acc. puerum
 Abl. puero
 Voc. puere

PLURAL

Nom. pueri
 Gen. puerorum
 Dat. pueris
 Acc. pueros
 Abl. pueris
 Voc. pueri

SINGULAR

Nom. vir
 Gen. viri
 Dat. viro
 Acc. virum
 Abl. viro
 Voc. vir

PLURAL

Nom. viri
 Gen. virorum
 Dat. viris
 Acc. viros
 Abl. viris
 Voc. viri

NOTE. When e belongs to the stem, as in *puer*, it is retained throughout; otherwise it appears only in the nominative and vocative singular, as in *ager*.

Gender in the second declension

Nouns ending in -us (-os), -er, -ir, are Masculine; those ending in -um (-on) are Neuter. Exceptions: Names of countries and towns in -us (-os) are Feminine: as *Aegyptus*, *Corinthus*. Also many names of plants and gems, with the following: *alvus* (belly); *carbasus* (linen); *humus* (ground). Many Greek nouns retain their original gender: as *methodus* (F.) (method).

As both stem-types and Nominative Singular endings of III Declension nouns are quite varied and numerous we will discuss them in detail later.

FOURTH DECLENSION

The Stem of nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in u. Nouns of the Fourth Declension are declined as follows:

SINGULAR	
Nom.	manus
Gen.	manus
Dat.	manui(-u)
Acc.	manum
Abl.	manu
Voc.	manus
PLURAL	
Nom.	manus
Gen.	manuum
Dat.	manuum
Acc.	manus
Abl.	manuum
Voc.	manus

SINGULAR	
Nom.	genu
Gen.	genus
Dat.	genu
Acc.	genu
Abl.	genu
PLURAL	
Nom.	genua
Gen.	genuum
Dat.	genibus
Acc.	genua
Abl.	genibus
Voc.	genua

Gender in the Fourth Declension

Most nouns of the Fourth Declension in -us are Masculine.

EXCEPTIONS: The following are Feminine: *acus, anus, colus, domus, idus* (plural), *manus, nurus, porticus, quinquatrus* (plural), *socrus, tribus*, with a few names of plants and trees.

The only Neuters of the Fourth Declension are *cornu*, *genu*, *pecu*, *veru*.

FIFTH DECLENSION (e-STEMS)

The Stem of nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in e-, which appears in all the cases. The Nominative is formed from the stem by adding s. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are declined as follows:

res, F. (thing), *fides*, F. (faith)

SINGULAR

Nom.	res
Gen.	rei
Dat.	rei
Acc.	rem
Abl	re
Voc.	res

PLURAL

Nom.	res
Gen.	rerum
Dat.	rebus
Acc.	res
Abl.	rebus
Voc.	res

SINGULAR

Nom.	fides
Gen.	fidei
Dat.	fidei
Acc.	fidem
Abl.	fide
Voc.	fides

PLURAL

Nom.	fides
Gen.	fiderum
Dat.	fidibus
Acc.	fides
Abl.	fidibus
Voc.	fides

Gender in the Fifth Declension

All nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except *dies* (usually M.) (day), and *meridies* (M.) (noon).

The Structure of English and Latin Terms

NB! I. An English two-word medical term can be formed in three possible ways:

Ex. 1) cavity of the nose == 2) nose cavity == 3) nasal cavity

Three different patterns are used to convey the same meaning:

1) Head Noun + Of + Subordinate Noun;

2) Subordinate Noun + Head Noun;

3) Adjective + Noun

In Latin they use two patterns:

1) Head Noun (in the Nominative case) + Subordinate Noun (in the Genitive case);

corpus vertebrae

2) Head Noun + Adjective

musculus longus

II. English multiword terms can be built according to the following patterns:

Ex. 1) anterior ligament of the calf-bone (fibula) head =

2) anterior ligament of the head of the calf-bone (fibula)

All the patterns convey the same meaning:

1) Adjective + Head Noun₁ + Of + Subordinate Noun₂ + Head Noun₂

(both Head Noun₂ and Subordinate Noun₂ are subordinate to Head Noun₁);

2) Adjective + Head Noun₁ + Of + Subordinate Noun₁ + Of

+Subordinate Noun₂ (all the nouns are placed according to their decreasing importance).

In Latin they have the following patterns:

1) ligamentum capitis fibulae anterius = 2) ligamentum anterius capitis fibulae

(The first pattern with an adjective at the end is more preferable)

The following patterns are used:

- 1) **Head Noun (in the Nominative Case) + Subordinate Noun₁ (in the Genitive Case) + Subordinate Noun₂ (in the Genitive Case) + Adjective** (the adjective can be placed at the end as its ending (-ius) shows that it agrees with the Head Noun or can be placed right after the Head Noun as in the 2nd example).
- 2) **Head Noun (in the Nominative Case) + Adjective + Subordinate Noun₁ + Subordinate Noun₂**

NB! AN ADJECTIVE always follows **THE NOUN** it is subordinate to or goes at the end of the phrase. **AN ADJECTIVE** agrees with **THE NOUN** it is subordinate to in **GENDER, NUMBER, CASE**.

EXERCISES

1. State the declension of nouns:

Thalāmus, i, m; apex, ĭcis, m; sinus, us, m; vertebra, ae, f; cornu, us, n; encephalon, i, n; textus, us, m; dens, dentis, m; digĭtus, i, m; rete, is, n; tympanum, i, n; sella, ae, f; species, ei, f; crus, cruris, n; vena, ae, f; ductus, us, m; sulcus, i, m; forāmen, ĩnis, n; scapula, ae, f; recessus, us, m; ostium, i, n; pubes, is, f; genu, us, n; paries, etis, m; systēma, ātis, n; facies, ēi, f; arcus, us, m; tempus, ōris, n; vestibulum, i, n; ureter, eris, m.

2. Complete the Genitive Singular form:

<i>Declension</i>	<i>Nom. Sing.</i>	<i>Gen. Sing.</i>
I	squama	squam...
III	dens	dent...
II	septum	sept...
III	zygōma	zygomat...
IV	hiātus	hiat...
I	clavicula	clavicul...
III	femur	femor...
III	pecten	pectin...
III	os	oss...

II	acromion	acromi...
V	superficies	superfici...
IV	genu	gen...
III	tuber	tuber...
III	axis	ax...
II	oculus	ocul...

3. Complete the dictionary form of the following nouns:

Vertebra; tuberculum; ramus, i; mandibula; arcus, us; cornu; skelĕton; cerebrum; humĕrus, i; olecrănon; substantia; cranium; concha; palătum; incisura; ductus, us; encephălon; sinus, us; dorsum; clavicula; septum; ganglion; nasus, i; scapula; oculus, i; meătus, us; acromion; processus, us; lingua; lamina; textus, us; genu; amnion; brachium; adĭtus, us; membrăna; retinaculum; recessus, us; tegmen; digitus, i; pecten; fossa; malleolus, i; vena; collum; glandula; angulus, i; frenulum; papilla; labyrinthus, i; dentĭnum; bucca.

4. Translate into Latin:

A. body of vertebra; joint of shoulder; arch of aorta; head of rib; neck of shoulderblade; basis of skull; manubrium of breastbone; cavity of nose; tuber of upper jaw; notch of lower jaw; neck of radius; capsule of ganglion; tubercle of saddle.

B. neck muscle; shoulder bone head; nerve branch; kneecap basis; skull suture; cerebrum nerve; drum cavity; process vagina; back of the saddle; pit of the elbow process.

C. body of the gland; partition of the tongue; muscle of the palate; frenulum of the lip; enamel cuticle (*enamelum, i n; cuticula, ae f*); fiber of cement (*fibra, ae f; cementum, i n*); papilla of dentine (*dentinum, i n*); tip of nose (*apex, icis m*); leaf of papilla (*folium, i n*).

5. Translate the following three-word terms into Latin:

Ligament of the rib tuber; aperture of the vestibule aqueduct; crest of the rib neck; lamina of the vertebra arch, aperture of the small canal (*canaliculus*) of cochlea, canaliculus of the tympanic cord (*chorda*); wing of the cock crest (*gallus, i, m*).

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 3

A

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
ála, ae, f	ala	[ˈeɪlə]	крыло
angulus, i, m	angle	[ˈæŋɡl]	угол
aorta, ae, f	aorta	[eiˈo:tə]	аорта
arcus, us, m	arch	[a: tʃ]	дуга
arteria, ae, f	artery	[ˈa:təri]	артерия
brachium, i, n	brachium, shoulder	[ˈbreɪkiəm]	плечо
caput, itis, n	head (also of bones, internal organs)	[hed]	голова, головка (костей, внутренних органов)
cavum, i, n	cavum, cavity	[ˈkævəm]	полость
cavitas, atis, f	cavity	[ˈkæviti]	полость
concha, ae, f	concha, shell	[ˈkɒŋkə]	раковина
costa, ae, f	rib	[rib]	ребро
corpus, oris, n	body	[ˈbɒdi]	телo
cranium, i, n	cranium, skull	[ˈkreɪniəm]	череп
crista, ae, f	crista, crest (ridge)	[ˈkristə]	гребень
cornu, us, n	horn	[ho:n]	рог, рожок
ductus, us, m	duct	[dʌkt]	проток
foramen, inis, n	foramen, opening	[foureiˈmen]	отверстие
incisura, ae, f	incisure, notch	[inˈsɪjə]	вырезка
lamina, ae, f	lamina, plate	[ˈlæminə]	пластинка
ligamentum, i, n	ligament	[ˈligəmənt]	связка
linea, ae, f	line	[lain]	линия
lingua, ae, f	1. tongue, 2. language	[tʌŋ]	язык
mandibula, ae, f	mandible, lower jaw	[ˈmændɪbl]	нижняя челюсть
maxilla, ae, f	maxilla, upper jaw	[mæˈksɪlə]	верхняя челюсть
meatus, us, m	meatus, passage, channel	[ˈmieɪtəs]	проход, ход

musculus, i, m	muscle	[mʌsl]	мышца
orbita, ae, f	orbit, <i>eye-socket, orbital cavity</i>	[ˈo:bit]	глазница
os, ossis, n	bone	[boun]	кость
raphe, es, f	raphe, seam (<i>tissue seam</i>)	[rei'fi]	шов (на мягких тканях)
scapula, ae, f	scapula, shoulder blade	[ˈskæpjulə]	лопатка
septum, i, n	septum, <i>dividing wall, partition</i>	[ˈseptəm]	перегородка
spina, ae, f	spine	[spain]	ость
sulcus, i, m	sulcus, furrow, <i>depression in the surface of the cerebral cortex; also called fissure</i>	[ˈsulkəs]	борозда
tympanum, i, n	ear-drum	[ˈiədrʌm]	барабан
ulna, ae, f	ulna, elbow bone	[ˈʌlnə]	локтевая кость
vena, ae, f	vein	[vein]	вена
vertebra, ae, f	vertebra, <i>a section of the backbone</i>	[ˈvɜ:tibrə]	позвонок

В

calcaneus, i, m	calcaneus, calcaneum, heelbone	[kəl'keiniəs]	пяточная кость
crus, cruris, n	crus (<i>leg, shin, shank</i>)	[kru:s]	ножка, голень
digitus, i, m	digit, finger	[ˈdidʒit]	палец
genu, us, n	genu, knee	[ˈdʒi:nə]	колени
humerus, i, m	humerus, shoulder bone	[ˈhjumərəs]	плечевая кость
manubrium, i, n	manubrium, presternum	[mə'nu:briəm]	рукоятка
patella, ae, f	patella, kneecap	[pə'telə]	надколенник
radius, i, m	radius	[ˈreidiəs]	лучевая кость
sternum, i, n	sternum, breastbone	[ˈstɜ:nəm]	грудина
sutura, ae, f	suture, <i>a bone seam</i>	[ˈsu:tʃə]	шов (костный)
tuba, ae, f	tube	[ˈtju:b]	труба

C

alveolus, i m	alveole	[ˈælvɪəl]	альвеола, ячейка
bucca, ae f	cheek	[tʃi:k]	щека
frenulum, i n	frenulum, <i>retaining band of tongue</i>	[ˈfrenuləm]	уздечка
gingīva, ae f	gum	[gʌm]	десна
labium, i n	lip	[lɪp]	губа
jugum, i n	eminence, jugum, juga	[ˈeminəns]	возвышение
lingula, ae f	lingula	[ˈlɪŋjʊlə]	язычок
papilla, ae f	papilla	[pəˈpɪlə]	сосочек
protuberantia, ae f	protuberance, prominence	[prəˈtju:bərəns]	выступ
pulpa, ae f	pulp	[pʌlp]	пульпа, мякоть

UNIT 4

ADJECTIVES

Adjectives are the parts of speech describing or specifying the objects denoted by nouns.

Adjectives and Participles are in general formed and declined like Nouns, differing from them only in their use.

1. In accordance with their use, they distinguish gender by different forms in the same word, and agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. Thus,

bonus puer - the good boy.

bona puella - the good girl.

bonum donum - the good gift.

2. In their inflection they are either (1) of the First and Second Declensions, or (2) of the Third Declension.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (a- AND o-STEMS)

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (a- and o-stems) are declined in the Masculine like *servus*, *puer*, or *ager*; in the Feminine like *stella*; and in the Neuter like *bellum*.

The regular type of an adjective of the First and Second Declensions is *bonus*, - a, -um, which is thus declined:

bonus, bona, bonum, good

MASCULINE STEM *bono-*; FEMININE STEM *bona-*; NEUTER STEM *bono-*

	SINGULAR		
NOM.	bonus	bona	bonum
GEN.	boni	bonae	boni
DAT.	bono	bonae	bono
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bono	bona	bono
VOC.	bone	bona	bonum

		PLURAL
NOM. boni	bonae	bona
GEN. bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
DAT. bonis	bonis	bonis
ACC. bonos	bonas	bona
ABL. bonis	bonis	bonis

Stems ending in ro- preceded by e form the Nominative Masculine like *puer* and are declined as follows:

miser, misera, miserum (wretched)

MASCULINE STEM *misero-*; FEMININE STEM *misera-*; NEUTER STEM *misero-*.

SINGULAR

NOM. miser	misera	miserum
GEN. miseri	miserae	miseri
DAT. misero	miserae	misero
ACC. miserum	miseram	miserum
ABL. misero	misera	misero

PLURAL

NOM. miseri	miserae	misera
GEN. miserorum	miserarum	miserorum
DAT. miseris	miseris	miseris
ACC. miseros	miseras	misera
ABL. miseris	miseris	miseris

Like *miser* are declined *asper, prosper, dexter*, etc. In these the e belongs to the stem; but in *dextra* it is often omitted: as *dextra manus* (the right hand).

Stems in ro- preceded by a consonant form the Nominative Masculine like *ager* are declined as follows:

niger, nigra, nigrum (black)

MASCULINE STEM *nigro-*; FEMININE STEM *nigra-*; NEUTER STEM *nigro-*

SINGULAR

NOM. niger	nigra	nigrum
GEN. nigri	nigrae	nigri
DAT. nigro	nigrae	nigro
ACC. nigrum	nigram	nigrum

ABL. nigro	nigra	nigro
PLURAL		
NOM. nigri	nigrae	nigra
GEN. nigrorum	nigrarum	nigrorum
DAT. nigris	nigris	nigris
ACC. nigros	nigras	nigra
ABL. nigris	nigris	nigris

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES (CONSONANT AND i-STEMS)

Adjectives of the Third Declension are thus classified:

1. Adjectives of Three Terminations in the nominative singular, one for each gender: as *acer*, *acris*, *acre*.
2. Adjectives of Two Terminations: masculine and feminine forms are the same: as *levis* (M., F.), *leve* (N.).
3. Adjectives of One Termination, the same ending for all three genders: as *simplex*.

Adjectives of Three and of Two Terminations

Adjectives of Three Terminations are thus declined:

acer, *acris*, *acre*, keen, STEM *acri-*

SINGULAR		
NOM. acer	acris	acre
GEN. acris	acris	acris
DAT. acri	acri	acri
ACC. acrem	acrem	acre
ABL. acri	acri	acri
PLURAL		
NOM. acres	acres	acria
GEN. acrium	acrium	acrium
DAT. acribus	acribus	acribus
ACC. acris (-es)	acris (-es)	acria
ABL. acribus	acribus	acribus

levis, *leve* (light), STEM *levi-*

MASC./FEM	NEUTER
SINGULAR	
NOM. levis	leve
GEN. levis	levis
DAT. levi	levi
ACC. levem	leve
ABL. levi	levi
PLURAL	
NOM. leves	levia
GEN. levium	levium
DAT. levibus	levibus
ACC. levis (-es)	levia
ABL. levibus	levibus

Adjectives of One Termination

The remaining adjectives of the third declension are Consonant stems; but most of them, except Comparatives, have the following forms of i-stems:

- i in the ablative singular (but often - e)
- ia in the nominative and accusative plural neuter
- ium in the genitive plural
- is (as well as -es) in the accusative plural masculine and feminine.

In the other cases they follow the rule for Consonant stems.

These adjectives, except stems in l- or r-, form the nominative singular from the stem by adding s: as, *atrox* (stem *atroc-* + s), *egens* (stem *egent-* + s).

Here belong the present participles in -ns (stem nt-): as *amans*, *monens*. They are declined like *egens*.

Adjectives of one termination are declined as follows:

atrox (fierce), STEM *atroc-*; *egens* (needy), STEM *egent-*

		SINGULAR	
M.	N.	M.	N.
NOM. atrox	atrox	egens	egens
GEN. atrocis	atrocis	egentis	egentis
DAT. atroci	atroci	egenti	egenti
ACC. atrocem	atrox	egentem	egens

ABL. atroci (-e) atroci (-e) egenti (-e) egenti

PLURAL

NOM. atroces	atrocia	egentes	egentia
GEN. atrocium	atrocium	egentium	egentium
DAT. atrocibus	atrocibus	egentibus	egentibus
ACC. atrocis(-es)	atrocia	egentis(-es)	egentia
ABL. atrocibus	atrocibus	egentibus	egentibus

EXERCISES

1. Read the words. State their Dictionary Entry Form:

A. Vertebra thoracica; arcus vertebrae; basis ossis sacri; labium mediale lineae asperae; sulcus sinus sigmoidei; tuber maxillae; tunica mucosa linguae; ductus bilifer; os frontale; arcus costalis; tuberculum pharyngeum; glandula alveolaris simplex; sinus maxillaris; facies maxillae; foramen vertebrale; facies articularis; processus articularis; cornu sacrale; crista sacralis.

B. Corpus vertebrae thoracicae; sinus petrosus; sulcus sinus petrosi; lamina horizontalis ossis palatini, os ethmoidale; lamina orbitalis ossis ethmoidalis; arteria temporalis media; sulcus arteriae temporalis mediae; os occipitale; pars petrosa ossis occipitalis; sinus trunci pulmonalis.

2. Make the following adjectives agree with the given nouns, translate them into Latin. Mind the word-order:

A. zygomatic (muscle, arch, bone); sphenoid (concha, bone, sinus); frontal (angle, suture, tuber, sinus, process, squama, bone); nasal (sinus, spine, bone); articular (process, face, tubercle); mastoid (process, notch); sciatic (tuber, notch, spine).

B. alveolar (process, arch, prominence); infraorbital (canal, opening, sulcus); ethmoid (foramen, crest, labyrinth); mental (tubercle, protuberance, foramen, spine).

3. Translate the terms into Latin:

Petrosal branch; parietal lobe; superficial vein; spinous opening; internal capsule; thoracic fascia; oval opening; right scapula; cutaneous vein; profound vein; superficial vein; thyroid gland; spinous process; articular process; vertebral opening.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 4

Adjectives of the 1st group (I, II Declensions)

A

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
dexter, tra, trum	dexter, right	[ˈdekstə]	правый
obliquus, a, um	oblique	[oˈbli:k]	косой
osseus, a, um	osseous, bony	[ˈosiəs]	костный
palatinus, a, um	palatine (referring to the palate/roof of the mouth)	[ˈpælətain]	небный
petrosus, a, um	petrous, petrosal	[ˈpetrəs]	каменистый
pterygoideus, a, um	pterygoid, wing-shaped		крыловидный
rectus, a, um	straight, upright	[ˈstreit]	прямой
sinister, tra, trum	left	[left]	левый
thoracicus, a, um	thoracic	[θoːˈræsik]	грудной
thyroideus, a, um	thyroid	[ˈθairoid]	щитовидный
transversus, a, um	transverse	[ˈtrænzvɜ:s]	поперечный
venosus, a, um	venous	[ˈvi:nəs]	венозный
zygomaticus, a, um	zygomatic	[zigəˈmætik]	скуловой

B

albus, a, um	white	[wait]	белый
asper, era, erum	asperous, rough	[ˈæspərəs]	шероховатый
coronarius, a, um	coronary	[ˈkɒrənri]	венечный
iliacus, a, um	iliac	[ˈiliæk]	подвздошный
liber, era, erum	free	[fri:]	свободный
niger, gra, grum	black	[blæk]	черный
ruber, bra, brum	red	[red]	красный
sacer, cra, crum	sacred, sacral	[ˈseikrid]	крестцовый

C

durus, a, um	hard	[ha:d]	твёрдый
mylohyoideus, a, um	mylohyoid	[,mailə hai'oid]	челюстно-подъязычный
palatoglossus, a, um	palatoglossal	[,pælətə'glosəl]	небно-язычный

Adjectives of the 2nd group (III Declension)

A

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
alaris, e	alar	['eilə]	крыльный
cerebralis, e	cerebral	['serəbrəl]	мозговой, относящийся к головному мозгу
cervicalis, e	cervical	['sə:vikəl]	шейный
ethmoidalis, e	ethmoid	['eθmoid]	решетчатый
frontalis, e	frontal	['frʌntəl]	лобный
mandibularis, e	mandibular	[,mæn'dibjulə]	нижнечелюстной
maxillaris, e	maxillary	[mæ'ksiləri]	верхнечелюстной
nasalis, e	nasal	['neizəl]	носовой
occipitalis, e	occipital	[ə'ksipitəl]	затылочный
orbitalis, e	orbital	['o:bitəl]	глазничный
sphenoidalis, e	sphenoid, wedge-shaped	['sfi:noid]	клиновидный
temporalis, e	temporal	['tempərəl]	височный

B

vertebralis, e	vertebral	['və:tibrəl]	позвоночный
jugularis, e	jugular	['dʒugjulə]	яремный
sacralis, e	sacral	['seikrəl]	крестцовый

C

alveolaris, e	alveolar	[æl'vi:ələ]	альвеолярный
buccalis, e	buccal	['bʌkəl]	щечный
dentalis, e	dental	['dentəl]	зубной
infraorbitalis, e	infraorbital	[,ifrə'o:bitəl]	подглазничный
mentalis, e	mental (related to the chin)	['mentəl]	подбородочный
mollis, e	soft	[soft]	мягкий

NOUNS

A

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
calcaneus, i, m	calcaneus,	[kæl'keiniəs]	пяточная кость

	calcaneum, heelbone		
clavicula, ae, f	clavicle, collarbone	[ˈklævikl]	ключица
condylus, i, m	condyle	[ˈkondail]	мыщелок
fascia, ae, f	fascia	[ˈfæʃiə]	фасция
fonticulus, i, m	fonticulus, fontanelle, <i>soft spot</i> <i>(incomplete</i> <i>bone</i> <i>formation)</i> <i>between the</i> <i>bones of the</i> <i>skull of an</i> <i>infant</i>	[ˈfontikjuləs]	родничок
meniscus, i, m	meniscus	[mɛˈniskəs]	мениск
nasus, i, m	nose	[nouz]	нос
nucha, ae, f	back of the neck, nape of the neck	[bæk əv ðə nek]	выя
palatum, i, n	palate	[ˈpælit]	небо
talus, i, m	ankle-bone, astragalus	[æŋkl-boun]	таранная кость
tonsilla, ae, f	tonsil, tonsilla	[ˈtonsl]	миндалина
vestibulum, i, n	vestibule	[vesˈtibjul]	преддверие

В

fibula, ae, f	fibula, calf- bone, peroneal bone	[ˈfibjulə]	малоберцовая кость
organum (organon), i, n	organ	[ˈo:gən]	орган
segmentum, i, n	segment, section	[ˈsegmənt]	сегмент
squama, ae, f	squama, squame, scale	[ˈskweimə]	чешуя
tibia, ae, f	tibia, shin-bone	[ˈtibiə]	большеберцовая кость
ulna, ae, f	ulna, elbow bone	[ˈʌlnə]	локтевая кость

С

os, oris n	mouth	[mauθ]	рот
porus, i m	pore	[po:]	пора, отверстие

UNIT 5

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of comparison: the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

The Comparative is regularly formed by adding *-ior* (neuter *-ius*), the Superlative by adding *-issimus* (*-a*, *-um*), to the stem of the Positive, which loses its final vowel: *carus* (dear) (stem *caro-*); *carior* (dearer); *carissimus* (dearest). *levis* (light) (stem *levi-*); *levior* (lighter); *levissimus* (lightest). *felix* (happy) (stem *felic-*); *felicior* (happier); *felicissimus* (happiest).

A form of diminutive is made upon the stem of some comparatives: as *grandius-culus* (a little larger).

Participles when used as adjectives are regularly compared:

patiens (patient), *patientior*, *patientissimus*.

apertus (open), *apertior*, *apertissimus*.

Adjectives in *-er* form the Superlative by adding *-rimus* to the nominative. The comparative is regular:

acer (keen), *acrior*, *acerrimus*.

miser (wretched), *miserior*, *miserrimus*.

Irregular Comparison

Several adjectives have in their comparison irregular forms:

bonus (good)	melior (better)	optimus (best).
malus (bad)	peiior (worse)	pessimus (worst).
magnus (great)	maior (greater)	maximus (greatest).
parvus (small)	minor (less)	minimus (least).
multus (much)	plus (more)	plurimus (most).
multi (many)	plures (more)	plurimi (most).
nequam (worthless)	nequior	nequissimus.
frugi (useful, worthy)	frugalior	frugalissimus.

dexter (on the right, handy) dexterior dextimus.

These irregularities arise from the use of different stems. Thus *frugalior* and *frugalissimus* are formed from the stem *frugali-*, but are used as the comparative and superlative of the indeclinable *frugi*.

Defective Comparison

Some Comparatives and Superlatives appear without a Positive:

ocior (swifter) *ocissimus* (swiftest).

potior (preferable) *potissimus* (most important).

The following are formed from stems not used as adjectives:

in, intra (prep., in, within): *interior* (inner) *intimus* (inmost).

prae, pro (prep., before): *prior* (former) *primus* (first).

prope (adv., near): *propior* (nearer) *proximus* (next).

ultra (adv., beyond): *ulterior* (farther) *ultimus* (farthest).

Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):

externus (outward) – exterior (outer) – *extremus* (*extimus*) (outmost);

inforus (below) – inferior (lower) – *infimus* (*imus*) (lowest);

posterus (following) – posterior (latter) – *postremus* (*postumus*) (last);

superus (above) – superior (higher) – *supremus* or *summus* (highest).

Several adjectives lack the Comparative or the Superlative:

The Comparative is rare or wanting in the following: *novus*, *invictus*, *pius*, *falsus*, *sacer*, *meritus*.

Many adjectives (as *aureus* (golden)) are from their meaning incapable of comparison. But each language has its own usage in this respect. Thus, *niger* (glossy black) and *candidus* (shining white) are compared; but not *ater* or *albus*, meaning absolute dead black or white.

Comparatives: Declension

Comparatives are declined as follows:

melior (better), STEM *melior-* for *melios*; *plus* (more), STEM *plur-* for *plus-*. There is a Masc./Fem. and a separate Neuter for *melius*. But *plus* has just one form

SINGULAR

NOM. <i>melior</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>plus</i>
GEN. <i>melioris</i>	<i>melioris</i>	<i>pluris</i>
DAT. <i>meliori</i>	<i>meliori</i>	<i>pluri</i>
ACC. <i>meliolem</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>plus</i>
ABL. <i>meliore (-i)</i>	<i>meliore (-i)</i>	<i>plure</i>

PLURAL

NOM. <i>meliores</i>	<i>meliora</i>	<i>plures</i>	<i>plura</i>
GEN. <i>meliorum</i>	<i>meliorum</i>	<i>plurium</i>	<i>plurum</i>
DAT. <i>melioribus</i>	<i>melioribus</i>	<i>pluribus</i>	<i>pluribus</i>
ACC. <i>meliores(-is)</i>	<i>meliora</i>	<i>plures (-is)</i>	<i>plura</i>
ABL. <i>melioribus</i>	<i>melioribus</i>	<i>pluribus</i>	<i>pluribus</i>

All comparatives except *plus* are declined like *melior*.

EXERCISES

1. Agree the following adjectives with the nouns. Translate the word-combinations into Latin:

Greater (ala, horn, head, sulcus, curvature, papilla); lesser (muscle, horn, fossa, curvature, ala); anterior (crest, sulcus, tubercle, opening); posterior (face, arch, ligament); lower (sinus, limb, artery, ligament); upper (limb, ganglion, incisure, foramen, process).

2. Translate into Latin the nominations of bones:

Ethmoid bone; palatine bone; lower jaw bone; upper jaw bone; radius; temporal bone; shoulder bone; elbow bone; heel bone; frontal bone; occipital bone; zygomatic bone; lacrimal bone; hyoid bone; coccyx; innominate bone/hip bone; sacred bone; nasal bone; knee-cap; trapezoid bone; thigh bone; calf-bone/peroneal bone; shin-bone; ankle bone.

3. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A. Palatine process of lower jaw; articular process of vertebra; jugular notch of breast bone; profound cervical lymphatic node; transverse sinus of pericardium; furrow of the radial nerve; left lumbar trunk; right horn of womb (uterus); lateral condyle; aperture of frontal sinus; round ligament of womb.

B. Articular face of acromion, mucosa of nose; lamina of arch of vertebra; marrow of thymus; fibrous capsule of thyroid gland.

C. soft palate; hard palate; nasal surface of upper jaw; perpendicular plate of palatine bone; intermedial part of lip of mouth; profound vein of face; middle passage of nose; median sulcus of tongue; external dental epithelium; accessory nasal cartilage; middle nasal concha; masseteric fascia (massetericus, a, um).

4. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A. Posterior ethmoid opening; anterior longitudinal ligament; greater palatine furrow; greater palatine opening; anterior medial surface; upper cervical ganglion.

B. Anterior sacral opening; upper posterior iliac spine; lower articular process; smaller sciatic notch; posterior gluteal line; tonsil of cerebellum; anterior cutaneous branch; anterior articular surface of ankle-bone.

5. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A. Upper longitudinal muscle of tongue; right branch of portal vein; entrance of lower hollow vein; greater horn of hyoid bone; sulcus of lower petrosal sinus; crest of greater tubercle; lower dental arch; upper bulb of jugular vein; process of lower nasal concha; sulcus of greater petrosal nerve; temporal face of greater ala; muscle of upper eyelid; upper articular process of lumbar vertebra; frenulum of upper lip; posterior artery of brain.

B. Maxillary process; process of lower nasal concha; entrance of upper hollow vein; skeleton of upper limb; smaller ala of sphenoid bone; bottom of urinary bladder; anterior ligament of head of calf-bone; anterior lobe of cerebellum; lower face of tongue.

C. Posterior ethmoid opening; anterior longitudinal ligament; greater palatine sulcus; greater palatine opening, frontal medial surface, superior cervical ganglion.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 5

A

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
anterior, ius	anterior	[æn'tiəriə]	передний
auricularis, e	auricular	[o:'rikjulə]	ушной
bulbus, i, m	bulbus, bulb	['bʌlbəs]	луковица
bulbus oculi	eyeball, globe of the eye	['ai bo:l]	глазное яблоко
bursa, ae, f	bursa, pouch (<i>sac of fluid located at and around joints which act as cushions and reduce friction</i>)	['bɜ:sə]	сумка
cavus, a, um	hollow, sunken	['holou]	полый
cerebellum, i, n	cerebellum	[,serə'beləm]	мозжечок
cerebrum, i, n	cerebrum	['serəbrəm]	большой (головной) мозг
curvatura, ae, f	curvature, bending	['kɜ:vətʃə]	кривизна
dorsalis, e	dorsal	['do:səl]	тыльный, спинной, (задний), дорсальный
encephalon,	encephalon, brain	[эн'sefələn]	головной мозг

i, n			
facialis, e	facial	[ˈfeɪl]	лицевой
ganglion, i, n	ganglion	[ˈgæŋgliən]	ганглий, узел (нервный)
inferior, ius	inferior, lower	[ɪnˈfɪəriə]	нижний
laryngēus, a, um	laryngeal	[ˌlærinˈdʒiəl]	гортанный
magnus, a, um	great, large	[ˈgreɪt]	большой
major, ius	greater	[ˈgreɪtə]	большой
medulla, ae, f	medulla, marrow <i>or inner portion</i>	[meˈdulə]	мозговое вещество, мозг
minor, us	smaller, lesser	[ˈsmoːlə]	малый
nervus, i, m	nerve	[ˈnɜːv]	нерв
nodus, i, m	node, knot	[ˈnɒd]	узел
oculus, i, m	eye	[aɪ]	глаз
ostium, i n	mouth, entrance	[ˈmouθ]	устье
parietalis, e	parietal	[pəˈraɪətəl]	теменной
parvus, a, um	small, little	[ˈsmoːl]	маленький
pharyngēus, a, um	pharyngeal	[ˌfærinˈdʒiəl]	глоточный
pleura, ae, f	pleura, pleural membrane	[ˈpluərə]	плевра
posterior, ius	posterior	[posˈtɪəriə]	задний
profundus, a, um	profound, deep	[prəˈfaʊnd]	глубокий
superior, ius	superior, upper	[suːˈpiəriə]	верхний
thymus, i, m	thymus	[ˈθaɪməs]	вилочковая железа, тимус
urethra, ae, f	urethra, the urinary tract, <i>the tube leading from the urinary bladder to the external surface</i>	[juəˈriːθrə]	мочеиспускательный канал, уретра
vena portae	portal vein	[ˈpoːtəl vein]	воротная вена
ventralis, e	ventral	[ˈventrəl]	вентральный (передний)
vesica, ae, f	bladder	[ˈblædə]	пузырь

В

cutaneus, a, um	cutaneous	[kjuˈteɪniəs]	кожный
ischadicus, a, um	ischadic, ischiatic, sciatic	[ˌɪskiˈædɪk]	седалищный

latus, a, um	broad, wide	['bro:d]	широкий
longus, a, um	long	['lɒŋ]	длинный
mastoideus, a, um	mastoid	['mæstoid]	сосцевидный
squamosus, a, um	squamous, squamosal	['skweiməs] [,skwei'mousəl]	чешуйчатый
trapezoideus, a, um	trapezoid	['træpəzoid]	трапециевидный
urinarius, a, um	urinary	['jʊrinəri]	мочевой

С

lacrimalis, e	lacrimal	['lækriməl]	слезный
lingualis, e	lingual	['liŋvəl]	язычный

UNIT 6

NUMERALS

The Latin Numerals may be classified as follows:

I. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES:

1. Cardinal Numbers, answering the question "How many?" as *unus* (one); *duo* (two), etc.
2. Ordinal Numbers, which are adjectives derived (in most cases) from the Cardinals, and answering the question "Which in order?" as *primus* (first); *secundus* (second), etc.
3. Distributive Numerals, answering the question "How many at a time?" as *singuli* (one at a time); *biner* (two by two), etc.

II. NUMERAL ADVERBS, answering the question "How often?" as *semel* (once); *bis* (twice), etc.

Cardinals and Ordinals

These two series are as follows:

CARDINAL

1. unus, una, unum (one)
2. duo, duae, duo (two)
3. tres, tria (three)
4. quattuor
5. quinque
6. sex
7. septem
8. octo
9. novem
10. decem
11. undecim
12. duodecim

ORDINAL ROMAN NUMERALS

- primus, -a, -um (first I)
- secundus (second II)
- tertius (third III)
- quartus (III or IV)
- quintus (V)
- sextus (VI)
- septimus (VII)
- octavus (VIII)
- nonus (VIII or IX)
- decimus (X)
- undecimus (XI)
- duodecimus (XII)

Declension of Cardinals and Ordinals

Of the Cardinals only *unus*, *duo*, *tres*, the hundreds above one hundred, and *mille* when used as a noun, are declinable.

Duo, two, and *tres*, three, are thus declined:

M. F. N.	M./F. N.
NOM. duo duae duo	tres tria
GEN. duorum duarum duorum	trium trium
DAT. duobus duabus duobus	tribus tribus
ACC. duos (duo) duas duo	tres (tris) tria
ABL. duobus duabus duobus	tribus tribus

NOTE. *Ambo* (both) is declined like *duo*.

The hundreds, up to 1000, are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are regularly declined like the plural of *bonus*.

The ordinals are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are regularly declined like *bonus*.

Cardinals and Ordinals have the following uses:

In numbers below 100, if units precede tens, *et* is generally inserted: *duo et viginti* (22); otherwise *et* is omitted: *viginti duo*.

In numbers above 100 the highest denomination generally stands first, the next second, etc., as in English. *Et* is either omitted entirely, or stands between the two highest denominations: *mille (et) septingenti sexaginta quattuor*, 1764.

Numeral Adverbs

The Numeral Adverbs answer the question *quotiens* (*quoties*) – "How many times?" "How often?"

1. *semel* (once)
2. *bis* (twice)
3. *ter* (thrice)

4. quater
5. quinquiens (-es)
6. sexiens
7. septiens
8. octiens
9. noviens
10. deciens
11. undeciens
12. duodeciens

Other Numerals

The following adjectives are called Multiplicatives:

simplex (single); *duplex* (double, twofold); *triplex* (triple, threefold); *quadruplex*, *quinquplex*, *septemplex*, *decemplex*, *centuplex*, *sesquplex* (1 1/2), *multiplex* (manifold).

Proportionals are: *duplus*, *triplus*, *quadruplus*, *octuplus*, etc., twice as great, thrice as great, etc.

The Ordinals (except *secundus*, *tertius*, *octavus*, *nonus*) are formed by means of suffixes related to those used in the superlative and in part identical with them. Thus, *decimus* (compare the form *infimus*) may be regarded as the last of a series of ten; *primus* is a superlative of a stem akin to *pro*; the forms in *-tus* (*quartus*, *quintus*, *sextus*) may be compared with the corresponding Greek forms in *-tos*, and with superlatives in *-is-to-s*, while the others have the superlative ending *-timus* (changed to *-simus*).

PRONOUNS

Pronouns are used as Nouns or as Adjectives. They are divided into the following seven classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: as *ego* (I).
2. Reflexive Pronouns: as *se* (himself).

3. Possessive Pronouns: as *meus* (my).
4. Demonstrative Pronouns: as *hic* (this); *ille* (that).
5. Relative Pronouns: as *qui* (who).
6. Interrogative Pronouns: as *quis* (who?).
7. Indefinite Pronouns: as *aliquis* (some one).

Personal Pronouns

The Personal pronouns of the first person are *ego* (I), *nos* (we); of the second person, *tu* (thou or you), *vos* (ye or you). The personal pronouns of the third person – he, she, it, they – are wanting in Latin, a demonstrative being sometimes used instead.

Ego and *tu* are declined as follows:

FIRST PERSON

Singular	Plural
NOM. <i>ego</i> (I)	<i>nos</i> (we)
GEN. <i>mei</i> (of me)	<i>nostrum, nostri</i> (of us)
DAT. <i>mihi</i> (mi) (to me)	<i>nobis</i> (to us)
ACC. <i>me</i> (me)	<i>nos</i> (us)
ABL. <i>me</i> (by me)	<i>nobis</i> (by us)

SECOND PERSON

NOM <i>tu</i> (thou or you)	<i>vos</i> (ye or you)
GEN. <i>tui</i> (of thee or you)	<i>vestrum, vestri; vostrum</i> (-tr̄er)
DAT. <i>tibi</i>	<i>vobis</i>
ACC. <i>te</i>	<i>vos</i>
ABL. <i>te</i>	<i>vobis</i>

Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns are used in the Oblique Cases to refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand: as *se amat* - he loves himself.

In the first and second persons the oblique cases of the Personal pronouns are used as Reflexives: as *me video* - I see myself; *te laudas* - you praise yourself; *nobis persuademus* - we persuade ourselves.

The Reflexive pronoun of the third person has a special form used only in this sense, the same for both singular and plural. It is thus declined:

GEN. *sui* (of himself, herself, itself, themselves).

DAT. *sibi* (to himself, herself, itself, themselves).

ACC. *se (sese)* (himself, herself, itself, themselves).

ABL. *se* (*sese*), ([by] himself, herself, itself, themselves).

Possessive Pronouns

The Possessive pronouns are:

FIRST PERSON. *meus* (my) *noster* (our)

SECOND PERSON. *tuus* (thy) *vester* (your)

THIRD PERSON. *suus* (his, her, its) *suus* (their)

These are really adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are so declined.

Demonstrative Pronouns

The Demonstrative Pronouns are used to point out or designate a person or thing for special attention, either with nouns as Adjectives or alone as Pronouns. They are: *hic* (this); *is*, *ille*, *iste* (that); with the Intensive *ipse* (self), and *idem* (same).

Relative Pronouns

The Relative Pronoun *qui* (who), which can be of masculine, feminine, neuter gender:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. I	we
2. you	you
3. he	they
4. she	
5. it	
6. he	
7. she	
8. it	
9. he	
10. she	
11. it	
12. he	
13. she	
14. it	
15. he	
16. she	
17. it	
18. he	
19. she	
20. it	

M. F. N. M. F. N.

NOM. qui quae quod qui quae quae

Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns

The Substantive Interrogative Pronouns are *quis*, M.F. (who?), *quid*, N. (what?)

The Indefinite Pronouns: *quis* (any one) and *qui* (any) are declined like the corresponding Interrogatives, but *qua* is commonly used for *quae* except in the nominative plural feminine:

SUBSTANTIVE: *quis* (any one); *quid* (anything).

ADJECTIVE: *qui*, *qua* (*quae*), *quod* (any).

The Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns are originally of the same stem, and most of the forms are the same.

PREFIXES commonly used in Latin medical terms

<i>Latin prefix</i>	<i>English prefix</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Example in Latin</i>	<i>Example in English</i>	<i>Russian equivalent</i>
inter-	inter-	between	intercostalis, e	intercostal	межреберный
intra-	intra-	inside	Intrajugularis, e	intrajugular	внутриартериальный
infra-	infra-	below, under	infraclavicularis, e	infraclavicular	подключичный
sub-	sub-	below, under	sublingualis, e	sublingual (duct)	подъязычный
hypo-	hypo-	under, below	hypoglossus, a, um	hypoglossal (nerve)	подъязычный
epi-	epi-	above	epigastricus, a, um	epigastric	надчревный
pre-/prae-	pre-	before	precaecalis, e	precaecal	предслепкишный
post-	post-	after	postcentralis, e	postcentral	постцентральный
retro-	retro-	behind	retroauricularis, e	retroauricular	заушный
para-	para-	near, close to	paravaginalis, e	paravaginal	околовагинальный
peri-	peri-	around	pericardialis, e	pericardial	перикардальный
supra-	supra-	above, over	supraorbitalis, e	supraorbital	надглазничный

Substantivation of Adjectives

The process of converting adjectives and participles into nouns is called substantivation of adjectives or participles. That means that adjectives acquire characteristics of nouns and start functioning as nouns in a sentence. Ex. *rich people* ® *the rich*. This process gave rise to a number of words denoting intestines, coats/tunics.

INTESTINES

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
intestinum, i, n	intestine	кишка
ileum, i, n	ileum	подвздошная кишка
jejunum	jejunum	тощая кишка
intestinum tenue	small intestine	тонкая кишка
intestinum crassum	large intestine	толстая кишка

COATS/TUNICS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
conjunctiva, ae, f	conjunctiva	соединительная оболочка глаза, конъюнктива
cornea, ae, f	cornea	роговица, роговая оболочка глаза
decidua, ae, f	decidua (deciduous coat)	отпадающая оболочка
mucosa, ae, f	mucosa	слизистая (оболочка)

ADJECTIVE COMPOUNDS

Adjective compounds are adjectives consisting of 2 or 3 roots. They are used to denote anatomic formations, either spreading from 1 organ to another or related to 2 organs. As a rule, when several roots are combined to make one adjective, the linking ‘o’ is used.

Ex. Lat. nervus musculocutaneus (Eng. musculocutaneous nerve)

Lat. musculus brachioradialis (Eng. brachioradial muscle)

EXERCISES

1. Build adjectives matching the descriptions below using prefixes. State their Dictionary Entry Form:

1. 'Under the ribs'
2. 'Between the bones'
3. 'Under mucosa'
4. 'Under the eye orbit'
5. 'Behind the pharynx'
6. 'Above the collar bone'
7. 'Inside the muscle'
8. 'Under the lower jaw'
9. 'Above the kidney'
10. 'Above the breastbone'
11. 'Near the nose'

2. Write the following nouns in the Dictionary Entry form:

- a) orbita, periosteum, colon, genu, ostium, vagina, encephalon, bursa, stratum, junctura, tympanum, gingiva;
- b) os, corpus, foramen, pars, caput, crus, dens.

3. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A. The smallest gluteal muscle; the broadest muscle of back; bursa of the broadest muscle of neck; the longest muscle of neck; the biggest gluteal muscle; the longest muscle of chest; the highest nasal concha.

C. Stylohyoid muscle; decidual tooth; wisdom tooth (=late tooth); lower incisor (tooth); molar tooth; surface of the crown of upper molar tooth; upper canine tooth; tubercle of lower canine tooth; root of medial upper incisor tooth; lingual surface of lower premolar tooth.

4. Translate the following terms into Latin:

Upper cervical ganglion; lower oblique muscle of eyeball; incisure of round ligament; artery of posterior segment; lower collateral ulnar vein; entrance of lower hollow vein; lesser sternal muscle; upper head of lateral pterygoid muscle; long muscle of neck; fibrous capsule of thyroid gland; large occipital opening; anterior surface of elbow bone; greater curvature of stomach; anterior horn of spinal marrow; anterior iliac bone; bottom of urinary bladder.

5. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A. Sacral flexure of rectum; bottom of stomach; gastroduodenal artery; longitudinal fold of duodenum; right flexure of colon; horizontal part of duodenum; ampoule of rectum; muscular coat of small intestine; sigmoid colon; cardiac entrance of stomach; intestinal surface of uterus; round ligament of uterus; bottom of uterus; uterine tube; transverse ligament of perinaeum; left ventricle; greater round muscle; iliac tuber; iliac crest.

B. Paravaginal lymph node; retropharyngeal lymph node; posterior cutaneous nerve of forearm; deep transverse muscle of perinaeum; common iliac artery; rectovaginal partition; stylopharyngeal muscle; semilunar fold of the conjunctiva; sternothyroid muscle.

6. Translate the terms into Latin:

A. Palatine bone; horizontal plate of palatine bone; parietal bone; squamous border of parietal bone; frontal bone; zygomatic process of frontal bone; petrosal sinus; sulcus of petrosal sinus; facial muscle; cavity of peritoneum; bottom of stomach; lower nasal passage; anterior cerebrospinal artery; internal vertebral venous plexus; lateral pterygoid muscle; upper trunk of brachial plexus; broad ligament of uterus; upper cervical ganglion; muscular plate of mucosa of oesophagus; greater straight muscle of head; lateral horn of spinal marrow.

B. Left lumbar trunk; anterior lip of womb, profound infrapatellar bursa; lateral ventricle; vaginal venous plexus; right jugular trunk; oblique sinus of pericardium; lower horn of lateral ventricle; sciatic pouch of greatest gluteal muscle; proper ligament of ovary; palmar cutaneous branch of ulnar nerve; interosseous space; subparietal furrow; vagina of eyeball; lower bulb of internal jugular vein; intraparietal furrow; marrow of ovary.

C. Upper canine tooth; mucous part of lip of mouth; lateral surface of zygomatic bone; wisdom tooth; submandibular ganglion; superior orbital fissure of lesser ala; occipitopalatine muscle; upper molar; masseteric nerve; trigeminal nerve; omohyoid muscle; mucosa of tongue; ethmoid crest of frontal process of maxilla; surface of crown of upper molar; triangle of sublingual nerve; motor root (*motorius, a, um*) of trigeminal nerve; root of medial upper incisor; tubercle of lower canine; superior and middle nasal concha; body of hyoid bone; alveolar part of lower jaw; frenulum of lower lip; alar process of ethmoid bone; milk tooth; notch of lower jaw.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 6

A

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
colon, i, n	colon	[ˈkoulən]	ободочная кишка
duodenum, i, n	duodenum	[,duəuˈdɪnəm] [,duˈodɪnəm]	двенадцатиперстная кишка
gastricus, a, um	gastric	[ˈgæstriːk]	желудочный
hyoideus, a, um	hyoid	[ˈhaɪɔɪd]	подъязычный (кость и др.)
hypoglossus, a, um	hypoglossal	[,haɪpəˈɡlɒsəl]	подъязычный (нерв и др.)
ileum, i, n	ileum	[ˈɪliəm]	подвздошная кишка
iliacus, a, um	iliac	[ˈɪliæk]	подвздошный
intestinum, i, n	intestine	[ɪnˈtestɪn]	кишка
intestinalis, e	intestinal	[ɪnˈtestɪnəl]	кишечный
maximus, a, um	greatest, biggest	[ˈɡreɪtəst]	наибольший
minimus, a, um	minimal, smallest	[ˈmɪnɪməl]	наименьший
mucosa, ae, f	mucosa	[,mjuːkɒsə]	слизистая (оболочка)

mucosus, a, um	mucous	[ˈmju: kəs]	слизистый
oesophagus, i, m	(o)esophagus	[iˈsofəgəs]	пищевод
oesophagēus, a, um	(o)esophageal	[i,sofəˈdʒiəl]	пищеводный
peritonēum, i, n	peritoneum	[,peritouˈniəm]	брюшина
peritonealis, e	peritoneal	[,peritouˈniəl]	брюшинный
rectum, i, n	rectum	[ˈrektəm]	прямая кишка

В

anus, i m	anus	[ˈeinəs]	задний проход
anal, e	anal	[ˈeinəl]	анальный
caecum, i n	caecum, blind gut	[ˈsi:kəm]	слепая кишка
conjunctiva, ae, f	conjunctiva	[kondʒʌŋkˈtaɪvə]	конъюнктив
flexura, ae, f	flexura, flexure	[flekˈʃurə]	изгиб
fundus, i, m	fundus, bottom	[ˈfʌndəs]	дно
jejunum, i, n	jejunum	[dʒeˈdʒunəm]	тощая кишка
ovarium, i, n	ovarium, ovary	[ouˈveiriəm]	яичник
perin(a)eum, i, n	perineum	[,periˈniəm]	промежность
pylorus, i, m	pylorus	[paiˈlourəs]	привратник
pyloricus, a, um	pyloric	[paiˈlourik]	привратниковый
sacrococcygeus, a, um	sacrococcygeal	[,sekroukoksiˈdʒiəl]	крестцово- копчиковый
stylopharyngeus, a, um	stylopharyngeal	[,stailəfærinˈdʒiəl]	шило-глоточный
stylohyoideus, a, um	stylohyoid	[,stailəˈhaïd]	щило- подъязычный
tenuis, e	slender, slim	[ˈslendə]	тонкий
intestinum tenue	small intestine	[ˈsmo:l inˈtestin]	тонкая кишка
truncus, i m	trunk	[ˈtrʌŋk]	ствол, туловище

С

caninus, a, um	canine	[ˈkeɪnain]	клыковый
deciduus, a, um	decidual, milk (about teeth)	[diˈsidʒuəl]	молочный
dens, dentis m	tooth	[tu:θ]	зуб
geniohyoideus, a, um	geniohyoid	[dʒenəˈhaïd]	подбородочно- подъязычный
incisivus, a, um	incisive	[inˈsaizə]	резцовый
infrahyoideus, a, um	infrahyoid	[,ɪnfrəˈhaïd]	подподъязычный
molaris, e	molar, multicuspid	[ˈmoulə]	большой коренной
premolaris, e	premolar,	[priˈmoulə]	малый коренной

	bicuspid		
serotinus, a, um	late (<i>about teeth</i>)	[leit]	поздний
sternohyoideus, a, um	sternohyoid	[,stə:nə'haioid]	грудино-подъязычный
stylohyoideus, a, um	stylohyoid	[,stailə'haioid]	шило-подъязычный
suprahyoideus, a, um	suprahyoid	[,su:prə'haioid]	надподъязычный
thyrohyoideus, a, um	thyrohyoid	[,θairə'haioid]	щитоподъязычный

UNIT 7

THIRD DECLENSION (CONSONANT AND i-STEMS)

Nouns of the Third Declension end in a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

Stems of the Third Declension are classed as follows:

I. Consonant Stems:

- a. Mute stems.
- b. Liquid and Nasal stems.

II. I-Stems:

- a. Pure i-stems.
- b. Mixed i-stems.

The Nominative is always derived from the stem. The variety in form in the Nominative is due to simple modifications of the stem, of which the most important are:

1. Combination of final consonants: as of c (or g) and s to form x: *dux, ducis* – stem *duc-*; *rex, regis* – stem *reg-*.
2. Omission of a final consonant: as of a final nasal: *leo, leonis* – stem *leon-*; *oratio, orationis* – stem *oration-*.
3. Omission of a final vowel: as of final i: *calcar, calcaris* – stem *calcari-*.
4. Change of vowel in the final syllable: as of a to e: *princeps* (for *-caps*), *principis* – stem *princip-* (for *-cap-*).

Consonant Stems

Mute Stems. Masculine and Feminine Nouns with mute stems form the Nominative by adding s to the stem.

Nouns of this class are declined as follows: *princeps*, N., (chief); *radix*, F. (root); *miles*, M. (soldier)

STEM *princip-* "chief"

SINGULAR

Nom.	princeps
Gen.	principis
Dat.	principi
Acc.	principem
Abl.	principe
Voc.	princeps

PLURAL

Nom.	principes
Gen.	principum
Dat.	principibus
Acc.	principes
Abl.	principibus
Voc.	principes

SINGULAR

Nom.	radix
Gen.	radicis
Dat.	radici
Acc.	radicem
Abl.	radice
Voc.	radix

PLURAL

Nom.	radices
Gen.	radicum
Dat.	radicibus
Acc.	radices
Abl.	radicibus
Voc.	radices

SINGULAR

Nom.	miles
------	-------

Gen.	militis
Dat.	militi
Acc.	militem
Abl.	milite
Voc.	miles

PLURAL

Nom.	milites
Gen.	militum
Dat.	militibus
Acc.	milites
Abl.	militibus
Voc.	milites

Most mute stems are Masculine or Feminine. Those that are neuter have for the Nominative the simple stem. But: Lingual Stems (t, d) ending in two consonants drop the final mute: as *cor* (stem *cord-*), *lac* (stem *lact-*). The stem *capit-* shows u in the nominative (*caput* for *capot*).

Nouns of this class are declined as follows: *cor*, N. (heart); *caput*, N. (head). STEM *cord-* STEM *capit-* .

SINGULAR

Nom.	cor
Gen.	cordis
Dat.	cordi
Acc.	cor
Abl.	corde
Voc.	cor

PLURAL

Nom.	corda
Gen.	cordium
Dat.	cordibus

Acc. corda
Abl. cordibus
Voc. corda

SINGULAR

Nom. caput
Gen. capitis
Dat. capiti
Acc. caput
Abl. capite
Voc. caput

PLURAL

Nom. capita
Gen. capitum
Dat. capitibus
Acc. capita
Abl. capitibus
Voc. capita

In Masculine and Feminine nouns with liquid and nasal stems the Nominative is the same as the stem.

Nouns of this class are declined as follows: *pater*, M. (father)

SINGULAR

Nom. pater
Gen. patris
Dat. patri
Acc. patrem
Abl. patre
Voc. pater

PLURAL

Nom.	patres
Gen.	patrium
Dat.	patribus
Acc.	patres
Abl.	patribus
Voc.	patres

NOTE. Stems in ll-, rr- (N.) lose one of their liquids in the nominative: as *fel*, *fellis*; *mel*, *mellis*.

In Neuter nouns with liquid or nasal stems the Nominative is the same as the stem.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Stems in in- have e instead of i in the nominative: as in *nomen* - stem *nomin-*.

2. Most stems in er- and or- have -us in the nominative: as *genus* (race) – stem *gener-*.

Nouns of this class are declined as follows: *nomen*, N. (name); *corpus*, N. (body).

SINGULAR

Nom.	nomen
Gen.	nominis
Dat.	nomini
Acc.	nomen
Abl.	nomine
Voc.	nomen

PLURAL

Nom.	nomina
Gen.	nominum
Dat.	nominibus
Acc.	nomina
Abl.	nominibus
Voc.	nomina

SINGULAR

Nom.	corpus
Gen.	corporis
Dat.	corpori
Acc.	corpus
Abl.	corpore
Voc.	corpus

PLURAL

Nom.	corpora
Gen.	corporum
Dat.	corporibus
Acc.	corpore
Abl.	corporibus
Voc.	corpora

The i-STEMS

Nouns of this class include:

1. Pure i-Stems:

Masculine and Feminine parasyllabic nouns in -is and four in -er.

Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar.

2. Mixed i-Stems, declined in the singular like consonant stems, the plural like i-stems.

Masculine and Feminine parasyllabic nouns in -is form the Nominative singular by adding s to the stem.

Nouns of this class are declined as follows: *sitis*, F. (thirst); *ignis*, M. (fire).

SINGULAR

Nom.	sitis
Gen.	sitis
Dat.	siti
Acc.	sitim

Abl.	siti	
Voc.	sitis	
SINGULAR		
Nom.	ignis	
Gen.	ignis	
Dat.	igni	
Acc.	ignem	
Abl.	igne	
Voc.	ignis	
PLURAL		
Nom.	ignes	
Gen.	ignium	
Dat.	ignibus	
Acc.	ignes	
Abl.	ignibus	
Voc.	ignes	

In Neuters the Nominative is the same as the stem, with final i changed to e: as *mare* – stem *mari-*. But most nouns in which the i of the stem is preceded by -al or -ar lose the final vowel and shorten the preceding a: as *animal* – stem *animali-*. Nouns of this class are declined as follows:

SINGULAR		
Nom.	animal	
Gen.	animalis	
Dat.	animali	
Acc.	animal	
Abl.	animali	
Voc.	animal	
PLURAL		
Nom.	animalia	

Gen.	animalium
Dat.	animalibus
Acc.	animalia
Abl.	animalibus
Voc.	animalia

Mixed i-Stems

Mixed i-stems are either original i-stems that have lost their i-forms in the singular, or consonant stems that have assumed i- forms in the plural.

They include the following:

1. Nouns in -es, gen. -is.
2. Monosyllables in -s or -x preceded by a consonant: as *ars, pons, arx*.
3. Polysyllables in -ns or -rs: as *cliens, cohors*.
4. Nouns in -tas, genitive -tatis (genitive plural usually -um): as *cavitas*.
5. The following monosyllables in -s or -x preceded by a vowel: *dos, nox*.

Nouns of this class are thus declined: *nox*, F. (night) *cliens*, M. (client)

SINGULAR

Nom.	nox
Gen.	noctis
Dat.	nocti
Acc.	noctem
Abl.	nocte
Voc.	nox

PLURAL

Nom.	noctes
Gen.	noctium
Dat.	noctibus
Acc.	noctes
Abl.	noctibus
Voc.	noctes

SINGULAR

Nom.	cliens
Gen.	clientis
Dat.	clienti
Acc.	clientem
Abl.	cliente
Voc.	cliens

PLURAL

Nom.	clientes
Gen.	clientium
Dat.	clientibus
Acc.	clientes
Abl.	clientibus
Voc.	clientes

MASCULINE NOUNS OF III DECLENSION

For practical purposes all the above-mentioned stems will be grouped according to their gender. In this Unit we will focus on Masculine Nouns of the III Declension including a number of stems and showing a variety of Nominative Singular endings.

Masculine nouns of the Third Declension may have one of the following terminations in the Nominative Case: *-os*; *-or*; *-o*; *-es*; *-er*; *-ex*. The Genitive Case form is used for defining the stem the word has. As has been mentioned earlier the stems differ in final letters or their combinations. These final letters are also what makes the Nominative Singular and Genitive Singular so different. The next important fact is that the stem found in the Genitive Singular is used for deriving other case forms as well as new words. In the table below the Nominative Singular terminations are contrasted to those of Genitive Singular preceded by the final letters differentiating word-stems.

Masculine Nouns of the Third Declension

Gender	Masculine					
Nom. Sing	-os	-o	-or	-es	-ex	-er
Gen. Sing	<u>or</u> + <u>is</u>	<u>o/i</u> + <u>nis</u>	<u>or</u> + <u>is</u>	<u>t/d</u> + <u>is</u>	<u>ic</u> + <u>is</u>	<u>r/er</u> + <u>is</u>

NOTE. Nouns ending in -es may be either masculine or feminine. It depends on the fact whether the number of syllables in their Nominative Singular and Genitive Singular forms is different or similar. If it is similar (parisyllabic forms) the noun is feminine (pubes, is, f). If it is different (non-parisyllabic forms) the noun is masculine (paries, etis, m).

Words exemplifying the above-stated peculiarities of Masculine Nouns of the Third Declension together with Exceptions are included in Vocabulary Extension 7.

MUSCLE NOMINATIONS

Muscles are nominated in 3 possible ways. They are named:

1. according to their shape – ***musculus rhomboideus*** (Eng. *rhomboideus muscle*);
2. according to the anatomic formation they are related to – ***musculus auricularis*** (Eng. *auricular muscle*);
3. according to their function. In this case they consist of two words: the 1st word is ***musculus***, the 2nd signifies its function. Ex. ***musculus extensor***, ***musculus flexor***. Both words agree in number and case.

Nom. Sing. ***musculus rotator***

Gen. Sing. ***musculi rotatoris***

As a rule, the 1st word is used in the abbreviated form (*m.*). The second word is always a masculine noun of III Declension. The compound terms including names of muscles signifying their functions may be also complemented by subordinate nouns specifying their meaning. In this case they have the following pattern:

m. levator scapulae – (M. + Name of the Muscle + Subordinate Noun in the Genitive Case).

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Function Description</i>
m. abductor	abductor	muscle drawing a limb away from the body
m. adductor	adductor	muscle drawing a limb towards the body
m. buccinator	buccinator	muscle moving cheeks
m. constrictor	constrictor	narrowing muscle (e. g. of pharynx)
m. depressor	depressor	muscle driving down
m. levator	levator	muscle driving up/lifting
m. masseter	masseter	muscle for chewing
m. rotator	rotator	rotating muscle (making a circular movement)
m. sphincter	sphincter	round contracting muscle
m. tensor	tensor	straining muscle
m. corrugator	corrugator	wrinkling muscle
m. cremaster	cremaster	muscle lifting the testicle
m. dilatator	dilatator	dilating muscle
m. extensor	extensor	extending muscle
m. flexor	flexor	flexing muscle
m. pronator	pronator	turning the palm/foot face down
m. supinator	supinator	turning the palm/foot face up

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English:

Foramen zygomaticofaciale; musculus palatoglossus; cavum nasi; plexus dentalis superior; collum mandibulae; musculus palatopharyngeus; processus palatinus maxillae; facies lingualis coronae dentis canini inferioris; crista lacrimalis posterior; raphe pterygomandibularis; ductus sublingualis major glandulae sublingualis; facies palatina laminae horizontalis.

2. State which nouns have the same number of syllables in their Nominative Singular and Genitive Singular forms (parisyllabic forms):

Auris, is; pyramis, idis; cutis, is; dens, dentis; herpes, etis; tabes, is; viscus, eris; aponeurosis, is; mors, mortis; extremitas, atis; mare, is; nomen, ĩnis; oedema, ātis; pestis, is; pollex, ĩcis; terminatio, ōnis; incus, ūdis; pectus, ōris; glomus, ěris; cor, cordis; occiput, ĩtis.

4. Find the stems (bases) of the following nouns:

Pars, partis, f; ala, ae, f; nervus, i, m; genu, us, n; magister, tri, m; meniscus, i, m; sphincter, ěris, m; ligamentum, i, n; ramus, i, m; plexus, us, m; cervix, ĩcis, f; diaphragma, ātis, n; canālis, is, m; articulatio, ōnis, f; tuber, ěris, n; forāmen, ĩnis, n; cartilāgo, inis, f; tempus, ōris, n; facies, ěi, f; colon, i, n.

5. Pick out masculine nouns:

Radix, icis; paries, etis; corpus, oris; odor, oris; sapo, onis; venter, tris; poples, itis; trochanter, eris; pulmo, onis; levator, oris; tuberositas, atis; cavitas, atis; cervix, icis; pelvis, is; foramen, inis; liquor, oris; rete, is; stapes, edis.

6. Make adjectives agree with nouns; put the resulting word combinations into Gen. Sing.:

1. Trochanter (major, jus; minor, us); paries (mastoideus, a, um; jugularis, e; anterior, ius); pulmo (dexter, tra, trum); pes (calcaneus, a, um; planus, a, um); liquor (cerebrospinalis, e; flavus, a, um); homo (primigenus, a, um); humor (aquosus, a, um; vitreus, a, um)

2. **Exceptions!** Os, ossis n (sphenoidalis, e; hyoideus, a, um; occipitalis, e; sacer, cra, crum); tuber, eris n (cinereus, a, um; frontalis, e; ischiadicus, a, um); mater, tris f (pius, a, um; durus, a, um; arachnoideus, a, um); cor, cordis n (adiposus, a, um; mobilis, e; pulmonalis, e).

7. Translate into Latin:

A. Pulmonary face of heart; temporal process of zygomatic bone; cortex of lymphatic node; short bone; greater and lesser trochanter; sulcus of plowshare; cortex of the brain; cortex of cerebellum; notch of apex of heart; hyoid bone; membranaceous wall of trachea; ethmoid furrow of nasal bone; cardiac notch of left lung; jugular wall of tympanic cavity; right and left lung; anterior wall of stomach; lesser horn of hyoid bone.

B. Belly of muscle; apex of sacred bone; sciatic tuber; pia mater of brain; anterior wall of vagina; branch of sciatic bone; apex of posterior horn; muscular coat of stomach; jugular wall; membrane of stirrup bone; apex of heart.

C. Blind (*cecalis*, *e*) foramen of tongue; angle of mouth; lateral surface of zygomatic bone; vestibule of mouth; temporal process of zygomatic bone.

8. Translate into Latin using terms instead of descriptions:

A. Muscle lifting the thyroid gland; muscle rotating the thorax; muscle straining the tympanic membrane; muscle rotating the neck; long muscle driving aside the thumb; muscle lifting the shoulderblade; muscle straining the broad fascia; muscle dilating a pupil; round contracting muscle of urinary bladder; external round contracting muscle of anus; long radial muscle extending the wrist; lower muscle narrowing the pharynx; short muscle extending great toe (*hallux*, *ūcis*, *m*).

B. Muscle wrinkling the brow; ulnar muscle flexing the wrist; long muscle driving the thumb (little finger, great toe) aside; muscle lifting the prostate gland (upper eyelid); round contracting muscle of the common bile duct (*urethra*, *pylorus*); muscle lifting the palatine velum.

C. Muscle depressing the lower lip; muscle depressing the angle of mouth; muscle depressing the partition of the nose; muscle straining the palatine velum.

9. Translate into English:

A. *Musculus adductor pollicis* (*hallūcis*); *musculus constrictor pharyngis superior*; *musculus flexor digiti minimi brevis*; *musculus pronātor teres*; *musculus sphincter ductus choledōchi*; *musculus depressor septi nasi*; *musculus rotātor cervīcis*.

B. Musculus sphincter ani; musculus extensor indicis; musculus abductor digiti minimi; musculus flexor pollicis longus.

C. Musculus levator labii superioris alaeque nasi; bursa muscoli tensoris veli palatini; musculus masseter; musculus buccinator.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 7

A

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
apex, icis, m	apex, tip	[ˈeɪpeks]	верхушка, кончик (носа, языка)
cortex, icis, m	cortex, bark	[ˈko:təks]	кора, корковое вещество
flos, floris, m	flower	[ˈflaʊə]	цветок
homo, inis, m	human, man	[ˈhjumən]	человек
index, icis, m	index, forefinger	[ˈindeks]	указательный палец (II палец)
humor, oris, m	humor, fluid, moisture	[ˈhju:mə]	влага, жидкость как составная часть тела
liquor, oris, m	liquor, liquid	[ˈlikə]	жидкость (спинно-мозговая)
paries, etis, m	paries, wall	[ˈpæriəz]	стенка
pulmo, onis, m	lung	[lʌŋ]	легкое
trochanter, eris, m	trochanter, large process below the neck of the femur for muscle attachments	[trouˈkæntə]	вертел
venter, ntris, m	venter, abdomen, belly	[ˈventə]	брюшко (мышцы), живот
vertex, icis, m	vertex, crown of the head	[ˈvɜ:tiks]	темя, вершина
vomer, eris, m	vomer, plowshare	[ˈvoumə]	сошник

B

pes, pedis, m	foot	[fu:t]	1) стопа (нога); 2) структура, подобная ножке
pollex, icis, m	thumb	[θʌmb]	большой палец руки
stapes, edis, m	stapes, stirrup bone	[ˈsteipiz]	стрема (стременная слуховая)

			косточка)
ureter, eris, m	ureter	[ju:ˈri:tə] or [ˈju:ritə]	мочеточник

EXCEPTIONS

Nouns of the Neuter Gender

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
os, oris, n	mouth	[ˈmauθ]	рот
os, ossis, n	bone	[bəʊn]	кость
cor, cordis, n	heart	[hɑ:t]	сердце
tuber, eris, n	tuber	[ˈtju:bə]	бугор

Nouns of Feminine Gender

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
mater, tris, f	1) mother; 2) coat of the encephalon	1) мать; 2) мозговая оболочка
pia mater	pia mater: <i>thin, delicate, inner membrane of the meninges (soft coat);</i>	мягкая мозговая оболочка
dura mater	dura mater: <i>outermost of the three membranes surrounding the brain and spinal cord (hard coat);</i>	твердая мозговая оболочка
arachnoidea (mater)	arachnoid membrane: <i>the second layer around the brain and spinal cord.</i>	паутинная мозговая оболочка
gaster, tris, f	stomach	желудок

UNIT 8

FEMININE NOUNS OF III DECLENSION

A number of typical terminations may help to distinguish Feminine Nouns of the Third Declension. In the table below you will find both the Nominative Singular endings as well as final letters of the Genitive Singular stem together with the Genitive Singular endings. The table shows that there are certain correlations between the Nominative Singular endings and stem types manifesting themselves in the Genitive Singular.

Gender	Feminine										
Nom. Sing.	<u>as</u>	<u>es</u>	<u>is</u>		<u>us</u>	<u>n/r+s</u>	<u>a/i/u</u>	<u>n/l+</u>	<u>do</u>	<u>go</u>	<u>io</u>
							<u>+x</u>	<u>x</u>			
Gen. Sing.	<u>at +</u> <u>is</u>	<u>is</u>	<u>is</u>	<u>t/d</u> <u>+</u> <u>is</u>	<u>t/d+</u> <u>is</u>	<u>nt/rt</u> <u>+is</u>	<u>ac/ic/</u> <u>uc+</u> <u>is</u>	<u>ng/lc</u> <u>+is</u>	<u>din</u> <u>+is</u>	<u>gin</u> <u>+is</u>	<u>ion</u> <u>+is</u>

Note 1. The stem of Feminine Nouns with different number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive Singular forms (non-parisyllabic forms) ending in –is in the Nominative ends in –id: *iris*, *īdis*, *f* (stem – *irid-*) as in *carōtis*, *īdis*, *f* (stem – *carotid-*); *pyrāmis*, *īdis*, *f* (stem – *pyramid-*). In feminine nouns with parisyllabic Nominative and Genitive Singular forms (having the same number of syllables) these forms are also identical as *auris*, *is*, *f*; *cutis*, *is*, *f*.

Note 2. The suffix –io may be added to verbal stems (supines) to derive nouns giving names to a number of actions, functions or processes: *supinatio* (turning the palm/foot face down), *pronatio* (turning the palm/foot face up), *flexio* (flexing), *extensio* (extending), etc. Names of many types of surgery are also nouns ending in –io: *amputatio pedis*, *resectio pulmonis*, *resectio gastris*, *resectio coli*, *resectio ventriculi totalis*.

Words exemplifying the above-stated peculiarities of Feminine Nouns of the Third Declension together with Exceptions are included in Vocabulary Extension 8.

EXERCISES

1. *Form Gen. Sing. and name the derivational basis:*

Cavitas, cervix, mystax, ars, tendo, tuberositas, impressio, pars, radix, origo, articulatio, longitudo, asperitas, fornix, dens, terminatio, larynx, lens, cartilago, cuspis, mors, magnitudo, appendix, bifurcatio, auris, pubes, iris, unguis.

2. *Make the adjectives agree with nouns:*

A. Part (petrosal, medial, parietal, upper, anterior, pyloric, cardiac, lumbar, sternal, osseous, spongy, right, lateral, profound);

Canal (palatine, optical, lacrimal, facial, sacral, vertebral, carotic, greater, incisive);

Cavity (cerebral, pleural, articular, tympanic, proper);

Tuberosity (deltoid, iliac, masseteric);

Ear (middle, internal, external);

Cartilage (thyroid, articular, costal, alar, pterygoid, greater);

Joint (mandibular, transverse, simple, complex).

B. Impression (renal, gastric, cardiac, duodenal, esophageal); edge (frontal, squamous, lacrimal, mastoid, front, free, right); end (sternal, acromial, uterine, upper); tooth (incisive, deciduous, canine, molar, premolar, of wisdom); vessel (lymphatic, capillary, collateral); area (femoral, front, calcaneal); cusp (cuspis, idis, f) (posterior, anterior).

3. *Translate the following terms into Latin:*

A. Free part of lower limb; annular (*orbicularis*, *e*) part of fibrous vagina; hard coat of the encephalon; vault of stomach; facial area; cavity of pelvis; vault of pharynx; canal of greater petrosal nerve; abdominal part of the esophagus;

humeral joint; nasal part of pharynx; tree of life of cerebellum; pyloric canal; body of pubic bone; capsule of pancreas; tympanic cavity of middle ear; cartilage of septum of nose; basis of phalanx; are of heel bone.

B. Canal of cervix of uterus; synovial vagina of tendon of posterior muscle of shin bone; upper aperture of pelvis; lateral surface of testis; root of nail; lower vault of conjunctiva; ciliary part of retina.

C. Greater palatine canal; cartilage of partition of nose; cavity of tooth; oral fissure (fissure of mouth); root, back and apex of nose; vestibular surface of tooth; medial upper incisor; infraorbital canal of upper jaw.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 8

A

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
a. carotis, tidis, f	carotid artery	[kə'rotid 'a:təri]	сонная артерия
appendix, icis, f	appendix	[ə'pendiks]	аппендикс, придаток, отросток
articulatio, onis, f	articulation, joint	[a:,tikju'lei[n]	сустав
auris, is, f	ear	[iə]	ухо
basis, is, f	basis	['beisiz]	основание
cartilago, inis, f	cartilage	['ka:tilidj]	хрящ
cavitas, atis, f (cavum, i, n)	cavity	['kæviti]	полость, впадина
cervix, icis, f	cervix, neck	['sə:viks]	1) шея; 2) шейка (матки, мочевого пузыря)
cutis, is, f	cutis, skin	['kju:tis]	кожа
frons, frontis, f	frons, forehead	['fronz] ['fo:hed] ['forid]	лоб
gl. parotis, tidis, f	parotid gland	[pə'rotid gla:nd]	околоушная железа
meninx, ngis, f	meninx, coat of the brain	['mi:ninks]	мозговая оболочка
pars, partis, f	part	[pa:t]	часть
radix, icis, f	radix, root	['rædiks]	корень, корешок
pelvis, is, f	pelvis	['pelvis]	таз
pelvis renalis	renal pelvis, pelvis of	['ri:nl pelvis]	лоханка почечная

	the kidney		
pyramis, idis, f	pyramid	[ˈpɪrəmid]	пирамида
regio, onis, f	region, area	[ˈri:dʒən]	область
symphysis, is, f	symphysis: <i>connection of two bones by means of cartilage tissue</i>	[ˈsɪmfəsis]	симфиз (сращение)
synchondrosis, is, f	synchondrosis, <i>primary cartilaginous joint</i>	[ˌsnkənˈdrousis]	синхондроз
tuberositas, atis, f	tuberosity: <i>large, rounded process on bone; serves for attachment of muscles or tendons</i>	[ˌtju:bəˈrositi]	бугристость

B

bilis, is, f	bile	[bail]	желчь
extremitas, atis, f	end	[ɪkˈstremiti]	конец
impressio, onis, f	impression, mark	[ɪmˈpreʃn]	вдавление
iris, idis, f	iris: <i>the coloured part round the pupil of the eye</i>	[ˈaɪrɪs]	радужка, радужная оболочка глаза
lens, lentis, f	lens: <i>the transparent part of the eye behind the pupil that focuses the light</i>	[lenz]	хрусталик
phalanx, ngis, f	phalanx	[ˈfæləŋks]	фаланга, косточка, членик пальца
pubes, is, f	pubic region, pubic bone	[ˈpju:bɪk ˈri:dʒən]	лобок

Exceptions Nouns of the Masculine Gender

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
axis, is, m	axis: (1) a line that divides a regular shape into 2 equal parts; (2) 2 nd cervical vertebra	[ˈæksɪz]	1) ось; 2) II шейный позвонок
canalis, is, m	canal, channel	[kəˈnæl]	канал
dens, dentis, m	tooth	[tu:θ]	зуб
margo, inis, m	margin, border,	[ˈma:dʒɪn]	край

	edge		
sanguis, inis, m	blood	[ˈblʌd]	кровь
tendo, inis, m	tendon, tendo	[ˈtendən]	сухожилие
coccyx, ygis, m / os coccygis	coccyx	[ˈkoksiks]	копчик
fornix, icis, m	fornix, vault	[ˈfo:niks]	свод
larynx, ngis, m	larynx	[ˈlæriŋks]	гортань
pharynx, ngis, m	pharynx	[ˈfæriŋks]	глотка
thorax, acis, m	thorax, chest	[ˈθo:ræks]	грудь, грудная клетка

Nouns of the Neuter Gender

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
pancreas, atis, n	pancreas, abdominal salivary gland	[ˈpæŋkriəs]	поджелудочная железа
vas, vasis, n	vessel	[ˈvesl]	сосуд

UNIT 9

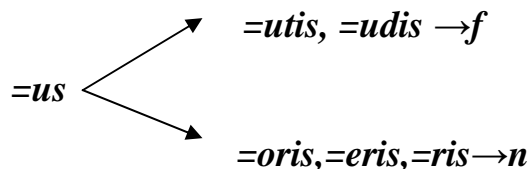
NEUTER NOUNS OF III DECLENSION

Neuter nouns of the Third Declension may also vary both in their Nominative Singular terminations and in their Genitive Singular forms showing their stem types. The table below gives a clear idea of the endings in the Nominative Singular and their correlations in the Genitive Singular:

Gender	Neuter							
Nom. Sing.	<u>en</u>	<u>us</u>	<u>ur</u>	<u>e</u>	<u>l</u>	<u>ar</u>	<u>ut</u>	<u>ma</u>
Gen. Sing.	<u>in+is</u>	<u>o/e/u+ris</u>		<u>is</u>	<u>il/al</u> <u>+is</u>	<u>ar+is</u>	<u>it+is</u>	<u>at+is</u>

The table shows that there are certain correlations between the Nominative Singular endings and stem types manifesting themselves in the Genitive Singular.

NOTE 1. The stem of Neuter Nouns of the Third Declension ending in the Nominative Singular in –us ends in –r, while that of Feminine Nouns ends in –t/-d:



NOTE 2. One should distinguish Latin neuter nouns of the third declension ending in –e from Greek feminine nouns ending in -e (Genitive Singular ending -es). Compare: *rete, is, n*; *raphe, es, f*; *diploë, ës, f*.

NOTE 3. One should also distinguish between Greek third declension neuter nouns ending in -ma and Latin first declension nouns ending in -ma. Compare: *stroma, ätis, n* and *squama, ae, f*.

The neuter words of III Declension together with exceptions are listed in Vocabulary Extension 9.

EXERCISES

1. Build the Genitive Singular Form. Find the stem of the word:

Abdōmen; semen; nomen; inguen; forāmen; pecten; tegmen; limen; genus; pectus; tempus; crus; pus; sulfur; femur; stroma; systēma; carcinōma; rete; ile; fel (fellis); mel; pulvīnar; calcar; thenar; caput; occīput; sincīput.

2. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A. Lower mediastinum; incisure of pancreas; broncho-esophageal muscle; basis of renal pyramid; upper part of duodenum; cortex of ovary; upper end of testicle (*testis, is m*); abdominal part of aorta; greater curvature of stomach; uterine end; superior vault of conjunctiva.

B. Lateral region of neck; upper constrictor muscle of pharynx; palatine aponeurosis; capsule of pancreas; external oblique muscle of abdomen; mucosa of mouth; cardiac impression of lung; body of hyoid bone; abdominal part of ureter; the longest muscle of head; anterior region of face; membranaceous wall of trachea; sphenoccipital primary cartilaginous joint; palatovaginal canal; mastoid margin of occipital bone; ala of plowshare; posterior margin of petrosal pyramid; basis of heart.

C. Cartilage of partition of nose; buccal muscle; straight part of larynx; pharyngeal recess; root of upper canine tooth; lateral cartilage of nose; free part of gum; neck of tooth; basis and body of lower jaw.

3. Make adjectives agree with nouns:

Head (lateral, profound, oblique, transverse, long, short);

Glomus (carotid, coccygeal, aortal);

Crus (membranaceous, osseous, simple, medial, lateral, common (= communis, e), right, left, short, long);

Foramen (great / occipital, mastoid, spinous, jugular, incisive, round, oval);

System (nervous, lymphatic, urogenital);

Body (ciliary, cavernous);
Kidney (right, left; cystic; mobile);
Net (arterial; palmar; articular).

4. Translate the terms. State their Dictionary Entry Form:

Name; temple; thigh; wall; lung; foot; leg/shank; abdomen; net; trochanter; head; occiput; chest; encephalon coat (2 variants); heart; pancreas; liver; pelvis; skin; tooth; vault.

5. Derive adjectives of the 1st group from nouns using:

a) the suffix –ic(us):

Pubes, is, f; trochanter, eris, m; masseter, eris, m; gaster, tris, f; pylorus, i, m; pancreas, atis, n; carotis, idis, f; thorax, acis, m; ureter, eris, m; hepar, atis, n; diaphragma, atis, n; pelvis, is, f;

b) the suffix –e(us):

larynx, ngis, m; pharynx, ngis, m; tendo, inis, m; cartilago, inis, f; metacarpus, i, m; coccyx, ygis, m.

Derive the adjectives of the 2nd group using the suffix –al:

Sternum, i, n; frons, frontis, f; pulmo, onis, m; occiput, itis, n; apex, icis, m; margo, inis, m; os, oris, n; dens, dentis, m; abdomen, inis, n; paries, etis, m; peritoneum, i, n; tempus, oris, n; lien, enis, m; ren, renis, m; cortex, icis, m.

6. Translate the following terms:

Pyloric part of stomach; wing of vomer; basis of heart; uterine cavity; root of lung; cortex of suprarenal gland; body of shin-bone; abdominal part of ureter; superficial lymphatic vessel; left lobe of liver; roof of tympanic cavity; internal carotid artery; renal pelvis; thyroid cartilage; canal of cervix of uterus; external oblique muscle of abdomen; apex of head of calf-bone; ventricle of pharynx; palatine aponeurosis; tuber of heelbone; joint of knee; capsule of pancreas; mucosa of mouth; anterior part of the face;

mastoid edge of occipital bone; medial process of tuber of heelbone; body of hyoid bone; alveolar opening of lower jaw; palatinovaginal canal; vomeronasal cartilage; incisive opening of palatine process; sphenoccipital synchondrosis; symphysis of lower jaw; point (cuspis, idis, f) of tooth; cardiac impression of lung; longest muscle of head; upper muscle narrowing the pharynx; root of tongue; membranaceous wall of trachea; posterior nucleus of trapezoid body.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 9

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
A			
abdomen, inis, n	abdomen, belly	[əb'doumən]	живот, брюхо
caput, itis, n	head	[hed]	голова, головка
corpus, oris, n	body	['bodi]	тело
crus, cruris, n	1) crus; 2) leg, shank	[kru:s]	голень, ножка
diaphragma, atis, n	diaphragm	['daiəfræm]	диафрагма
femur, oris, n	femur, thigh-bone	['femə]	бедро
foramen, inis, n	foramen, hole, opening	[fou 'reimən]	отверстие
hepar, atis, n	liver	['livə]	печень
nomen, inis, n	name	['neim]	имя (название)
occiput, itis, n	occiput, back of head	['oksipət]	затылок
pectus, oris, n	breast	[brest]	грудь
stroma, atis, n	stroma, framework	['stroumə]	строма, остов – опорная структура органа
tempus, oris, n	1) temple; 2) time	['templ]	1) висок; 2) время
zygoma, atis, n	zygoma, cheekbone	[zi'goumə]	скула

B

chiasma, atis n	chiasm, decussation	['kaiəzm]	перекрест
glomus, eris n	glomus	['gloməs]	клубок
systema, atis n	system	['sistəm]	система
tegmen, inis n	roof	[ru:f]	крыша
viscus, eris n (usually plural: <i>viscera</i>)	inner organ	['o:gən]	внутренний орган

Exceptions
Nouns of the Masculine Gender

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
ren, renis, m	kidney	[ˈkidni]	почка
lien, enis, m	spleen	[spli:n]	селезенка

UNIT 10

NOMINATIVE PLURAL

To build the Nominative Plural forms it should be always borne in mind that all case endings are added to the stem. To change words of different declensions into the Nominative Plural we shall be guided by the following rules:

If the word is of neuter gender, it ends in *-a* irrespectively of its declension. This counts for all neuter words: nouns and adjectives of all degrees of comparison, e.g.: *ligamenta lata* – broad ligaments; *crura ossea* – bony shanks; *ossa temporalia* – temporal bones; *cornua majora* – greater horns.

The endings of masculine and feminine nouns in the Nominative Plural can be best remembered in each declension separately. Note the following regularities: nouns of I, II, IV declensions end in the Nominative Plural in the same way as in the Genitive Singular. The same regularity can be observed in adjectives of the 1st group as they are declined like nouns of I and II declensions:

Decl. I: Gen.S. ending *-ae* = Nom. Pl. ending *-ae*; *costae latae* (wide ribs)

Decl. II: Gen.S. ending *-i* = Nom. Pl. ending *-i*; *sulci lati* (wide furrows)

Decl. IV: Gen.S. ending *-us* = Nom. Pl. ending *-us*; *arcus* (arches)

Nouns of III and IV declensions as well as adjectives of III declension and adjectives in the comparative degree have the same ending *-es* in the Nominative Plural.

<i>Declension</i>	<i>Nom. Pl. ending</i>	<i>Example in Nom. Pl.</i>
III (m, f nouns)	-es	pulmones; regiones
III (m, f adjectives)	-es	craniales
III (m, f adjectives in comparative degree)	-es	maiores; superiores
V (nouns)	-es	facies

NOTE. In III declension neuter words ending in the Nominative Singular in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar** end in the Nominative Plural in **-ia** (neuter adjectives having the Nominative Singular ending **-e** thus will be included): *animal* → *animalia*; *hepar* → *hepatia*; *tuber frontale* → *tubera frontalia*.

EXERCISES

1. A. Put the nouns into the Nominative Plural:

Discus, i m; ductus, us m; cellula, ae f; fonticulus, i m; bursa, ae, f; processus, us m; ampulla, ae f; recessus, us m; junctura, ae f; ramus, i m; palpebra, ae f; meniscus, i m; meatus, us m; fascia, ae f; lobus, i m; caverna, ae f; planum, i n; folium, i n; labium, i n; ganglion, i n; corpus, oris n; foramen, inis n; septum, i n; nomen, inis n; genu, us n; dens, dentis m; sectio, onis f; pyramis, idis f; meninx, ngis f; terminatio, onis f; pars, partis f; articulatio, onis f; phalanx, ngis f; tendo, inis m; margo, inis m; pulmo, onis m; rete, is n; canalis, is m; canaliculus, i m.

B. Translate orally:

Joints, regions, synchondroses, lungs, cartilages, tendons, impressions, muscles, vertebrae, sutures, spines, ribs, incisures, teeth, partitions, sinuses, fingers, nuclei, arches, papillas, borders, mouths, branches.

C. Put the adjectives into Nominative Plural:

Buccalis, lata, posterius, labiale, major, craniale, vertebrale, brevis, flava, liber, proprium, dorsale, thyroideum, osseus, simplicissimus, bronchialis, sacrale, zygomaticum, longus, alaris, latissimum, minima.

D. Translate in writing:

Upper incisor teeth, articular surfaces, canines, veins of kidney, cartilages of nose; retinacula of skin; convolutions of cerebrum, nuclei of pons (pons, pontis m); teniae of colon; rotating muscles of neck, thorax, loin; muscles of abdomen; bones of skull; bones of face; sutures of skull; lobules of thymus; leaves of cerebellum, ligaments of liver; veins of knee; cartilages of larynx; muscles of eyeball; rays of lens.

2. Translate into English:

Termini generales; glandulae labiales; sinus intermedi; musculi subcostales; organa genitalia masculina; regiones abdominales; tubuli seminiferi; plicae gastricae; pyramides renales; vasa sinusoidea lienis; juga alveolaria; alveoli dentales; tubercula dentis; lobi renales; lobuli corticales; arteriae ciliares posteriores longae; facies articulares; ganglia cardiaca; venulae rectae; spatia interglobularia; nomina anatomica; corpora paraaortica; glandulae uterinae; radii lentis; rami dentales inferiores.

3. Match the nouns in the Nominative Singular and the adjectives which are in grammatical agreement with them:

Nodi (lumbales, lymphatici, pectoralia, epigastrici, pulmonales, dextri, internae, iliaci, occipitales, profunda, mastoidei, regionales); papillae (linguales, conicae, fungiformes, vallatae, filiformes, foliatae, renales, sinistri, lentiformes, minora); ligamenta (interosseae, interspinalia, flava, palmaria, cruciata, intercarpei, alaria, radiata, dorsalia, supraspinalia, costoxiphoidea); dentes (acustici, incisivi, molares, longae, canini, premolares, decidui, permanentes, major, brevia, minores); plexus (iliaci, rectales, inferiores, gastricae, medii, vesicales, medianae, viscerales, vasculares); foramina (ethmoidalia, minora, nervosae).

4. Translate into Latin, make the nouns in the Nominative case plural, agree the adjectives with them.

A. Smaller alar cartilage; lower vein of the encephalon; bursa and synovial vagina; smaller sublingual duct; superficial lymphatic vessel; interspinous muscle of the neck; short posterior ciliary artery; thoracic cardiac branch; accessory nasal cartilage.

B. Pelvic ganglion; section of the spinal cord; lobe of the breast; front and back paraventricular nucleus; smaller renal calyx; sacral pelvic hole; semilunar band of colon; trochanteric bursa of middle gluteal muscle; bone of lower extremity; transverse temporal convolution.

C. Small sublingual duct; lower canine; small palatine canal; superior and posterior auricular muscle; ophthalmic fascia; accessory nasal cartilage; pterygoid process of sphenoid bone; upper molar; posterior upper alveolar opening; great and small horn; furrow of great and small petrosal nerves; superior gingival branch; superior and inferior nasal concha; orbital part of frontal bone.

5. Study the following abbreviations commonly used in anatomy:

Aa. – arteriae; **Bb.** – bursae; **Gll.** – glandulae; **Forr.** – foramina; **Ligg.** – ligamenta; **Mm.** – muscoli; **Nn.** – nervi; **Rr.** – rami; **Vagg.** – vaginae; **Vv.** – venae.

Read the terms below replacing the abbreviations with full (non-abbreviated) words:

aa. nutriciae; gll. intestinales; bb. trochantericae; aa. superiores; aa. sigmoideae; forr. incisiva; forr. palatina minora; ligg. interossea; ligg. extraarticularia; mm. interossei; mm. interspinales; nn. articulares; nn. profundus; nn. cardiaci; rr. orbitales; rr. oesophagei; vagg. synoviales; vv. cavernosae; vv. centrales.

6. Translate into English:

A. Nodi lymphatici capitis et colli, incisurae cartilaginis, calyces renales majores; plexus venosi vertebrales interni (anterior et posterior), partes orbitales ossis frontalis, ganglia renalia.

B. Radiationes thalamicae posteriores, plicae transversae recti, rami substantiae nigrae, sectiones medullae oblongatae, recessus subhepatici, venae cerebri inferiores, nodi iliaci communes.

C. Processus pterygoidei ossis sphenoidalis, tubercula mentalia, cuspis coronae dentis posterior, muscoli infrahyoidei, conchae nasales superior et inferior, dentes premolares et molares, glandulae buccales, muscoli faciales et masticatorii.

7. Translate into Latin in writing:

Adrenal glands, cartilages of nose, borders of shoulder blade, furrows of dura mater; vertebral joints, inferior cervical cardiac branches, renal papillas, leaves of cerebrum, cerebrospinal roots, arteries of heart, molar glands, synovial pouches and vaginas, subhepatic recesses, cerebrospinal nerves, interphalangeal joints of foot, ventricles of larynx, pharyngeal glands, pelvic openings, muscles of the back, proper gastric glands, ethmoid cells, intervaginal spaces.

8. Make adjectives agree with nouns, translate:

Branches (mastoid, glandular, intermedial, duodenal, gastric); openings (alveolar, papillary, intervertebral, sacral); muscles (facial, transverse, infraoccipital); ligaments (auricular, ventral, yellow); joints (cartilaginous, fibrous, vertebral, synovial); veins (atrioventricular, bronchial, pharyngeal, nasal, labial, maxillary, tympanic, occipital, superficial).

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 10

A

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
alveolus, i, m	alveole	[ˈɛlvɪəl]	альвеола
ampulla, ae, f	ampule, ampulla, ampoule	[ˈæmpju:l] [эмˈpulə]	ампула
apertura, ae, f	aperture, opening	[ˈæpətʃə]	апертура, отверстие
cavernosus, a, um	cavernous	[ˈkævənəs]	пещеристый
cellula, ae, f	cell, cellule	[sel]	ячейка, клетка
communis, e	common	[ˈkɒmən]	общий
corticalis, e	cortical	[ˈkɔ:tɪkəl]	корковый
facialis, e	facial	[ˈfeɪʃəl]	лицевой
fibra, ae, f	fibra, fiber	[ˈfaɪbə]	волокно
fibrosus, a, um	fibrous	[ˈfaɪbrəs]	фиброзный
folium, i, n	folium, leaf	[ˈfəʊliəm]	лист, листок
genitalis, e	genital	[ˈdʒenɪtl]	половой
gingiva, ae, f	gingiva, gum	[ˈdʒɪndʒɪvə]	десна
glandula, ae, f	gland, glandula	[glænd]	железа
glandularis, e	glandular	[ˈglændju:lə]	железистый
hepaticus, a, um	hepatic	[hɛˈpætɪk]	печеночный
lumbalis, e	lumbar	[ˈlʌmbə]	поясничный

lymphaticus, a, um	lymphatic	[lim'fætik]	лимфатический
manus, us, f	manus, hand	['meinəs]	кисть (рука)
medulla oblongata	medulla oblongata, rachidian bulb, myelencephalon	[mə'dju:lə ,oblən'gætə]	продолговатый мозг
nucleus, i, m	nucleus	['nju:kliəs]	ядро
nutricius, a, um	nutritious, nourishing	[nju'triʃəs]	питательный
pectoralis, e	pectoral	['pektərəl]	грудной (относящийся к передней стенке грудной клетки)
pelvicus, a, um pelvīnus, a, um	pelvic	['pelvik]	тазовый
proprius, a, um	proper, personal, one's own	['propə]	собственный
pulmonalis, e	pulmonary	['pʌlmənəri]	легочный
ramus, i, m	ramus, branch	['reiməs]	ветвь
recessus, us, m	recess, <i>small hollow, shallow pocket, niche</i>	[ri'ses]	углубление, карман
retinaculum, i, n	retinaculum, retaining band or ligament	[,reti'nækju:ləm]	удерживатель
spatium, i, n	space, spatium	[speis] ['speiʃiəm]	пространство, промежуток
spinalis, e	spinal	['spainəl]	спинно-мозговой
superficialis, e	superficial	[,sju:pə'fiʃəl]	поверхностный

В

accessorius, a, um	accessory, additional, supplementary	[æk'sesəri]	добавочный
brevis, e	short	[ʃo:t]	короткий
flavus, a, um	yellow	['jelou]	желтый
glut(a)eus, a, um	gluteal	['glu:tiəl]	ягодичный
gyrus, i, m	gyrus, convolution	['djairəs]	извилина
metacarpus, i, m	metacarpus	[,metə'ka:pəs]	пясть
metatarsus, i, m	metatarsus	[,metə'ta:səs]	плюсна
palpebra, ae, f	palpebra, eyelid	[pəl'pi:brə]	веко
plica, ae, f	plica, fold, plait	['plikə]	складка
radialis, e	radial	['reidiəl]	лучевой, радиальный
subcutaneus, a, um	subcutaneous	[,sʌbkju:'teiniəs]	подкожный

ulnaris, e	ulnar	[ˈʌlnə]	локтевой
------------	-------	---------	----------

С

cilium, i n	eyelash, cilium	[aiˈlæʃ]	ресница
ciliaris, e	ciliary	[ˈsiliəri]	ресничный
labialis, e	labial	[ˈleibiəl]	губной
papillaris, e	papillary	[pəˈpɪləri]	сосочковый
supercilium, i n	eyebrow	[aiˈbraʊ]	бровь

UNIT 11

GENITIVE PLURAL

To change terms into the Genitive Plural you should go through the following steps: 1) determine the declension of the noun from its dictionary form; 2) determine the stem; 3) establish the gender from characteristic endings in the Nominative Singular; 4) determine to which of the two groups the adjective belongs; 5) decide to which declension the adjective agreeing with its noun in case, number and gender, belongs.

The Genitive Plural endings in all declensions of noun and adjectives are as follows:

<i>Declension</i>	<i>Gen. Pl. ending</i>	<i>Example in Gen. Pl.</i>
I	-arum	Costarum latarum
II	-orum	Sulcorum latorum
V	-erum	Facierum
IV	-uum	Arcuum, cornuum
III	-um; -ium	

The ending **-um** is given to:

- 1) nouns whose stem ends in a consonant and in whose Genitive Singular form an extra syllable is added: *tendinum*; *regionum*; *foraminum*;
- 2) adjectives in comparative degree (their stem also ends in a consonant): *majorum* (m, f, n) ; *superiorum* (m, f, n);

The ending **-ium** is given to:

- 1) all other nouns whose stem ends in more than one consonant: *dentium*; *partium*; *ossium*;
- 2) nouns in -es, -is in whose Genitive Singular form no extra syllable is added: *avium*; *cutium*;
- 3) neuter nouns ending in -e, -al, -ar: *retium*; *animalium*;
- 4) all adjectives of the 2nd group: *brevium* (m, f, n); *occipitalium* (m, f, n)

NOTE. 1. The noun *vas*, *vasis* *n* (vessel) is in the III declension when it is singular, and in the II declension when it is plural; so its Genitive Plural form is *vasorum*.

2. The noun *fauces*, *ium* is used only in the plural.

3. Nouns *larynx*, *pharynx*, *meninx*, *phalanx* of Greek origin have a Genitive Plural ending **-um**.

EXERCISES

1. Translate the given words into Latin, state their Dictionary Entry Form. Put them into Genetivus Pluralis:

Spine, ventricle, atrium, node, angle, cheek, muscle, sinus, gland, process, ganglion, knee, gum, plexus, joint, lung, foramen, tendon.

2. Translate into Latin, put these adjectives into Genetivus Pluralis.

Long, radial, deep, short, simple, greater, upper, lesser, anterior, minimal, maximal.

3. Translate into English:

A. Mm. palati et faucium; decussatio nn. trochlearium; rr. trigeminales et trochleares; vagina tendinum musculorum flexorum carpi; m. flexor digitorum; vagina synovialis mm. peroneorum (fibularium) communis; tuberculum vertebrarum cervicalium anterius et posterius; medulla rubra et medulla flava ossium; vasa vasorum; sinus venarum cavarum; facies anterior et posterior dentium premolarium et molarium; noduli valvularum semilunarium.

B. Ligg. ossiculorum auditus; forr. venarum minimarum; vagina tendinum muscoli abductoris longi et muscoli extensoris pollicis brevis; cavernae corporum cavernosorum; plexus cavernosi concharum; tunica conjunctiva palpebrarum; ganglia plexuum sympathicorum.

4. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A. Partition of frontal sinuses; sinus of hollow veins of right atrium of heart; opening of pulmonary veins of the left atrium of heart; chiasm of tendons; long muscles driving up ribs; retaining band of tendons of flexor muscles; interbuccal pouches of gluteal muscles; vessels of vessels.

B. Ligaments of tendons; fibrous vaginas of fingers; upper retaining band of tendons of fibular muscles; short muscles driving up ribs; medial and lateral plates of pterygoid processes.

C. Medial surface of incisors and canines; canals of greater and lesser petrosal nerves; lateral commissure of eyelids; lingual surface of incisors and premolars; partition of sphenoid sinuses; commissures of lips.

5. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A. Posterior ligament of head of peroneal bone; visceral face of spleen; lobes of liver; general carotic plexus; furrows of dura mater of brain; general hepatic duct; muscle driving up partition of nose; short gastric veins; cerebrospinal ganglion; muscles of head; sphincter of common bile duct; the broadest muscle of the back; vessels of vessels; fibrous and synovial joints; internal acoustic passage; bulb of occipital horn; ligaments of liver; greater tympanic spine; parietal tuber; lesser palatine canals; sacroiliac posterior ligaments; cartilage incisures; bifurcation of pulmonary trunk; venous network; upper constrictor muscle of pharynx; gluteal muscles; red bone marrow; sinus of hollow veins of right atrium of heart; nuclei of cranial nerves; right and left kidneys; pelvic ganglions; renal pelvis; alar ligaments, buccal glands.

B. Trochanteric pouch of the greatest gluteal muscle; parietal peritoneum; body of gallbladder; external entrance of urethra; vagina of styloid process; additional vertebral vein; areas of body; muscles of larynx, abdomen, chest; diaphragm of pelvis; ligaments of knee; broad ligaments of uterus; fibrous vagina of fingers of hand; muscular coat of urinary bladder; upper edge of suprarenal gland; muscles of perinaeum; right pulmonary veins; ganglions of visceral plexuses.

C. Posterior lingual glands; median furrow of tongue; accessory nasal cartilages; greater and lesser petrosal nerves; alveolar part of lower jaw; superior and inferior walls of orbit; mobile part of partition of nose; glands of mouth; muscles of face; masseteric muscles; submandibular lymphatic nodes; inferior dental arch; interdental space; incisive canal.

6. Read aloud, translate:

Tunica serosa esophagi, curvatura major gastris, foramen magnum, fornix pharyngis, ductus hepaticus sinister, tunica serosa intestini tenuis, articulatio simplex, articulatio composita, impressio cardiaca hepatis, juncturae ossium, retinaculum mm. extensorum inferius.

Nervus musculi tensoris veli palatini, hiatus canalis nervi petrosi minoris, apex radialis dentis, tractus spinalis nervi trigemini, commissura labiorum, pars libera gingivae, rete capillare subepitheliale, glandulae salivariae majores, ramus lateralis tubuli dentini, papillae fungiformes.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 11

A

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Russian</i>
arteriosus, a, um	arterial	[a:'tiriəl]	артериальный
atrium, i, n	atrium	['eitriəm]	предсердие
bronchus, i, m	bronchus	['brɒnkəs]	бронх
cardiacus, a, um	cardiac	['ka:diək]	сердечный
commissura, ae, f	commissure, commissura	['komiʃjuə]	спайка
generalis, e	general	['dʒenərəl]	генеральный, родовой, общий
glandula suprarenalis	suprarenal gland, adrenal gland	['su:prə'ri:nl glænd]	надпочечник
lobus, i, m	lobe	['ləub]	доля
medulla ossium	bone marrow	['bəun 'mærou]	костный мозг
medulla spinalis	spinal cord / spinal marrow	['spainl 'ko:d]	спинной мозг
medullaris, e	medullary	['medələri]	мозговой
paranasalis, e	paranasal	[,pærə'neizl]	околоносовой
sanguineus, a, um	sanguineous; <i>of blood</i>	[sən'gwiniəs]	кровеносный

stratum, i, n	layer	[ˈleɪə]	слой
thalamus, i, m	thalamus	[θəˈleməs]	таламус, зрительный бугор мозга
thymus, i, m	thymus	[ˈθaɪməs]	вилочковая железа, тимус
trachea, ae, f	trachea, windpipe	[ˈtreɪkiə]	трахея (дыхательное горло)
vagina, ae, f	vagina	[vəˈdʒaɪnə]	влагалище

B

carpus, i, m	carpus, wrist	[ˈka:pəs]	запястье
lumbus, i, m	lumbus, loin	[ˈlʌmbəs]	поясница
membranaceus, a, um	membranaceous, membraneous	[ˌmembrəˈneɪʃəs] [ˈmembrənəs]	перепончатый
nodulus, i, m	nodule	[ˈnodju:l]	узелок
opticus, a, um	optic, optical	[ˈoptɪk]	зрительный
peron(a)eus, a, um (<i>seu</i> fibularis, e)	peroneal (<i>or</i> fibular)	[piˈrouniəl] [ˈfɪbjʊ:lə]	малоберцовый
valvula, ae, f	valve, valvule	[vælv]	заслонка
vesica biliaris (<i>seu</i> vesica fellea)	gallbladder	[ˌgo:lˈblædə]	желчный пузырь

SECTION II

CLINICAL TERMS

UNIT I

TERM BUILDING. CLINICAL TERMS

All medical terminological subsystems are abundant in various derivatives of Greek and Latin origin. They are most numerous among clinical terms. The notion *clinical terms* embraces a number of terminological systems functioning in the sphere of medical and biological science which studies a sick organism. This sphere is traditionally called pathology (Greek *pathos* – suffering, disease + *logos* – science, theory). Pathology studies the clinical picture of a disease, i.e. its symptoms and signs, disturbances of physiological functions and structural

changes in organs and tissues. The terminological subsystems of pathological anatomy and pathological physiology underlie clinical terminology in general.

Clinical terms proper designate various objects, processes and phenomena related to prevention and diagnostics of diseases, their differentiation with the help of the names of specific nosological (Greek *nosos* – disease) units or combining forms as well as to the ways of examining and treating patients. Clinical terms are also names of medical devices, instruments, equipment, etc.

This section of the manual studies the issues of derivative structure of words. It also describes the ways and the most common patterns of term building as well as the most frequent stems and derivational morphemes.

General Notions of Word Building

The word may be divided into smaller meaningful elements. They are a prefix, root, suffix, ending (termination). All these minimal word elements are called morphemes (Greek *morph* – form).

The main meaning is expressed by the root. Prefixes and suffixes may be added to the root to derive new words. The ending of the word contains information about its gender, number and case.



The part of the word preceding the ending makes its stem.

Patterns of Word Building

Words may be derived both using affixes and without using them. In the former case affixes (prefixes and suffixes) are joined to the derivational stems (bases). The latter way is the way of making compound words. A compound word is the word consisting of more than one derivational stem. A simple word is the

one including only one stem, e.g. *costalis*, *auricularis* are simple words; *costoauricularis* is an adjective compound.

There are also mixed ways of word formation:

- 1) using both suffixes and prefixes;
- 2) compound words using suffixes;
- 3) contracted compounds, etc.

Suffixation

Suffixation is adding a suffix to the derivational stem. Suffixes also modify the meaning of the stem. When added to the stem, the so-called diminutive suffixes *-ul-(-cul-)*, *-ol-* derive the words with the meaning ‘an object denoted by a stem but of smaller size’ – *lobulus*, *tuberculum*, *foveola*. Verbal nouns with the suffix *-io* convey the general meaning of a process or an action (*flexio* – flexing, *rotatio* – rotation, *curatio* – treatment). Nouns derived with the help of the suffix *-or-* may designate either a tool or an instrument used for performing an action or an agent of an action (*m. flexor* – flexing muscle; *prosector* – a person performing an autopsy).

Suffixes may be joined to the stems of nouns, adjectives and verbs. Definite suffixes may be added to the stems of particular parts of speech, for example, suffix *-al-(-ar-)* may be joined only to the stems of nouns; the suffixes *-io*, *-or* only to verbal stems.

NOTE 1. Suffixes starting with a consonant are joined to roots with the help of the linking vowel, as a rule, *-i-* in Latin words and *-o-* in Greek words, e.g. Latin *cruc-i-formis* (crosslike), *tuberos-i-tas* (tuberosity); Greek *bronch-o-genus* (bronchogenic).

NOTE 2. While deriving adjectives suffixes are added to the stem of a noun (Genitive Singular form – ending), e.g. *thorax*, *acis* → *thorac-ic-cus*; *cartilage*, *inis* → *cartilagin-e-us*.

NOTE 3. As a rule, both the derivational stem and the suffix belong to one and the same language (either Latin or Greek). However, there are many so called *hybrid* words which include Greek stems and Latin suffixes: *bronchi-al-is*, *acromi-al-is*, *pyramid-al-is*, *petr-os-us*, *arteri-os-us*, etc. Some words consist of both Greek and Latin suffixes: *spheno-id-al-is* (*-id* – Greek; *-al* – Latin).

Commonly Used Latin and Latinized Greek Suffixes

Suffixes of nouns

1. Diminutives – nouns whose meaning has an indication of a smaller size.

<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Derivational stem</i>	<i>Derived word</i>	<i>English</i>
-ul-	glob-us	glob-ulus	globe
	ven-a	ven-ula	venule
	fren-um	fren-ulum	frenulum
-cul-	canal-is	canal-i-culus	small channel
	aur-is	aur-i-cula	auricle
	gen-u	gen-i-culum	geniculum, small knee
-ol-	bronch-us	bronch-i-olus	bronchiole
	are-a	are-ola	areola
-ell-	lam-ina	lam-ella	lamella, thin plate
	cereb(rum)	cereb-ellum	cerebellum
-ill-	mamm(a)	mamm-illa	nipple

The derived word retains the gender of the word from which it was produced.

2. Nouns with the general meaning ‘*action, process*’:

<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Derivational stem</i>	<i>Derived word</i>	<i>English</i>
-io- (<i>tio, sio, xio</i>)	flex-um	flex-io	flexing
	transsudat-um	transsudat-io	transudation

NOTE. These nouns are very common in medical Latin. They denote various kinds of surgery, ways of examination, treatment, physiological functions, theoretical concepts in various subjects, e.g. *auscultatio* (auscultation, listening to); *percussio* (percussion, tapping); *palpatio* (palpation, feeling). All these three terms name the methods of examining inner organs.

3. Nouns with the general meaning '*object (organ, instrument, device)*' which is used to perform an action or with the meaning '*an agent of an action*'.

<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Derivational stem</i>	<i>Derived word</i>	<i>English</i>
-or-	adduct-um	m. adduct-or	muscle drawing smth
	flex-um	m. flex-or	flexing muscle
	extens-um	m. extens-or	extending muscle
	curat-um	curat-or	caretaker, keeper
	extract-um	extract-or	extractor (a tool)

4. Nouns with the general meaning '*action result*':

<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Derivational stem</i>	<i>Derived word</i>	<i>English</i>
-ura- (<i>tura, sura, xura</i>)	rupt-um	rupt-ura	rupture
	apert-um	apert-ura	aperture
	incis-um	incis-ura	incisure
	flex-um	flex-ura	flexure

Suffixes of Adjectives

1. Adjectives with the general meaning '*characterized by/rich in the quality indicated by the stem*'.

<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Derivational stem</i>	<i>Derived word</i>	<i>English</i>
-osus- (<i>a, um</i>)	squam-a	squam-osus	squamous
	fibra	fibr-osus	fibrous

	infect-io	infecti-osus	infectious
--	-----------	--------------	------------

2. Adjectives with the general meaning *‘belonging to or related to what is indicated by the stem’*.

<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Derivational stem</i>	<i>Derived word</i>	<i>English</i>
<i>-al-</i> <i>(is, e)</i>	coron-a	coron-alis	coronal
<i>-ar-</i> <i>(is, e)</i>	clavicul-a	clavicul-aris	clavicular
<i>-ic-</i> <i>(us, a, um)</i>	thorax, acis	thorac-icus	thoracic
	zygoma, atis	zygomat-icus	zygomatic
	gaster, tris	gastr-icus	gastric
<i>-ē-</i> <i>(us, a, um)</i> <i>(Greek)</i>	perone	peron-ēus	peroneal
	pharynx, ngis	pharyng-ēus	pharyngeal
	oesophag-us	oesophag-ēus	esophageal
<i>-in-</i> <i>(us, a, um)</i>	palat-um	palat-inus	palatine
	uter-us	uter-inus	uterine
	pelv-is	pelv-inus	pelvic

NOTE. Stems of Greek nouns are mostly joined by the suffix *ē-us* which is also of Greek origin, Latin stems are joined by the Latin suffix *-ē-us* whose meaning is *‘characterized by’* or *‘consisting of/made of what is indicated by the stem’*: *oss-ē-us* (bony); *cartilagin-ē-us* (cartilaginous).

3. ***Adjectives with the general meaning ‘resembling the object designated by the stem of the word’***:

<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Derivational stem</i>	<i>Derived word</i>	<i>English</i>
<i>-ide-</i> <i>(us, a, um)</i> <i>(Greek)</i>	rhombos	rhombo-ideus	rhomboid
	delta	delto-ideus	deltoid
<i>-form-</i> <i>(is,e)</i>	crus, crucis	cruci-formis	crosslike

Most adjectives of this type were artificially derived by anatomists in XVII century.

4. Adjectives with the general meaning ‘carrying what is designated by the stem’:

<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Derivational stem</i>	<i>Derived word</i>	<i>English</i>
<i>-fer-</i> <i>(a, um)</i>	semen, inis	semin-ŭ-fer	seminal
	sudor, oris	sudor-ŭ-fer	sudoral
<i>-phor-</i> <i>(us,a,um)</i> <i>(Greek)</i>	oon, (Greek, egg)	oo-phŏrus (oophŏron)	‘carrying an egg’ ovary

5. Adjectives with the general meaning:

1) ‘producing, causing a thing designated by the stem’;

2) ‘produced/caused by a thing designated by the stem’.

<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Derivational stem</i>	<i>Derived word</i>	<i>English</i>
<i>-gen-</i> <i>(us,a um)</i> <i>(Greek)</i>	cancer	cancero-gĕnus	cancerigenic, causing cancer
	pyon	pyo-gĕnus	pyogenic, caused by pus collection
	enteron	entero-gĕnus	enterogenic, caused by an intestinal disorder

EXERCISES

1. Explain the meaning of the suffixes, translate the terms:

Papilla parotidéa, ductus pancreaticus, fossa condylaris, fossula petrosa ossis temporalis, incisura fibularis, processus styloideus, ductus hepaticus, os scaphoideum, palatum osseum, vena gastrica, m. gluteus, arteria meningéa, ductuli prostatici, fossa canina maxillae, cavitas medullaris, cornu sacrale, apex ossis sacri, tuber ischiadicum, systema nervosum centrale.

2. Build adjectives with the general meaning ‘similar to, alike’:

Sword (Gr. *xiphos*), awl, style (Gr. *stylos*), trapezium (Gr. *trapezion*), web (Gr. *arachne*), shield (Gr. *thyreos*), wing (Gr. *pteryg-*), nipple (Gr. *mastos*), wedge (Lat. *cuneus*), fungus (Lat. *fungus*), spindle (Lat. *fusum*), worm (Lat. *vermis*), pear (Lat. *pirum*)

3. Build Latin adjectives with the general meaning

‘rich in’:

Fibers (fibrous), mucus (mucous), caverns (cavernous), ganglions, glomerules, granules, vessels, tubers, pigment;

‘related to/’pertaining to’:

thorax, tympanum, diaphragm, carotid, stomach, thalamus, lymph, ureter.

4. Use the verbal stem below to build nouns with the suffix –io. Translate the derived words:

A. Resectum (excise, cut out); extirpatum (eradicate, extirpate); sectum (incise, cut open); punctum (puncture); extractum (extract); extensum (extend).

B. Obturatum (obturate, obstruct); occlusum (occlude); contractum (contract); luxatum (luxate); invasum (invade); transfusum (transfuse); secretum (secrete); depressum (depress, press down); commotum (concuss); compressum (compress, squeeze); infectum (impregnate, infect); selectum (select); mutatum (mutate, modify); injectum (inject); perforatum (perforate); penetratum (penetrate).

5. Use the verbal stems below to build nouns with the suffix –or-. Translate the derived words:

Constrictum (squeeze, compress); depressum (lower, press down); injectum (inject); supinatum (to draw up or back); erectum (erect); monitum (remind, supervise); excavatum (excavate); acceptum (accept); receptum (receive); ordinatum (bring in order); extractum (extract).

6. Use the verbal stems below to build nouns with the suffix –ura-. Translate the new words:

Junctum (connect); strictum (compress, squeeze); curvatum (bend); fissum (split, splinter); commisum (connect); sutum (stitch); fractum (break); contractum (contract).

7. Translate the clinical terms, explain the meaning of the suffixes:

Perforatio appendīcis, abscessus chronicus, abscessus hepatic ascaridosus, glaucōma malignum pigmentosum, glaucōma juvenīle, polypus fibrosus, cancer papillaris, eruptio medicamentosa, ulcus gangraenosum, cysta dentalis radicularis, cysta palatina, cancer pulmonis, penetratio ulceris.

8. Translate the following terms into English:

Cysta apicalis dentium; morbus infectiosus; hepar cystosum; icterus hepatogenus; hernia cerebialis occipitalis; abscessus hepatic ascaridosus; eczema vesiculosum; sectio venae, seu venesectio; extractio foetus; contractura vesicae urinariae; contractura articulationis acquisita; inflammatio serosa; inflammatio vesiculosa; perforatio palati duri; perforatio perinei; hernia hiatus esophagei; paralysis spastica; eczema squamosum; oedema pharyngis; hernia lineae albae.

9. Translate the following terms into English:

Hepatic coma, lymphogenic cyst of the neck, transverse fracture, longitudinal fracture, diffuse abscess, diabetic coma, varicose ulcer, chronic ulcer, femoral hernia, diaphragmatic hernia, hernia of the white line, dental apical cyst, acute caries of the tooth, acute duodenal ileus, hypertonic disease.

10. Translate the following terms into English:

Occlusion of the thoracic duct; occlusion of the carotid artery; occlusion of the uterus; obturation of the lung; resection of the pylorus; traumatic perforation of an eye; nasal obturation; brain concussion, concussion of the thorax; lumbar puncture; placental infection; acute caries of a tooth; resection of the stomach; contracture of the spinal column; perforation of the diverticulum; extirpation of the uterus; infantile cerebral paralysis; tooth fracture; facial spasm; bronchial spasm; cerebellar paresis; infectious jaundice; psychic trauma; hepatic colic; uterine colic; diabetic gangrene; gangrene of the lung; senile gangrene; lobular pneumonia; acute disease.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 1

Latin	English	Russian
<i>abscessus, us, m</i>	abscess, <i>a collection of pus, white blood cells, and protein, which are present at the site of infection</i>	нарыв, гнойник
<i>acutus, a, um</i>	acute	острый
<i>benignus, a, um</i>	benign	доброкачественный
<i>cancer, cri, m</i>	cancer	рак
<i>cancerosus, a, um</i>	cancerous	раковый
<i>caries, ei, f</i>	caries	кариес (костоеда)
<i>chronicus, a, um</i>	chronic	хронический
<i>colica, ae, f</i>	colic: <i>a sudden attack of pain in the abdomen</i>	колика – внезапные приступы боли в животе
<i>coma, atis, n</i>	coma: <i>deep sleep or unconsciousness due to surgery or illness</i>	кома, бессознательное состояние
<i>comatosus, a, um</i>	comatose	коматозный
<i>cysta, ae, f</i>	cyst	киста
<i>cystosus, a, um</i>	cystic: <i>pertaining to the cyst</i>	кистозный
<i>diabetes, ae, m</i>	diabetes	диабет
<i>diabeticus, a, um</i>	diabetic	диабетический
<i>diffusus, a, um</i>	diffuse	диффузный, разлитой,

		распространенный
<i>eczema, atis, n</i>	<i>eczema: skin eruption</i>	экзема, лишай
<i>fractura, ae, f,</i>	fracture	перелом
<i>gangraena, ae, f</i>	<i>gangrene: death of body tissue, usually resulting from obstructed circulation</i>	гангрена
<i>gangraenosus, a, um</i>	gangrenous	гангренозный
<i>infantilis, e</i>	infantile, of children	инфантильный, детский
<i>infectio, onis, f</i>	infection	инфекция
<i>infectiosus, a, um</i>	infectious	инфекционный
<i>inflammatio, onis, f</i>	inflammation	воспаление
<i>juvenilis, e</i>	juvenile, of young people	ювенильный, юношеский
<i>malignus, a, um</i>	malignant	злокачественный
<i>morbus, i, m</i>	disease, malady, illness	болезнь
<i>oedema, atis, n</i>	<i>edema: swelling, fluid in the tissues</i>	отек
<i>paralysis, is, f</i>	paralysis	паралич
<i>paralyticus, a, um</i>	paralytic	паралитический
<i>paresis, is, f</i>	paresis, partial paralysis	парез, неполный паралич
<i>pneumonia, ae, f</i>	<i>pneumonia, lung inflammation</i>	пневмония, воспаление легких
<i>senilis, e</i>	senile, of old age	сенильный, старческий
<i>spasmus, i, m</i>	<i>spasm: sudden, violent, involuntary contraction of muscles</i>	спазм, судорога
<i>spasticus, a, um</i>	spastic	спастический, судорожный
<i>trauma, atis, n</i>	trauma	травма
<i>traumaticus, a, um</i>	traumatic	травматический
<i>ulcus, eris, n</i>	ulcer	язва
<i>ulcerosus, a, um</i>	ulcerous	язвенный
<i>glaucoma, atis, n</i>	<i>glaucoma: increased intraocular pressure results in the lens becoming opaque (impenetrable by light)</i>	глаукома
<i>hernia, ae, f</i>	<i>hernia: bulging forth, or protrusion, of an organ or the muscular wall of an organ through the cavity which</i>	грыжа

	<i>normally contains it</i>	
<i>hernialis, e</i>	hernial	грыжевой
<i>icterus, i, m</i>	icterus, jaundice	желтуха
<i>ileus, i, m</i>	ileus (intestinal obstruction)	кишечная непроходимость
<i>varix, icis, m/f</i>	varix, venous node, dilated vein	варикс, венозный узел, расширенная вена
<i>varicosus, a, um</i>	varicose	варикозный
<i>volvulus, i, m</i>	volvulus: <i>twisting of the intestine upon itself</i>	заворот кишок

UNIT 2

COMPOUND WORDS

General Information

If a word is composed of two or three stems, it is called a compound word. Many words of both Greek and Latin origin are compound words. Compound words may be built in two different ways: 1. by joining two or more stems together; 2. by joining two or more stems together and adding a suffix.

Cf. *rhinencephalon* and *sphenooccipitalis*

Compound words derived from genuinely Latin stems are not numerous among modern anatomical terms. They were mostly artificially derived in the post-antiquity period, cf. *lymphonodus* (lymph node) and *fibrocartilago* (fibrous cartilage).

There are some “hybrids” among those artificially derived words, with one of the stems of Latin origin and the other of Greek origin, e.g. *neocortex* (Greek *neo* + Latin *cortex* – new cortex); *myoseptum* (Greek *mys*, *myos* + Latin *septum* – muscular septum/partition).

There are a few noun compounds among anatomical terms, while adjective compounds are quite common. The stems used for them may be monolingual (either Latin or Greek), e.g. Latin *tibionavicularis*, *septomarginalis*; Greek *pterygopharyngeus*, *thoracoacromialis*. At the same time there are a lot of hybrid compounds: *musculoperoneus* (Greek *peroneus* + Latin *musculus*), *zygomaticofrontalis*, etc.

While in Latin there were very few compounds, in Greek compound words were very common. All anatomical compound terms were derived from Greek stems. They are also numerous among histological terms (e.g. *cytus* – cell from Greek *kytos* – vessel, cavity, *blastus* – immature cell from Greek *blastos* – embryo, etc).

Free and Bound Stems

Many components of compound terms which used to function independently in Greek and Latin do not occur as separate words any longer. Thus, once independent Greek words *iateria* (treating); *paideia* (upbringing, education); *kardia* (heart); *penia* (shortage); *philia* (love, predisposition for) are used as combining forms (stems) to derive a number of words (*psychiatria*, *orthopaedia*, *thrombopenia*, *spasmophilia*, *tachycardia*, etc.). They are bound stems (combining forms). There are also some forms which may be used to derive new words or may function as independent words. They are called free stems.

Different fields of medical science tend to use either Latin or Greek terms to designate one and the same organ. In normal anatomy (studying the anatomical structure of a normal body) Latin independent stems are traditionally used. In pathological anatomy (studying disorders of the organism's development) derivatives of Greek stems are in wide use.

There are just a few cases when in both fields similar words borrowed from the same language are in use: Greek *hepar*, *oesophagus*, *larynx*, *pharynx*, *tonsilla*, *thorax*, *ureter*, *urethra*, *encephalon*, etc. These words may also become part of compound clinical terms: *hepatomegalia*, *encephalitis*, etc. Therefore, anatomical words are predominantly Latin, while clinical compounds were derived from Greek bound stems.

There are some exceptions from this rule. For example, the word *pulmonologia* (a science of lung diseases and their treatment) includes the Latin stem *pulmon-* (lung), while another clinical term *pneumonia* (lung inflammation) includes the Greek stem *pneumo-* (lung).

Some Peculiarities of Compound Words

1. Linking vowel (interfix).

Stems are joined into a single word by means of a linking vowel (interfix). The most common linking vowel is *-o-*. The vowel *-i-* is of rare occurrence. In ancient Greek words only *-o-* occurs, in Latin words *-i-* is used, e.g. Latin *aur-i-scalpium*

(*auris* ear + *scalpo* to clean, to cut out) – ear-cleaner; *viv-i-ficatio* (*vivus* alive + *facio* to do) – resuscitation. In derivatives of later origin this regularity does not hold true. –*O*– is commonly used to derive words from both Greek and Latin stems (*neur-o-cranium*, *cary-o-lysis*, *auropalpebralis*, *nasolacrimalis*). –*I*– may help to combine Greek stems: *embol-i-formis*.

A linking vowel is not used when the first stem ends in a vowel or the second stem begins with a vowel: *brady-cardia*; *brachy-dactylia*; *rhin-encephalon*.

2. Derivational stem (basis).

In Latin and Greek there are many words whose Nominative and Genitive Singular forms differ: Latin *cortex*, *icis* (cortex, bark); Greek *soma*, *somatos* (body). In such cases the Genitive Singular stem is used as a derivational stem or basis: *pariet-o-graphia*, *cortic-o-visceralis*. Anyway, there are some exceptional cases when the derivational stem is represented by the Genitive form in one word and the Nominative form in another, e.g. Greek *pan-*, *pant-* (all) – *pan-demia*, *pant-o-phobia*; *mega-*, *megal-* (large) – *mega-colon*, *megal-o-blastus*.

3. Phonetic and graphic variability of stems.

The assimilation of Greek stems by the norms of the Latin language is different. Some words retained the original pronunciation and spelling, others were adjusted to Latin norms. This accounts for the fact why one and the same word may be spelt differently: *cheir* – *chir* (hand).

Position and Meaning of a Combining Form

Combining forms are mainly monosemantic (have one meaning), though, some of them may be polysemantic (have two or more meanings), e.g. the stem *onco-* (Greek *onkos* – heap, mass, volume) in some words has the meaning “volume, mass” (*oncogramma* – a curve showing changes in volume; *oncometria* – measuring the volume of tissues and organs), while in others it means “tumour” (*oncogenesis* – process of tumour development; *oncologist* – physician specializing in treating tumours and preventing their development).

As a rule, the position of a stem in the structure of words does not affect their meanings. No matter where it occurs, it retains the same meaning:

Megalo- = *-megalia* (increase)

Blepharo- = *-blepharia* (eyelid)

Some units may occur both at the beginning and at the end of a word. Others occur in a fixed position (e.g. final position *-cele*, *-clasia*; initial position *auto-*, *brady-*, *laparo-*).

NOTE 1. The position of a combining form within a compound word as well as its particular meaning may account for arising nuances of the summarized (total) meaning of the derived word. Thus, *haemo-*, *haemato-* and *-aemia* convey the general meaning '*related to blood*'. At the same time the final *-aemia* denotes blood as a medium, where some substances are found. Besides, their presence and concentration in this medium are considered to be pathological factors (*azotaemia*, *uraemia*, *bacteriaemia*).

If *haemo-* or *haemato-* combines with the name of an organ, the summarized meaning is *collection of blood in the cavity of an organ, bleeding*, e.g. *haematomyelia* – spinal cord bleeding; *haemarthrosis* – collection of blood in the cavity of a joint.

NOTE 2. The total meaning of the derived word is not just a mere summation of separate meanings: *gastrojejunoplastica* (Greek *gaster* – stomach + Latin *jejunum* – jejunum + *plastica* – reparative, plastic surgery) – a surgery to replace the stomach for a segment of the jejunum.

NOTE 3. For consistency of interpretation of a compound term one should start analyzing its final stem: *gastro-entero-logia* (*logia* – science of; *gastro* – stomach; *entero* – intestine).

Vocabulary Extensions of this section of the manual are arranged as tables in which Greek, Latin and English stems are correlated. To be able to use these stems for deriving compound clinical terms it is sufficient to memorize either the root or the stem of a word. In case stems of a word vary one should remember both the Nominative and Genitive stems, e.g. *derm(o)-* and *dermat(o)-* (skin).

EXERCISES

1. Explain the meaning of Latin terms:

A. Osteologia, pathologia, osteoarthropathia, stomatologia, somatologia, somatoscopia, acroalgia, spondylodynia, arthropathia, cardiographia, hormonotherapia, nosologia, brachialgia, logopathia, spondylographia, rhinologia, osteogenus, odontogenus, hepatogenus, glossalgia, odontalgia, pancreatodynia, lymphonodus, thyreopathia, thyroglossus, ischiococcygeus, thyreog ěnus.

B. Podalgia, acheiria, chirosopia, gonalgia, apodia, chirospasmus, macropodia, brachiocephalicus (a, um).

C. Cheilodynia, ulodynia, gnathodynia, genioglossus, geniohyoideus, meloplastica, gnathoplastica.

2. Explain the meaning of the English terms:

Somatic, analgetic, acropathy, arthrography, enteroscope, enterology, esophagodynia, rhinogenic, pathogenic, rhinopharyngoscopy, somatogenic, somatometry, osteoarthropathy, hepatology, stethoscope, cardial, cardiovascular, glossodynia, enteropathy, rhinoscope, pancreatalgia, micrognathia, gnathopathy, gnathospasm.

3. Build terms matching the description:

Pain in the joint; caused by heart, i.e. of cardiac origin; caused by liver condition; caused by teeth development; measuring of head; examination of mouth; examination of nose; X-ray examination of brain; disease of extremities; disease of teeth; disease of brain; toothache; disease of nose; disease of joints; disease of heart; heartache.

4. Explain the meaning of the terms below:

Encephalometry, craniometry, cardiogram, bronchoesophagoscope, radiohepatography, pathoanatomic, pancreatalgia, heliotherapy (Greek *helios* – sun), peritoneoscopy, pelvigraphy, pelviscopy, vasodilation, cephalogram, cephalograph, cephalography, logotherapy, electrotherapy, somatoreceptor,

nosography, glossospasm, cardiospasm (ostium cardiacum), duodenography, rheohepatography, rectoscope, acropigmentation, pathogenic, pathogenicity, pathology.

Note special clinical expressions!

<i>Habitus aegrōti</i>	appearance of a sick person in general
<i>Status praesens (aegrōti)</i>	the present condition of a patient (at the moment of examination)
<i>Praesente medico</i>	in the presence of the doctor
<i>Absente aegrōto</i>	in the absence of the patient
<i>Exitus letālis</i>	lethal outcome
<i>Facies Hippocratica</i>	Hippocrates' face (face of a dying person)
<i>Rubor, tumor, calor, dolor</i> disturbed	Redness, swelling, fever, pain and
<i>et functio laesa</i>	function
<i>Sedes morbi</i>	site of a disease
<i>Mortalitas alta</i>	high mortality rate
<i>Prognosis dubia</i>	doubtful prognosis
<i>Prognosis mala</i>	bad/discouraging prognosis
<i>Prognosis pessima</i>	very bad prognosis
<i>Prognosis letalis</i>	lethal (death) prognosis
<i>Prognosis bona</i>	good/encouraging prognosis
<i>Prognosis optima</i>	very good prognosis
<i>Foetor ex ore</i>	bad breath
<i>Locus minoris resistentiae</i>	point of the least resistance
<i>Bene dignoscitur, bene curatur</i>	what is well diagnosed is well cured
<i>Cadaveris inspectio</i>	examination of a corpse
<i>Anatomica exploratio</i>	anatomic exploration
<i>Symptomata et diagnosis</i>	symptoms and diagnosis

<i>Stadium primum</i>	first (early) stage
<i>Stadium secundum</i>	second stage
<i>Decursus morbi et exitus</i>	course of a disease and its outcome
<i>Aetiologia morbi</i>	establishing the cause of a disease
<i>Complicationes</i>	complications
<i>Causae praedisponentes</i>	causes determining predisposition for
<i>Causa proxima</i>	most immediate cause

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 2

Most common clinical combining forms

<i>Greek combining form</i>	<i>English</i>
-logia	a science
-log-	related to speech disorders
-scopia	instrumental examination, observation
-metria	measuring
-graphia	1) roentgenography, radiography 2) the process of recording a signal
-gramma	the result of roentgenography (an X-ray) or of registering smth.
-therapia	(<i>non-operative</i>) treatment
nos-	a disease
path-, -pathia	(<i>the most general nomination of</i>) a disease
-algia	pain, ache
-odynia	pain, ache

Names of Organs and Body Parts

<i>Greek combining form</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
A.			
kephal-, cephal-, cephalia (<i>kephale</i>)	caput, itis, n	head	ГОЛОВА
somat-, soma- (<i>soma, atos</i>)	corpus, oris, n	body	ТЕЛО
oste- (<i>osteon</i>)	os, ossis, n	bone	КОСТЬ
acr-, acria (<i>akron</i>)	membrum, i, n	member, limb, extremity	ДИСТАЛЬНЫЙ ОТДЕЛ ЧАСТИ ТЕЛА, КОНЕЧНОСТЬ, ЗАОСТРЕННОСТЬ
steth- (<i>stethos</i>)	pectus, oris, n thorax, acis, m (<i>Greek</i>)	breast, chest	грудь грудная клетка
spondyl- (<i>spondylos</i>)	vertebra, ae, f	vertebra	ПОЗВОНОК
cardi-, -cardium (<i>kardia</i>)	cor, cordis, n	heart	сердце
arthr- (<i>arthron</i>)	articulatio, onis, f	articulation, joint	сустав
stomat- (<i>stoma, stomatos</i>)	os, oris, n	mouth	рот
gloss-, -glossia (<i>glossa</i>)	lingua, ae, f	tongue	язык
rhin- (<i>rhis, rhinos</i>)	nasus, i, m	nose	нос

-genus, a, um		1) produced, caused 2) producing, causing	
----------------------	--	--	--

B

odont-, -odontia (<i>odus, odontos</i>)	dens, dentis, m	tooth	зуб
cheir-, chir-, -cheiria-, -chiria (<i>cheir</i>)	manus, us, f	hand	рука
pod-, -podia (<i>pus, podos</i>)	pes, pedis, m	foot	стопа, нога
gon- (<i>gony</i>)	genu, us, n	knee	колени
r(h)achi- (<i>rhachis</i>)	columna vertebralis	spinal column	позвоночный столб

C

odont-, odontia (<i>odus, odontos</i>)	dens, dentis, m	tooth	зуб
cheil-, -cheilia (<i>cheilos</i>)	labium, i n	lip	губа
uran- (<i>uranos</i>)	palatum, i n	palate	нёбо
ul-, ulo- (<i>ulon</i>)	gingiva, ae f	gum	десна
mel- (<i>melon</i>)	bucca, ae f	cheek	щека
gnath-, -gnathia (<i>gnathos</i>)	maxilla, ae f	upper jaw	верхняя челюсть
-genia (<i>genys</i>)	mandibula, ae f	lower jaw	нижняя челюсть
-genia (<i>geneion</i>)	mentum, i n	chin	подбородок

UNIT 3

SUFFIXES –*ŌSIS*, –*IĀSIS*, –*ĪTIS*, – *ŌMA*, *ĪSMUS* IN CLINICAL TERMS

I. Suffixes –*ōsis*, –*iāsis*. These suffixes are commonly used to derive new words from the stems of nouns and verbs. The derived words have the meaning ‘*process or result of what is indicated by the stem*’, e.g. *stenosis* – narrowing (process and its result); *sclerosis* – hardening (process and its result); *narcosis* – narcosis, numbness; *lithiasis* – stone formation; *helminthiasis* or *helminthosis* – helminthiasis or helminthosis, a disease caused by helminthes; *psoriasis* – psoriasis, a skin disease; *amoebiasis* – amebiasis; *mitosis* (Gr. *mitos* – thread) – mitosis, the main way of cell division; *phagocytosis* – (*phagos* – swallowing + *cytus* – cell) phagocytosis.

The bulk of derivatives with the suffix –*osis* have the general meaning ‘*pathological process, a degenerative disease, a chronic morbid condition*’. The derivational stems may convey one of the following meanings:

- a) tissue, organ, part of a body or system of an organism affected by a disease, e.g. *fibrosis* – fibrous transformation; *nephrosis* – a degenerative disease of renal tubules; *neurosis* – a functional disturbance of the nervous system; *psychosis* – a mental disorder;
- b) substance causing a disease, e.g. *toxicosis* (Gr. *toxicon* – poison) – a disease caused by toxic, poisonous substances; *amyloidosis* – amyloid deposits in tissues;
- c) causative agent or infection, e.g. *ascaridosis* – a disease caused by ascarides; *actinomycosis* – a chronic infectious disease caused by *Actinomyces* (kind of fungi).

NOTE. If a stem denotes a blood corpuscle or tumour, the derivative acquires the meaning ‘*spread, dissemination, proliferation*’ of what is designated by the derivational stem, e.g. *leucocytosis* – increase in the number of leucocytes in the

peripheral blood; *fibromatosis* – multiple fibromas (*fibroma, atis*).

II. Suffix *-itis* in the names of inflammatory diseases.

Since XVIII century the suffix *-itis* has been used to build names of inflammatory diseases, e.g. *gastritis* – inflammation of the gastric mucosa; *nephritis* – inflammation of kidneys. Greek and seldom Latin names of organs and tissues can be used as derivational stems. The derived words are feminine nouns of III declension which end in *-itidis* in the Genitive Singular: *bronchitis*, *bronchitidis*; *meningitis*, *meningitidis*.

III. Suffix *-oma* in the names of tumours.

In medical terminology the stems of nouns and adjectives denoting tissues are combined with the suffix *-oma* to build the names of tumours, e.g. *fibr-oma* – benign tumour of fibrous connective tissue; *oste-oma* – benign tumour of osseous tissue. The names of tumours are neuter nouns of III declension which end in *-atis* in the Genitive Singular: *osteoma*, *osteomatis*; *fibrōma*, *fibromatis*.

Names of malignant tumours are derived from the stems whose meaning has an indication to a tissue, e.g. *carcinoma* (Gr. *karkinos* – cancer, Gr. *karkinoma* – ulcer, cancer) – cancer, malignant tumour of epithelium; *sarcoma* (Gr. *sarks*, *sarkos* – meat, flesh, Gr. *sarkoma* – fleshy wart, tumour) – malignant tumour of mesenchymal origin.

NOTE 1. The general meaning ‘tumour’ is conveyed by a number of terms: *tumor*, *oris*, *m*; *blastoma*, *atis*, *n* (Gr. *blastos* – embryonic or immature cell); *neoplasma*, *atis* – newgrowth, as well as by the stem *onco-* (Gr. *oncos* – mass, volume).

NOTE 2. In ancient Greek the suffix *-oma* was used to build verbal nouns having the general meaning ‘result of the action designated by the derivational stem of a verb’, e.g. *symptoma* – symptom; *stoma* – stome as well as names of eye diseases: *glaucoma*, *trachoma*.

IV. Suffix *-ismus*.

The meanings of nouns derived by means of this suffix may vary. They may denote phenomena, properties or facts marked with a characteristic signified by the stem, e.g. *infantilismus* (Lat. *infantilis* – infantile) – pathological state characterized by retarded physical or mental development when infantile or juvenile qualities are preserved; *strabismus* (Gr.) – strabismus, squint; *alcoholismus* (Arab.) – alcoholism; *virilismus* – (Lat. *virilis* – virile, male) – the general name for a group of syndromes (male features in females); *daltonismus* (after the English chemist and physicist Dalton) – colour-blindness.

Contracted Compounds

1. If one or several derivational stems are included in a new word in a contracted form this word is called a contracted compound. Thus, if the first element was derived from the stem of an adjective including *-o(id)-*, *-al-* (*-ar-*), *-os-*, *-ic-*, the derivational stem loses this suffix. The contracted stem, therefore, coincides with the root of the corresponding noun.

Many derivatives of this kind were built with the help of the root morpheme *thyr(e)o-* (Gr. *thyreos* – shield) cut off the stem of the adjective *thyr(e)oideus*, which is used in a number of phrases (*glandula thyr(e)oidea* – thyroid gland; *cartilago thyr(e)oidea* – thyroid cartilage), cf. *thyreotropus* – affecting the thyroid gland; *thyreotomia* – dissection of the thyroid cartilage; *thyreotoxicosis* – thyreotoxicosis.

2. If the word from which a new one is derived is a compound one, then one of the root morphemes may be omitted. For example, in pathological terms, namely, in terms denoting functional disorders of blood, the root morpheme *cytus* is often omitted, e. g. *leucocytus*, but *leucopenia* (instead of *leucocytopenia*).

EXERCISES

1. Use the stems below to build terms with the meaning ‘inflammation’:

Gaster, oesophagus, ventriculus, larynx, appendix, periodontium, pharynx.

2. Use the stems below to build terms denoting different kinds of tumour:

Neur-, lip-, angi-, oste-, aden-.

3. Single out derivational stems/morphemes, explain their meaning:

A. Acidosis, coniosis (Greek *konia* – dust), pneumoconiosis, ascaridosis, mycosis (Greek *mykos* – fungus), fibrosis (proliferation of fibrous tissue), osteofibrosis, enterogenus, lymphologia, lymphocytus, lymphocytosis, lymphocytoma, lymphoma, morphinismus, mercurialismus, arthrosis, arthritis, ovocytus, nephrosis, nephritis, hepatosis, hepatitis, spondylosis, spondylitis, thrombocytosis, amoebiasis, pyelitis, helminthosis, silicosis (from *silicon*), myocardium, myocardioclerosis, myocardiocfibrosis, oncologia, myositis (NB!), myoma, adenocarcinoma, ventriculitis, thrombosis, rhinitis, fibrosarcoma, thrombocytus, haematogenus.

B. Omphalitis, typhlitis, oophoritis, dacryocystitis, trachelitis s. cervicitis, salpingitis, orchitis, gonarthrosis, mastoiditis, thyreotoxicosis, sigmoiditis, thyreocytus, thyreoiditis, gigantismus, ureteritis, thymoma, adenocarcinoma.

C. Cheilosis, cheilitis, gingivitis s. ulitis, parodontitis, pulpitis, meloschisis, meloplastica, uranoplastica, geniohyoideus, fluorosis, genioglossus, odontoma, glossoptosis, papillitis, cheilognathouranoschisis, sinusitis maxillaris s. highmoritis.

4. Translate the following into English:

Ars obstetrica, abrasio uteri, sectio caesarea, hernia vaginalis, hernia subcutanea, lymphocytosis infectiosa acuta, atherosclerosis obliterans, colitis cystosa, colitis superficialis, resectio pylori, carcinoma in situ, graviditas abdominalis, colitis ulcerosa non specifica, inflammatio fibrinosa, inflammatio purulenta, blastoma malignum (s. tumor malignus), sarcoma osteogēnum, chondromatosis ossium, punctio pancreatoduodenalis, ductus biliferi, hernia femoralis, refluxus intestinorenalis, tumor maturus s. blastoma maturum, splenitis maligna, pyelitis cystosa, pyelonephrosis chronica, pyelonephritis tuberculosa, arthritis migrans, bursitis articulationis genus, ankylosis dentium, partus maturus, oclusio anterior,

albuminuria gravidarum, bursitis radiohumeralis, lien mobilis, splenopexia, carcinoma ovarii, ruptura vulvae, vestibuli et vaginae, carcinoma renis, carcinoma mammae, carcinoma fibrosum, carcinoma gigantocellulare, tumor malignus, tumor benignus, carcinoma hepatocellulare, refluxus caecoiliacus, ileus congenitus, pleuritis carcinomatosa, osteoarthritis senilis.

5. a) Form names of inflammatory diseases of the following organs:

Mouth, tongue, stomach, peritoneum, rectum, ureter, kidney, spleen, urethra, bladder, gallbladder, brain, larynx, meninges, trachea, tonsil, joint, uterus, renal pelvis, spine, pleura, biliary ducts, pancreas.

b) Form names of tumours developing from the tissues of:

Cartilage, bone, muscle, liver, lymph, tooth, epithelium, endothelium, connective tissue (*fibr-*).

6. Single out derivational stems/morphemes, explain their meaning:

A. Splachnologia, gastroenterologia, intestinoplastica, ileocoloplastica, colpoperineotomia, laparotomia, laparothoracotomia, gastrectasia, bronchiectasis, vagotomia, spondylotomia, enteroptosis, proctospasmus, hydrotherapia, pneumonopexia, stenocardia, ileosigmoidostomia (sigmoid colon – part of the colon), pylorostenosis, choledochoplastica, choledochostomia, colostoma, colostomia, acroparalysis, choledochogastrotomia, splenoptosis, hysteroscopia, tomographia, nephrotomographia, nephrostomia, splenitis, hepaticoduodenostomia, splenorraphia, osteomalacia, chondromalacia, splachnoptosis, metroplastica, pancreatotomia, pancreatocholangiogram, thoracolaparotomia, thoracogastroschisis.

B. Salpingolysis, patellodesis, renoprivus, thyroprivus, ovarioprivus, dacryocystographia, colporrhaphia, metruum, rachischisis, salpingectomy, trachelotomy, rachiotomy, thoracocentesis, cranioschisis, dacryocystostenosis, laparocentesis, arthrodesis, cardiorrhesis, spondylodesis, cholangioma, spondylographia, urethritis, hystercervicotomy, ureterographia, ureterotomy,

orchipexia, orchiectomy, diverticulectomy, salpingostomy, cholangitis, colpopexia, splenoportography, osteolysis.

7. Translate the following diagnoses:

Gangrenous pneumonia, superficial inguinal hernia, acquired valvular disease, congenital cyst, open fracture, closed fracture, malignant tumour, alveolar cancer, skin cancer, mucosal cancer, alveolar sarcoma, multiple hemorrhagic sarcoma, acute appendicitis, serous hepatitis, purulent hepatitis, gluteal hernia, congenital glaucoma, complicated caries.

8. Build single-word Latin terms:

A. Pain in the spine, fixation of kidney, kidney prolapse, removal of uterus, dissection of abdomen, dissection of kidney, fixation of colon, dissection of colon, placing a new opening on colon, tooth tumour, spasm of colon, removal of prostate, fixation of spleen, pain in the region of the rectum, fixation of rectum, softening of: bone, cartilage, brain; restorative surgery on larynx, dilation of lungs, removal of tonsils.

B. Inflammation of the vagina, sigmoid colon, sinus; reparative surgery of the vagina and perinaeum; rupture of the vagina; incision of the navel; inflammation of the lacrimal sac; dilation of the lacrimal sac; x-ray of uterine tubes; inflammation of uterine tubes and ovaries; making a fistula in a uterine tube; method of dilating the vagina; bone destruction; instrument for dilating the rectum; cleft vertebra.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 3

Names of body parts and organs

<i>Greek combining form</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
A. <i>splanchn-</i> (<i>splanchna pl.</i>)	viscera pl.	inner organs	внутренние органы (внутренности)

gastr-, -gastria (<i>gaster, gastros</i>)	ventriculus, i, m	stomach	желудок
enter- (<i>enteron; entera pl.</i>)	intestinum, I, n intestinum tenue	intestine, small intestine	кишка, кишечник тонкая кишка
lapar- (<i>lapare</i>)	abdomen, inis, n; venter, ntris, m	abdomen, belly	живот, чрево, брюхо
proct- (<i>proktos</i>)	anus, I, m rectum, I, n	anus; rectum	задний проход прямая кишка
pneumon-, pneum- (<i>pneumon</i>)	pulmo, onis, m	lung	легкое
neph- (<i>nephros</i>)	ren, renis, m	kidney	почка
splen- (<i>splen</i>)	lien, lienis, m	spleen	селезенка
pyel- (<i>pyelos</i>)	pelvis renalis	renal pelvis	почечная лоханка
cyst- (<i>kystis</i>)	vesica, ae, f vesica urinaria	urinary bladder	пузырь, мешок мочевой пузырь
cholecyst- (<i>chole + kystis</i>)	vesica biliaris s. vesica fellea	gallbladder	желчный пузырь
choledoch- (<i>chole + doche</i>)	ductus choledochus	common bile duct	общий желчный проток
cholangi- (<i>angeion</i>)	ductus bilifer	bile duct	желчный проток
metr-, -metra, -metrium (<i>metra</i>) hyster- (<i>hystera</i>)	uterus, i, m	uterus, womb	матка
B. omphal- (<i>omphalos</i>)	umbilicus, i, n funiculus umbilicalis	umbilicus, navel	пупок пуповина
typhlo- (<i>typhlon</i>)	caecum i, n	cecum	слепая кишка
dacryocyst- (<i>dacryon+kystis</i>)	saccus lacrimalis	lacrimal sac	слезный мешок

colp- (<i>colpos</i>)	vagina, ae, f	vagina	влагалище
oophor- (<i>oophoron</i>)	ovarium, i, n	ovary	яичник
oo- (<i>oon</i>)	ovum, i, n	ovum	яйцо
salping- (<i>salpinx</i>)	tuba uterine tuba auditiva	uterine tube auditory tube	маточная труба; слуховая труба
trachel- (<i>trachelos</i>)	cervix, icis, f	cervix	шейка матки
orchid-, orchidi-, orchidia, -orchia (<i>orchis, orchidion</i>)	testis, is m	testicle	мужская половая железа, яичко

Pathological processes, surgical interventions

A.	
– <i>iatria, iater</i>	treatment
- <i>ectasia, ectasis</i>	dilation, enlargement
- <i>ptosis</i>	ptosis, sinking, prolapse of an organ
- <i>steno-, -stenosis</i>	narrowing, tightening, stricture
- <i>sclerosis</i>	hardening, becoming denser
- <i>malacia</i>	softening
- <i>lysis</i>	1) destruction, dissolution 2) operation for eliminating (dissecting) adhesions, scars
- <i>plastica</i>	plastic / reparative operation
- <i>tomo-</i> <i>Ex.: tomographia</i>	body section sectional radiography
- <i>tomia</i>	an operation of dissecting an organ; incision of an organ
- <i>ectomia</i>	an operation of excising (removing) an organ, tissue; excision of an organ, tissue
- <i>stomia</i>	an operation of placing a mouth (opening, fistula) on an organ or between organs, vessels
- <i>pexia</i>	an operation of fixing an organ
- <i>rhapsia</i>	an operation of suturing (stitching) an organ
B.	
- <i>rhexis</i>	rupture
- <i>schisis</i>	a cleft organ

<i>-desis</i>	surgery for immobilizing an organ
<i>-euryasis</i>	a technique for enlarging an organ
<i>-eurynter</i>	an instrument for enlarging an organ
<i>-clasia</i>	surgery for destroying an organ
<i>-centesis</i>	puncture, tapping
<i>-privus</i>	(adj.) due to an absence or removal of organ

UNIT 4

WORD BUILDING: PREFIXATION

Prefixation

Prefixation which is joining the prefix to the root does not change the meaning of the word but merely adds a semantic component specifying either spatial localization (above, below, ahead, behind), or direction (approaching, receding), or time reference (preceding or following something); it may also indicate the absence of something or negate it.

Prefixes developed mainly from prepositions, therefore, their direct meanings are similar to the meanings of the corresponding prepositions.

A few prefixes also developed secondary or transferred meanings. Thus, the Greek prefix *para-* acquired the transferred meaning '*departing or deviating from something, inconsistency between the manifestations and the essence of a phenomenon*', e.g. *para-nasalis* – paranasal but *para-mnesia* (Gr. *mnesia* – memory) – the general name for distorted or false recollections; *paratyphus* – the general name for human infectious diseases caused by a certain kind of *Salmonella* bacteria and characterized by clinical manifestations similar (!) to the symptoms of typhoid fever.

In descriptive morphological names Latin prefixes are used in their direct meanings. In the terms denoting pathological conditions, diseases, functional disturbances of organs, etc, prefixes are used in their secondary meanings: e.g. anat.: *hypo-gastrium* (Gr. *hypo-* below, under) – hypogastrium; path. physiology: *hypo-tonia* (Gr. *hypo-* below, under the norm) – hypotony, decreased tone of a muscle or of muscular layer of the hollow organ.

Greek and Latin prefixes are in wide use in various subsystems of medical terminology and biology. Moreover, Latin prefixes are predominant in anatomical terms while Greek prefixes are abundant in the terms of pathological anatomy, physiology, clinical subjects.

As a rule, Latin prefixes are joined to Latin roots. However, there are some exceptional cases when the so-called *hybrid* words are built, e. g. the words *epi-fascialis* (epifascial), *endo-cervicalis* (endocervical) include Greek prefixes and Latin derivational stems. When building terms with the help of prefixes whole words are used as derivational stems.

Antonymic Prefixes

Antonymic prefixes are those whose meanings are opposite, e. g. Lat. *intra-* (inside) and *extra-* (outside); Gr. *endo-* (inside) and *ecto-* or *exo-* (outside), etc.

The meanings of a number of Latin prefixes are similar to those of Greek prefixes:

Lat. <i>inter-</i>	}	between, in the middle	<i>contra-</i>	}	against, counter-, anti-
Gr. <i>meso-</i>			<i>anti-</i>		
Lat. <i>com (con)-</i>	}	together with, with			
Gr. <i>syn(sym)-</i>					

NOTE. When prefixes are joined to stems prefixes themselves may be modified being affected by the initial sound of the stem. It is known as assimilation, i.e. when the final consonant in a prefix assimilates (becomes similar) fully or partly with the initial sound of the derivational stem, e.g. the prefix *ad-* before the initial consonants *c, f, g, n, p* is fully transformed into *ac-, af-, ag-, an-, ap-*. The final *n* in prefixes before *b, p* turns into *m* (*com-pressor* ← *con-* (together with, with); *sym-biosis* ← *syn-* (together with, with)) or fully assimilates before the consonants *l, m, r*.

Words Derived by Means of Both Suffixes and Prefixes

A number of words were built by joining both a suffix and a prefix to the stem. This pattern was highly productive both in ancient Greece (*hypo-gastrium*, *mes-enter-ium*) and in later periods (*mesometrium*, *mesovarium*, *perichondrium*, *periodontium*, *paracolpium*, *endocardium*, *pericardium*, *epineurium*, etc.).

The most common Latin and Greek prefixes are listed in Vocabulary Extension 4.

EXERCISES

1. Single out derivational combining forms. Explain the meaning of the terms:

1. Infraorbitalis, supraclavicularis, infratrochlearis, supratrochlearis, interclavicularis, interosseus, intralobularis, intramuscularis, parasternalis, episternalis, suprasternalis, subcorticalis, subpleuralis, subduralis (about brain coat), epitympanicus, endocervicalis, antenatalis (Lat. *natus* birth), postnatalis, intranatalis, interalveolaris, subcutaneus, extrapulmonalis, extrapyramidalis, paravesicalis, submandibularis, retrobuccalis, premolaris, adducens (Lat. *duco* to draw), abducens, abductio, praeglaucoma, praecancerosus, perivascularis.

2. Adaptatio (*aptus* - apt), readaptatio, aggravatio (*gravis* heavy) – aggravation (of a disease), applicatio (*applico* apply), exhumatio (Lat. *humus* ground, soil) - exhumation (digging out a corpse), decompensatio, desactivatio, absorptio (Lat. *sorbeo* absorb), adsorptio, praemorbidus (Lat. *morbus* disease), exenteratio seu eventratio - extracting visceral organs, exarticulatio – exarticulation, removing a limb from a joint, extirpatio (Lat. *stirps* lower part of the trunk with roots) – eradication, complete excision of an organ; synphalangia, dementia (Lat. *mens*, *mentis* thought, intellect) - dementia; diastöle - rhythmic dilation of heart cavities, systöle - rhythmic contraction of the heart, diathermia - heating of deep lying tissues, invasio (*vado* head for), disseminatio (*semino* sow), endemia (Gr. *demos* region, country, people) – constant morbidity in a certain area caused by a certain disease.

3. Empyema (Gr. *pyon* - pus) - collection of pus in a natural cavity; praesenilis, praeventivus – preventive; prodromalis (Gr. *prodromos* forerunner) – betokening; progrediens (*gradior* go, set out) – progressing; prolongatus – prolonged; pronephros – pronephros; metanephros - metanephros; metaplasia (Gr. *plasis* formation, generation) – persistent transformation of one type of tissue into another.

4. Metathalāmus, hypothalāmus, epithalāmus, epitympānum, epiphŷsis (Gr. *phyo* grow), diaphŷsis, metaphŷsis, apophŷsis, decapitatio (in obstetrics - embryotomy), decompressio (compressio - compression), eutopia (Gr. *topos* place, site) - normal position, location of an organ, dystopia, revaccinatio, reinfectio, regeneratio, degeneratio, antagonismus (Gr. *agon* struggle), invalīdus (*valīdus* strong), conjunctiva, collectivus.

2. Translate the following adjectives:

Submandibular, suboccipital, hypoglossal (nerve), sublingual (duct), interarticular, intercostal, intermuscular, retrosternal, retrobuccal, extraperitoneal, intramuscular, supramarginal, suprathoracic, intrathoracic, subtemporal, intervertebral, retroperitoneal, retropharyngeal, intracapsular, suprarenal.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 4

Greek Prefixes

<i>Prefix</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Example</i>	
		<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
1. <i>endo-, ento-</i>	inside, intra-	endogenous	of internal origin
2. <i>peri-</i>	around, surrounding smth.	periosteum	periosteum
3. <i>para-</i>	1. near/next to 2. deviation from the norm	paranasalis paramnesia	paranasal paramnesia (false recollection)

NB! When combined with the names of different organs the prefixes **endo-**, **peri-**, **para-** mean their coatings.

endo- inner coating, e. g. *endometritis* (inflammation of the uterine inner coating);

peri- outer coating, e.g. *perimetritis* (inflammation of the uterine outer coating);

para- tissue near the organ, e.g. *parametrium* (the tissue near the uterus).

4. ecto-, exo-	out of, outside	exogenes	of external origin
5. hyper-, epi-	above	hyperthyreosis	increased function of the thyroid gland
6. hypo-	below/under-	hypofunctio	decreased function
7. pro-	fore-/pre-	prognosis	prognosis, forecast
8. meta-	1. behind 2. transition	metencephalon metastasis	back encephalon spread of pathogens
9. meso-	between	mesencephalon	middle brain
10. dia-	1. between 2. through 3. division	diaphysis diarrhoea diagnosis	middle part of the diaphysis (tubulous bone) diarrhoea diagnosis
11. syn-, sym-	with, together with	synostosis	connection with the help of bone tissue
12. anti-	against	antibacterialis	antibacterial
13. ana-	1. upwards 2. resuming	anacrota anabiosis	part of the pulse wave going upwards recovery to life
14. cata-	1. downwards 2. reinforcement	catacrota	part of the pulse wave going downwards

NB! *anamnesis* - finding out the events preceding a disease by questioning patients, taking past history; *catamnesis* - case history of the patient after the treatment.

15. en-	in, inside	encephalon	encephalon (literally: <i>in the head</i>)
16. ex-, ec-	out of	ectomia	excision
17. a-, an-	absence, lack negation	atrophia anaesthesia	lack of nutrition making numb, unable to feel
18. dys-	disorder, dysfunction	dysuria	difficulty in urination

19. eu-	normal functioning	eupnoe	normal respiration
----------------	--------------------	--------	--------------------

Latin Prefixes

<i>Prefix</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Example</i>	
		<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>
1. ad- (ac-, af-, ap-)	approaching, connecting	adductio appendix	adduction appendix
2. ab-	driving aside	abductio	abduction
3. intra-	inside	intracapsularis	intracapsular
4. extra-	outside	extracapsularis	extracapsular
5. infra-, sub-	below	infracostalis	infracostal
6. supra-, super-	above	suprarenalis	suprarenal
7. ante-, prae-	before, preceding	antebrachium praesenilis	antebrachium, forearm presenile
8. post-	after	postnatalis	postnatal
9. inter-	inter-	interlobularis	interlobular
10. trans-, per-	through, transition	transfusio peroralis	transfusion peroral
11. re-	resuming, repeating response, reaction	reanimatio reactio	resuscitation response
12. con- (com-, col-)	with, together with	conjunctiva compositus	conjunctiva complex
13. contra-	opposite	contralateralis	contralateral
14. in-, im-	in, inside	inflammatio	inflammation
15. ex-, e- (ef-)	out of	externus	external
16. in- (im-, il-)	negation	insufficiencia immobilis	insufficiency immobile
17. dis- (dif-)	division disintegration	dislocatio diffusus	dislocation diffused
18. de-, des-, se-	eliminating, depriving of smth.	degeneratio desinfectio separatio	degeneration disinfecting separation
19. retro-	behind	retrobuccalis	retrobuccal

UNIT 5

REVISION

Self-check assignments

I. Answer the questions:

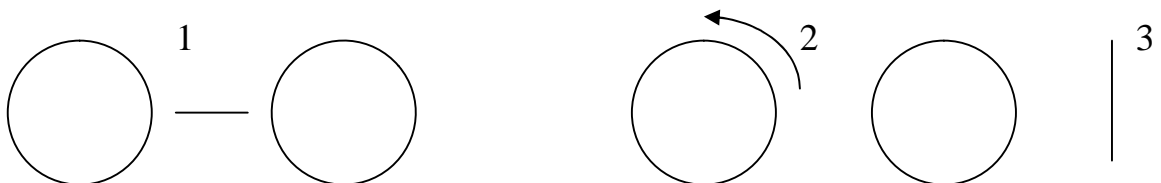
1. Which prefixes have the meaning matching the pictures below:



2. Which prefixes have the meaning describing the positions of the lines in the pictures:



3. Which prefixes describe the positions of the lines in the pictures:



4. Which is the inner embryonic layer (entoderma, mesoderma, ectoderma)?
5. Which is the outer layer of cardiac walls (endocardium, myocardium, epicardium)?
6. Which prefix means '*resuming or repeating an action*'?
7. Explain the meaning of the terms: *synostosis*, *synchondrosis*, *syndesmosis*, *symphysis*?

8. Explain the terms: *vasa af-ferentia* and *vasa ef-ferentia* (*ferens, ferentis* – carrying).
9. Explain the meaning of the terms: *apathy, sympathy, antipathy* (Gr. *pathos* – mood, emotional experience).
10. Which terms would you use to denote: diminished breath sounds; hurried breathing; respiratory arrest; rough breathing?
11. The term *euphoria* denotes *high spirits*. Which term would you build to designate the state of *anxiety, changing moods*?
12. The direct meaning of the prefix *para-* is '*near, close to*'. What shade of meaning has it developed in the clinical terms: *paracusia* – false acoustic sensation; *parageusia* – perverse gustatory sensation; *parathymia* – inconsistency between affective manifestations and their causative agents?

II. Write prefixes with the opposite meaning:

In- — ..., extra- — ..., ecto- — ..., prae- — ..., meta- — ..., post- — ..., supra- — ..., infra- — ..., sub- — ..., hyper- —

III. Build terms with the opposite meaning:

Intracellularis — ..., intrauterinus — ..., praenatalis — ..., hypotonia — ..., hyperfunctio — ..., suprahyoideus —

EXERCISES

1 Make up the clinical terms in writing:

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| 1. haem- | treatment with the help of blood |
| haemat- | a science about blood and blood-producing organs |
| -aemia | sugar (glyk-)/glucose in the blood |
| | NB! anaemia - decreased number of haemoglobin in the blood |
| 2. hist- | tissue destruction |
| 3. my- | a science about muscles |
| | NB! myositis - inflammation of muscles |
| 4. cyt- | increased number of red blood cells in the blood |
| 5. chondr- | a disease of bones and cartilages |
| 6. -cele | stomach hernia |

	blood hernia
7. <i>neur-</i>	a specialist in nervous system diseases
8. <i>aden-</i>	tightening of a gland
9. <i>angi-</i>	dilation of a vessel
10. <i>-blast(us)</i>	embryonic muscle cell
11. <i>phleb-</i>	inflammation of veins resulting in thrombus formation
12. <i>ten-</i>	stitching a tendon
13. <i>dermat-</i>	skin inflammation
14. <i>ur-</i>	urine in blood
15. <i>-uria</i>	blood in urine
	difficulty in urination
16. <i>chyl-</i>	lymph in the thorax
<i>-chylia</i>	non-production of the chyle
17. <i>py-</i>	pus in urine
18. <i>hidr-</i>	inflammation of sweat glands
19. <i>hydr-</i>	elimination of fluid, loss of water
20. <i>tox-, toxic-</i>	poisonous substances in blood
21. <i>lith-</i>	incision of the renal pelvis to remove stones
<i>lithiasis</i>	stones in the urinary tract
22. <i>onco-</i>	a science about tumours
23. <i>carcin-</i>	NB! <i>carcinoma</i> - malignant tumour
24. <i>myel-</i>	spinal marrow softening
25. <i>mast-</i>	a disease of the mammary gland
26. <i>ot-</i>	a pain in the ear
27. <i>ophthalm-</i>	instrumental examination of the eye
28. <i>sphygm-</i>	pulse registration
<i>-sphygmia</i>	absence of pulse
29. <i>gynaec-</i>	a science about women's diseases
30. <i>andr-</i>	a substance having the same effect as male hormones
31. <i>paed-</i>	a science about children's diseases and their treatment
<i>-paedia</i>	correcting/treating speech disorders
32. <i>ger-</i>	NB! <i>gerontology</i> - a science studying the phenomenon of senescence (getting old, aging)
33. <i>-top-</i>	an organ displacement
34. <i>pharmac-</i>	a science about medicines

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 5

<i>Greek combining form</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
A. <i>haemo-, haemato-, -aemia</i> (<i>haima, atos</i>)	sanguis, inis, m	blood	кровь

histo-, histio- (<i>histos, histion</i>)	textus, us, m	tissue	ткань
myo-, -mysium (<i>mys, myos</i>)	musculus, i, m	muscle	мышца, мышечный
cyto-, -cytus (<i>kytos</i>)	cellula, ae, f	cell	клетка
chondro- (<i>chondros</i>)	cartilago, inis, f	cartilage	хрящ, хрящевой
-cele (<i>kele</i>)	hernia, ae, f	hernia	грыжа; вздутие, выбухание
neuro-, neuroi- (<i>neuron</i>)	nervus, i, m	nerve	нерв
adeno- (<i>aden</i>)	1) glandula, ae, f 2) nodus lymphaticus (lymphonodus)	1) gland; 2) lymph node	1) железа, железистый эпителий 2) лимфатический узел
angio- (<i>angeion</i>)	vas, vasis, n vasculum, i, n	vessel	сосуд (преимущественно кровеносный)
blasto-, -blastus (<i>blastos</i>)	germen, inis, n	embryonic, immature cell	зачаток; - бласт – зародышевая клетка или ранняя эмбриональная стадия
phlebo- (<i>phleps, phlebos</i>)	vena, ae, f	vein	вена
teno- (<i>tenon</i>)	tendo, inis, m	tendon	сухожилие
dermo-, dermato-, -derma (<i>derma, atos</i>)	cutis, is, f	skin	кожа
uro-, -uresis, -uria (<i>uron</i>)	urina, ae, f	urine, urination	моча
chole-, -cholia (<i>chole</i>)	fel, fellis, n; bilis, is, f	bile	желчь
chylo-, -chylia (<i>chylos</i>)	lymph, ae, f	1) chyle (gastric or intestinal juice), 2) related to lymph	относящийся к лимфе, к хилусу – млечному соку

pyo- (<i>pyon</i>)	pus, puris, n	pus	гной
hidro- (<i>hidros</i>)	sudor, oris, m	sweat, perspiration	пот
hydro- (<i>hydor, hydatos</i>)	aqua, ae, f	1) water; 2) liquid	1) вода 2) жидкость
tox- , toxico- , toxi- (<i>toxon; toxicon</i>)	venenum, i, n	poison	яд, ядовитый, токсический
litho- , -lithiasis (<i>lithos</i>)	calculus, i, m	calculus, stone	наличие конкре- ментов, камня
onco- (<i>onkos</i>)	tumor, oris, m	tumour, swelling; volume	1) опухоль; 2) объем
carcino- (<i>karkinos;</i> <i>karkinoma</i>)	cancer, cri, m	cancer, malignancy	рак, раковая опухоль
myelo- , -myelia (<i>myelos</i>)	medulla spinalis; medulla ossium	spinal cord / spinal marrow	спинной мозг или костный мозг
masto- (<i>mastos</i>)	mamma, ae, f	mammary gland	женская грудь, молочная железа
oto- , otia (<i>us, otos</i>)	auris, is, f	ear	ухо
ophthalmo- , -ophthalmia (<i>ophthalmos</i>)	oculus, i, m	eye	глаз
sphygmo- , -sphygmia	pulsus, us, m	pulse	пульс
gyno- , -gynaeco (<i>gyne,</i> <i>gynaikos</i>)	femina, ae, f femininus, a,um	woman female	женщина, женский
andro- , -andria (<i>aner,</i> <i>andros</i>)	mas, maris, m masculus, a,um vir, i, m	man male	мужчина, мужской
paedio- , paedo- (<i>pais,</i> <i>paidos, paedion</i>)	infans, ntis, m, f puer, eri, m	infant infantile	ребенок, дитя, детский
-paedia (<i>paideia</i>)		methods of correcting disorders, deformities	методы исправления нарушений, деформаций
geri- , gero- , geronto- (<i>geron, gerontos</i>)	senex, senis, m senilis, e	old person senile	старик, старческий

topo- (<i>topos</i>)	locus, i, m	place	место
pharmaco- (<i>pharmakon</i>)	medicamentum, i, n	drug	лекарство
B. trich-, -trichia (<i>thrix</i> , <i>trichos</i>)	capillus, i m	hair	волосы
onych-, -onychia (<i>onyx</i> , <i>onychos</i>)	unguis, is m	nail	ноготь
dacry- (<i>dakryon</i>)	lacrima, ae f	tear	слеза
sial-, -sialia (<i>sialon</i>)	saliva, ae f	saliva, spittle	слюна, слюнный
copr- (<i>kopros</i>)	faeces, ium f (pl) stercus, oris n	faeces, excrement	кал
galact- (<i>galaktos</i>)	lac, lactis n	milk	молоко
lip- (<i>lipos</i>)	adeps, ipis m	lipid, fat; fatty	жир; жировой
-op-, -opt-, -opia, -opsia optico- (<i>ops</i>)	visus, us m	vision; observation	глаз; зрение; зрительное восприятие
phaco-, -phakia (<i>phakos</i>)	lens, lentis f	lens	хрусталик
blephar- (<i>blepharon</i>)	palpebra, ae f	eyelid	веко
kerat- (<i>keras</i>)	cornea, ae f	cornea; keratinisation	роговица; ороговение
phon-, -phonia (<i>phone</i>)	vox, vocis f sonus, i m	voice; sound	звук; голос

UNIT 6

COMBINING FORMS DESIGNATING FUNCTIONAL AND PATHOLOGICAL DISORDERS

EXERCISES

1. Explain the meanings of the derivational morphemes in the words below:

A. 1. Haemolysis, haemotherapia, haemostasis, empyema, haemangioma, haemangiomatosis, haemarthrosis, haematologia, haematoma (circumscribed accumulation of blood in tissues), haematonephrosis, azotaemia, cholaemia, uraemia, ureteritis, vasoresectio, vasotomia, ectopia, vasoconstrictio, myoma, myoblastus, thymocytus, myoblastoma, perimysium, endomysium, acrohidrosis, paraproctitis.

2. Myocardium, myometrium, carcinosarcoma, cytopenia, hydraemia, lymphocytus, lympho(cyto)penia, hydrarthrosis, lymphorrhoea, chondroblastus, chondroblastoma, chondrogenesis, herniorrhaphia, perivascuilitis, epicranium, epipharynx, gastrocele, meningocele, anaemia, toxaemia, myasthenia, chondrodystrophia.

3. Neurosis, neuritis, neuroma, neurolysis, angioneurosis, adenotomia, lymphadenitis, lymphangitis, hyperaemia, lymphadenoma, lymphangiadenographia, hidradenitis, anhidrosis, aesthesiologia.

4. Angiectasia, phlebectasia, anaesthesia, hypaesthesia, phlebosclerosis, erythroblastus, ovocytus, dermatosis, dermatographia, mesoderma, periderma, dermatitis, dermatostomatitis, sphygmographia, ureterolysis, pneumolysis, pneumonomalacia, lithotomia, lithiasis, cholelithiasis, urolithiasis, broncholithus, broncholithiasis, dysfunctio, chylothorax, chyluria, chylocele, paracystitis, achlorhydria ('chlorhydr' = hydrochloric acid).

5. Pyoderma, pyaemia, pyorrhoea, pyothorax, pyuria, pyometra, dyscrinia, secretio, incretio, endocrinologia, haemorrhagia, gastrorrhagia, odontorrhagia, oncogenesis, oncogramma (volume).

6. Synostosis, myelopathia, aplasia, hyperplasia, dysplasia, metaplasia, myelodysplasia, myelosis, osteomyelitis, mastoptosis, hydrocephalus, otoneurologia, otitis, ophthalmologia, cholekinesis, hypopituitarismus, ductus bilifer, vesica biliaris s. vesica fellea, gynaecologia, paediatrica, logopaedia, chondrocytus, haemocyti, gerontologia, hydrophilia, hydrophobia, geriatria.

7. Apnoë, hypopnoë, pneumocephalia, tenorrhaphia, aërohaemotherapia, pneumographia, respiratio, inspiratio, pneumarthrosis, sphygmogramma, atrophica, dystrophica, hypertrophica, vagotrōpus (a, um), anoxia, hypoxia, haemophilia, aërophagia, aërotherapia, ophthalmorheographia (“*rheo*-“ – electricity), typhloptosis, tetraplegia.

B. 1. Anergia, synergia, asynergia, hypergia, chirurgia, chondrodysplasia, tenodesis, atrichia, anonychia, onychorrhaxis, dacryoadenitis; dacryolithus s. calculus lacrimalis; hyperdynamia, hypodynamia, amnesia, sialadenitis, sialorrhoea, coprostasis, galactostasis, epoophōron, lipoma, dysmorphosis, pyoophoritis, pyosalpinx, pyoovarium, morphologia, phacomalacia, blepharitis, keratoma (on the skin), keratosis (on the skin), keratitis (about the eye), asthenopia, biopsia, pharmacophobia, fasciodesis, cytositis.

2. Cardioplegia, ophthalmoplegia, hypertrichia, aphonia, sphygmophonia, aethiologia, aethiopathogenēsis, phrenicotomia, schizophrenia (*schizo* = split), paraphrenia, phacoma, lipodystrophia, dacryocystographia, dacryocystorhinostomia, hydrorrhachis, mesovarium, lipaemia, haemopoēsis, thermophilus.

C. Atelodontia, atelocheilia, ulorrhagia, uranoplegia, uranorrhaphia, meloplastica, meloschisis, odontolithus, odontogenēsis, dysontogenēsis, parodontitis, endodontitis, gnathitis, prognathia, progenia.

2. Build clinical terms in writing:

1. **-bi-** a science about microorganisms

NB! **biopsia** - examination of the living tissue with the help of a microscope

2. -pnoë	normal breathing/respiration
3. -genesis	tissue generation, development
4. -aesthesia	disrupted sensitivity
5. -asthenia	nervous weakness
6. spir-	NB! spirometria - measuring the volume of the air in lungs
7. pneum-	air in the thorax
8. aër-	inflammation of the ear as a result of atmospheric pressure fall
9. -kinesia	absence of movement (kinetic function)
10. -crin	NB! endocrinologia - a science about diseases of internal secretion glands
11. -penia	shortage of white blood cells
12. -cytosis	increased number of white blood cells
13. -rhoea	discharge of pus from the ear
	NB! diarrhoea - diarrhea
14. -rhagia	liver hemorrhage
	NB! haemorrhagia - hemorrhage
15. -stasis	NB! arresting hemorrhage
16. ton-	blood pressure measuring
17. -plasia	malformation of an organ/tissue
18. -tensio	NB! hypotensive drugs
19. -trophia	insufficient tissue/organ nourishment, development
20. -ox-	lack of oxygen in blood
21. -phagia	swallowing the air
22. -philia	predisposition for hemorrhage
23. -phobia	fear of women
24. -tropus	affecting muscles
25. psych-	1) affecting mental processes; 2) a science about mental diseases and their treatment

3. Build terms matching the description:

1. Tumour originating from sweat glands; tumour originating from (tissue of) thymus; presence of hemoglobin in urine; bile content in blood; concrement in vessel; (benign) tumour in fatty tissue; difficulty in swallowing; accumulation of pus and blood in pericardium; presence of pus in peritoneal cavity; muscular weakness; a science about blood diseases; cell pathology; inflammation of skin; disorder of development; inflammation of lymph vessels; inflammation of a lymph node; treatment with the help of blood; presence of galactose in urine.

2. Increased number of lymphocytes; congestion of bile; congestion of blood; movement disorder; cell destruction; uterine bleeding; tissue destruction; *adjective meaning* outside a cell; disorder of nutrition; absence of sensitivity; *adjective meaning* outside peritoneum; disturbance of sensitivity; spasm of vessels; decreased tension; low pressure; accumulation of air and blood in pericardium; diminished breathing; inflammation of synovial bursa.

4. Build Latin names for different kinds of inflammation. State their Dictionary Entry Form:

Inflammation of mammary gland (of pancreas, external coat of veins, internal coat of veins, tissues around pancreas).

5. Write Latin names of organs, state their dictionary form:

Pylorus, liver, brain, duodenum, stomach, esophagus, larynx, pharynx, trachea, peritoneum, thorax, spleen, perineum, colon.

6. Translate the diagnoses into Latin:

A. Retrovesical abscess, neoplasm of renal pelvis, transpleural gastrectomy, floating kidney, obliterating bronchitis, retropharyngeal abscess, senile psychosis, hepatocellular jaundice, latent diabetes, cardiopulmonary decompensation, infectious mononucleosis, chronic tonsillitis, intermittent fever, renal anuria, atrophic pharyngitis, (post-)traumatic glaucoma, phlebothrombosis of the left shin

(crus), cancer of stomach, acute hematogenous osteomyelitis, primary subacute bacterial endocarditis, endocarditis and arteritis of branches of aortic arch, atherosclerosis of cerebral arteries.

B. Subarachnoid abscess, latent allergy, intra-arterial anesthesia, pyeloretroperitoneal reflux, intrauterine infection, hypoplasia of bone marrow, ascending dilatation of heart, intravenous injection, subcutaneous injection, dental anomaly (anomaly of denture), abscess of hard palate, myocardial infarction.

7. Give Latin equivalents for the following English terms and explain their meaning:

A. Gastroenteritis, anhydrosis, endocardium, pericardium, periproctitis, endometrium, perimetrium, parametrium, cinematography, cholangiography, tendinitis, dysuria, vasculitis, dyspnoea, logasthenia, logorrhea, sphygmomanometry, meningo(en)cephalitis, hematotympanum, acrodermatitis, pyonephrosis, enterorrhagia, thoracodynia, aphonia, pyeloureterectasis, etiotropic.

B. Adynamy, dynamometry, hydropyoureter, thymopathy, thymoma, asplenism, choledocholithotomy, biliothorax, mesometrium, mesocolon, thrombocytosis, thrombocytopoiesis, hem(at)olysis, vasography or angiography, oncogenic or blastomogenic; carcinogenic, anhydremia, cardiomonitor, spirometry, respiratory, amyotonia, amyotrophy, dysbacteriosis, ophthalmoscopy, mammography, mastopathy, uropoiesis, lymphopoiesis, pyometra, hematocolpos, cholestasis, enteroproctostomy, chyluria, chylostasis.

8. Explain the meaning of the adjectives in the terms related to anesthesia:

Infraorbital, buccal, mandibular, mental, lingual, palatal, paravertebral, presacral, retrobulbar (eyeball), epibulbar (eyeball), spinal, epidural, endoneural; perineural.

9. Single out combining forms, explain their meaning:

Dentinogenesis, dentimetry, rhinorrhea, odontoblast, hypodontia, gerontostomatology.

10. Translate into English:

C. Gingivitis gravidarum, granulema subcutaneum odontogenum, caries acuta profunda, hypoplasia enameli, caries simplex, hyperaesthesia dentium, hyperaemia pulpaе, pulpitis acuta diffusa, pulpitis chronica gangraenosa, periodontitis apicalis, calculus supragingivalis, stomatitis ulcerosa, cheilitis superficialis.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 6

<i>Greek combining form</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
A.		
bio- (<i>bios</i>)	life, vital processes	жизнь, жизненные процессы
-pnoë, pnoea (<i>pnoe; pnoia</i>)	breath, respiration	дыхание
geno-, -genesis, -genesia, -genia (<i>genos, genesis</i>)	generation, origin, development	рождение, порождение, происхождение, развитие, генез
aesthesio-, -aesthesia (<i>aisthesis</i>)	feeling, sensitivity	чувство, ощущение; чувствительность
astheno- (<i>asthenes; astheneia</i>)	weakness	слабость, ослабление, астения
spiro- (<i>spiro, spiratum</i>)	related to respiration	относящийся к дыханию, дыхательный
pneumo-, pneumato- (<i>pneuma, atos</i>)	air inside an organ	воздух, газ, находящийся в органе
aëro- (<i>aër, aëros</i>)	air	воздух, воздушный
-kinesia, kinemato-, kinemo-, kineto- (<i>kinesis</i>)	related to movement, kinetic function	относящийся к движению
-crin-, -crinia (<i>krino</i>)	secretion	отделение, выделение, секреция
-penia (<i>penia</i>)	shortage/deficit/ decrease of (mostly blood cells)	недостаток, уменьшение количества, главным образом, кровяных телец
-cytosis (<i>cytus + osis</i>)	increase in the number	повышение содержания

	of cells	количества клеток в сравнении с нормой
-rhoea (<i>rhoia, rhoe</i>)	discharge of liquid / secretion	течение, истечение секрета или жидкости
-rhagia (<i>rhagos; haimorrhagia</i>)	hemorrhage from the vessels of an organ	кровотечение из сосудов какого-либо органа
-stasis (<i>stasis</i>)	1) controlling; 2) congestion	застой, естественная остановка, стаз (крови, желчи, мочи, слюны)
tono-, -tonia (<i>tonos</i>)	tone, pressure	напряжение, тонус
-plasia (<i>plasis</i>)	formation, development of organs	образование, развитие ткани, клеток, органов
-tensio (<i>tensio</i>)	tension, hydrostatic pressure	гидростатическое давление в сосудах, полых органах
-tropho-, -trophia (<i>trophe</i>)	related to the nourishment and development of organs, tissues	относящийся к питанию или зависящий от него, от кровоснабжения органов и тканей
oxy-, -oxia (<i>oxys</i>)	related to oxygen	1) окисленный; 2) относящийся к кислороду
phago-, phagia (<i>phagein</i>)	1) swallowing; 2) eating	1) глотание; 2) поедание, поглощение
philo-, philia (<i>phileo; philia</i>)	predisposition for	склонность, предрасположение к чему-либо; любовь
phobo-, -phobia (<i>phobos</i>)	fear, aversion	боязнь; болезненное отвращение к чему-либо
tropo-, -tropia (<i>tropos</i>)	affecting, directed at	направление, направленность; действующий на что-либо
psycho-, -psychia (<i>psyche</i>)	mental	относящийся к душевным, духовным свойствам, к психике.
B. -plegia (<i>plege</i>)	stroke	удар, паралич
aetio- (<i>aitia</i>)	cause; etiology	причина болезни

<i>ather-</i> (<i>athere</i>)	fatty deposit	отложение жира
<i>morph-</i> (<i>morphe</i>)	structure, composition	вид, форма, строение
<i>ergo-</i>, <i>-ergia</i>, <i>-urgia</i> (<i>ergon</i>)	1) activity 2) action 3) reaction, response	деятельность действие реактивность
<i>dynamo-</i>, <i>-dynamia</i> (<i>dynamis</i>)	force, effort	сила, усилие
<i>-gnosis</i>, <i>-gnosia</i> (<i>gnosis</i>)	1) knowledge 2) cognition	знание; способность узнавать
<i>-poiesis</i>, <i>poiet-</i> (<i>poiesis</i>)	production (of blood, urine)	выработка (крови, мочи)
<i>-mnesia</i> (<i>mnesis</i>)	memory	память
<i>-phren-</i>, <i>-phrenia</i> (<i>phren</i>)	mind, mentality	ум, психические способности
<i>phrenic-</i> (<i>nervus phrenicus</i>)	related to diaphragm	относящийся к диафрагме

NOTE 1. When combined with the name of an organ *pneumo-* denotes ‘*presence of air in this organ*’. If the term includes *-graphia*, then *pneumo-* means ‘*introduction of a gas into an organ*’ to perform contrast radiography. The stems *pneumon-* and seldom *-pneum-* are used to denote the lung.

NOTE 2. The initial *haemo-* or *haema-* joined to the name of an organ means bleeding in this organ’s cavity. Moreover, the name of an organ is used, as a rule, in the Nominative Case without any suffixes (*haematocolpos*). Terms indicating *collection of fluid or pus in the organ’s cavity* are built in the similar way (*hydrometra* – fluid in the uterus).

UNIT 7

COMBINING FORMS DESIGNATING VARIOUS PROPERTIES, QUALITIES AND RELATIONS

Exercises

1. Explain the terms below:

A. 1. Homogeneous, heterogeneous, isometry, anisometry, thermophilic, cryocauter (*cauter* – instrument for cauterization, i.e. burning the surface of the body, esp. in order to destroy infection or stop a wound), thermocauter, brachycephalia, brachydactylia, bradycardia, tachycardia, somatogenic, psychogenic, feminization, masculinization, androphobia, hepatolienal (barrier).

2. Heterotopia (atypical localization of tissues), isotope, heterochromia, neophilia, neophobia, neonatology, melanoma, xerophthalmia, brachyspondylia, otorrhoea, bradysystolia, tachysystolia, homeostasis, hypoxia, acrocyanosis, glomerulonephritis, enterobiopsy.

3. Acetonuria, myelosclerosis, phlebogram, acroosteolysis, acidophilic, macrospondylia, teleroentgenotherapy, pseudoretinoblastoma, neoplasm, psychotherapy, oxyhaemometer, oxyhaemograph, tonometry, topographic, panophthalmitis, hypersthenia, pharmacotherapy, pharmacoangiography, psychosomatics, psychohygiene, gerontopsychiatry, polyangiitis, polyarteritis, polyarthritis, polymastia, enteroptosis, polyneuritis, polyradiculitis, pancarditis, myelogenic.

B. Pachymeninx (= *dura mater*), panvasculitis, leptomeninx (= *piaarachnoid coat*), angiosarcoma, dolichocephalia, dolichocolon, heteromorphosis, necrotomia, allergy, lactogenesis, hypermnnesia, phonopaedia, hemiplegia, poliomyelitis, polioencephalitis, hemiglossitis, autolysis, myelomalacia, oncogenesis, leucosis or leukaemia.

C. Brachygnathia, adentia, xerocheilia, xerostomia, agnathia, cheilorrhagia, retrogenia, progenia, retrognathia, prognathia, orthognathia, orthocheilia.

2. Build Latin terms for the following:

I

- 1. Auto-** NB! *autopsia* -examination of the corpse to establish the cause of death
- transfusion of one's own blood
- 2. Allo-** different reaction of the body
- 3. Hetero** - of different origin
- 4. Homo-** of similar origin
- 5. Iso-** of equal pressure / tension
- 6. Aniso-** unequal cell size
- 7. Neo** - NB! neonatologia - a science about newborns
- 8. Tele-** transmitting feelings and thoughts to a distant person
- moving objects without touching them
- 9. Pseudo-** Pseudopodia (pes, pedis m)
- 10. Ortho-** correction of human body deformities
correction of dental deformities
- 11. Xero-** dry skin
NB! Vitamin A = Axerophtholum
- 12. Cryo-** treating with cold
- 13. -thermia** - reaction releasing heat
reaction absorbing heat
low body temperature
high body temperature
Thermo- body temperature measuring
- 14. Pyr- NB!** - antipyretic drugs
- 15. Macro-** abnormally large head
- 16. Micro-** abnormally small head
- 17. -megalia** - abnormally large extremities
abnormally large spleen
abnormally large liver
NB! Megalomania

18. Poly- great amount of urine, excessive urination

eating a lot/heavily

multiple inflammation of joints

19. Olig- small amount of urine, insufficient urination

20. Pan- Pandemia

NB! Panophthalmitis - inflammation of all eye coatings

21. Brachy- abnormally short head

- short vertebrae

22. Brady- slow heartbeat

23. Tachy- quick/fast movement

quick/fast heartbeat

quick/fast breathing

24. Chrom- coloured body

Chromat- NB! Achromatopsia

25. Leuk- increased amount of leukocytes in blood

26. Erythr- fear of red colour

27. Cyan- blue extremities

28. Melan- black tumor

29. Polio- inflammation of grey spinal marrow

Poly- multiple inflammation of muscles

30. Glyk- increased glucose in blood

NB! Glucosuria

II

1. **Auto-** damage/destruction of cells by their own lysines.

2. **Auto** - arbitrary, self-perpetuating movement.

3. **Auto-** seeing for oneself, seeing with one's own eyes

4. **Hetero-** development of pathological histological elements in an organ, tissue.

5. **Hetero-** colour differences between 2 parts of one and the same unit, structure.

6. **-poesis** sweating, perspiration.

7. **Homeo-** treatment with small doses of a substance that acts in the same way as the causing agent of the disease.
8. **Iso-** balance between inflow and outflow of fluid in the organism.
9. **-phagia** - digestion of cells by their own enzymes.
10. **Aniso-** asymmetric mammary glands.
11. **Aniso-** pulse differences in similar arteries on both sides
12. **Neo-** formation/regeneration of tissue in the place of the damaged one
13. **Tele-** distant measuring
14. **Atelo-** incomplete development of the body or its parts
15. **Pseudo-** false arthrosis
16. **Pseudo-** hallucinations, seeing imagined objects
17. **Ortho** - normal bite/occlusion
18. **Ortho-** correcting bone deformities/defects
19. **Xero-** dryness of oral mucosa (as a result of decreased secretion by salivary glands)
20. **Xero-** dry lips
21. **Xero-** pathologically dry skin, mucosas, conjunctiva.
22. **Cryo-** a pathological state caused by exposure to cold
23. **Therm-** susceptibility to temperature
24. **Therm-** burning pain
25. **Therm-** a chart showing the temperatures of different points on the surface of body
26. **Pyr-** fear of fire
27. **Pyr-** heartburn, burning pain in the stomach
28. **Macro-** unusually large teeth
29. **Macro-** unusually large nails
30. **Macro-** unusually large hands
31. **Micro-** extremely small tongue
32. **-megalia** - pathologically long intestine
33. **Megalo-** unusually large stomach

34. **Oligo-** insufficient nourishment, nutrition
35. **Olig-** insufficient amount of blood in the body
36. **Poly-** excessive, heavy sweating
37. **Poly-** inflammation of several cartilages
38. **Poly-** paralysis of several muscles
39. **Pan-** inflammation of both inner and middle ear
40. **Pant-** aching all over the body
41. **Brachy-** pathologically short middle phalanges of fingers
42. **Brady-** slackened/ slow speech
43. **Chromat-** pathological colouring of urine
44. **Chromat-** causing (responsible for) pigmentation
45. **Leuk-** incision of white substance of the brain
46. **Erythr-** a state when all objects seem to be red or reddish
47. **Erythr-** shortage of erythrocytes in blood
48. **Erythr-** destruction of erythrocytes swallowed by phagocytes
49. **Cyan-** a state when all objects seem to be bluish (after a cataract removal)
50. **Melan-** a mental disorder manifesting itself as apathy or indifference to what is going on, depression
51. **Melan-** excreting dark urine, which is caused by melanin or other pigment
52. **Glyc-** presence of sugar in cerebrospinal fluid
53. **Polio-** premature greying of hair

3. Explain the following terms:

A. Xenotransplantatio, xerodermia, xerophilus, telepathia, orthopaedia, pseudostenosis, orthopnoë, cryoretinopexia, cryothalamotomia, thermoplegia, coloptosis, brachyphalangia, sclerodermia, necrobiosis (reversible process of physiological dying of tissues in contrast to necrosis), melanodermia, leucodermia, hyperglykaemia, glucosuria, melanoma, melanomatosis, cyanodermia, cyanosis, cyanuria, dyschromatopsia, chromatophorus, acroanaesthesia, oligophrenia.

B. Hemiparesis, platycephalia, bathypnoë, heteroplasia, acidaemia, xanthodermia, chloropsia, poliomyelitis, anonychia, chlorodontia, chondrosarcoma.

4. Translate into English:

Dilatatio ventriculi sinistri, stupor psychogēnus, ileus duodeni, xanthochromia congestiva liquoris cerebrospinalis, vitium cordis, appendicitis recurrens, leptomeningitis serosa acuta, gingivitis hypertrophica, abscessus peritonealis, thorax asthenicus, facies myopathica, poliomyelitis acuta, sclerosis angiogēna, parodontopathia trophica, bronchoectasis congenita, resectio ventriculi subtotalis, extirpatio uteri supravaginalis, ulcus duodeni, palpitatio cordis, tuberculosis pulmonum cavernosa, abscessus palati duri, sanatio cavitatis oris, abrasio uteri, dilatatio cordis myogena, collapsus cardiogenus, tabes hypophysialis, syndroma gastrocardiale.

5. Build terms matching the description:

Science about old age, removal of mammary gland, pain in the mammary gland, swallowing of air, low insulin level in blood, low potassium level in blood, inflammation of all arteries, disorder of urination, unilateral paresis, disturbed sensitivity, increased sensitivity, respiratory disorder (shortness of breath), nutritional disorder, increased hydrostatic pressure, small spleen, large liver, dry lips, dilation of the blind gut, decreased content of oxygen in blood, fast heart beat, low count of erythrocytes in blood, X-ray examination of the gallbladder, examination of the urinary bladder, prolapse of the uterus, uterine bleeding, complete removal of the uterus, insufficient urination, abundant urination, increased count of leucocytes in blood, small lower jaw, small upper jaw.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 7

<i>Greek combining form</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
A. auto- (<i>autos</i>)	1) own;	1) сам, тот же самый,

	2) automatic	свой, собственный; 2) автоматический
allo- (<i>allos</i>)	other, different	другой, иной, измененный, необычный
hetero- (<i>heteros</i>)	different, heterogenous	один из двух, другой, непохожий; соотв. Русск. Разно-
homeo-, homo- (<i>homoios</i>)	similar, same	сходный, одинаковый, тождественный
iso- (<i>isos</i>)	equal, similar	равный, соразмерный, одинаковый
aniso- (<i>anisos</i>)	unequal	неравный, несоразмерный
neo- (<i>neos</i>)	new	новый, молодой; вновь созданный или возникший
tele-, teleo-, telo- (<i>tele</i>)	1) distant; 2) ending	1)отдаленный (в пространстве и во времени); 2) окончание, завершение
atelo-	incomplete	неполный
pseudo- (<i>pseudos</i>)	false, pseudo-	ложный, мнимый; соответствует русским ложно-, лже-
ortho- (<i>orthos</i>)	1) straight, vertical; 2) right; correct	1) прямой, вертикально направленный; 2) правильный, соответствующий нормальному положению
xero- (<i>xeros</i>)	dry	сухой
cryo- (<i>kryos</i>)	related to cold / freezing	относящийся к холоду, низкой температуре, замерзанию
thermo-, -thermia (<i>therme</i>)	warm; heat	теплый; относящийся к температуре
pyr-, pyro, pyreto- (<i>pyr</i> ;	fever	жар; лихорадочное

<i>pyretos</i>)		состояние
macro- (<i>makros</i>)	big	большой, крупный
micro- (<i>mikros</i>)	small	малый, маленький
megalo-, -megalia (<i>megas</i>)	large	большой, увеличенный
oligo- (<i>oligos</i>)	small, insufficient	малый, незначительный, недостаточный
poly- (<i>polys</i>)	a great number of/ multiple	много, множество; больше, чем в норме
pan-, panto- (<i>pan, pantos</i>)	whole, all	все, весь, целиком
brachy- (<i>brachys</i>)	short	короткий, укороченный
brady- (<i>bradys</i>)	slow	медленный, замедленный
tachy-, tacho- (<i>tachys</i>)	quick, fast	быстрый, скорый, частый
chromo-, chromato-, -chromia (<i>chroma, chromatosis</i>)	colour	1) цвет, окраска; 2) относящийся к хрому
leuco- (<i>leukos</i>)	1) white; 2) related to leucocytes	1) белый; 2) относящийся к лейкоцитам
erythro- (<i>erythros</i>)	1) red; 2) related to erythrocytes	1) красный; 2) относящийся к эритроцитам
cyano- (<i>kyanos</i>)	dark blue	1) темно-синий, синюшный; 2) относящийся к синильной кислоте
melano- (<i>melas, melanos</i>)	black; pigmented	1) темный, черный; 2) содержащий меланин
glyco-, gluco- (<i>glykys</i>)	sweet; glucose	сладкий; наличие сахара; глюкоза
polio- (<i>polios</i>)	1) grey;	1) серый;

	2) grey matter of the central nervous system	2) относящийся к серому веществу головного мозга
B.		
<i>pachy-</i> (<i>pachys</i>)	dense, solid	плотный, твердый
<i>lept-</i> (<i>leptos</i>)	thin, fragile	тонкий, слабый
<i>dolich-</i> (<i>dolichos</i>)	long, elongated	длинный, удлинённый
<i>bary-, bar-</i> (<i>barys</i>)	1) heavy, weight; 2) atmospheric pressure	тяжелый, тяжесть; атмосферное давление
<i>bathy-, bath-</i> (<i>bathys</i>)	deep, depth	глубокий, глубина
<i>platy-</i> (<i>platys</i>)	flat, flattened, wide	плоский, широкий
<i>hemi-, semi-</i>	half; one-sided	половинный; односторонний
<i>chlor-</i> (<i>chloros</i>)	green; containing chlorine	зеленый; содержащий хлор
<i>xanth-</i> (<i>xanthos</i>)	yellow	желтый
<i>necr-</i> (<i>nekros</i>)	dying; related to dead body	омертвление; относящийся к труп

NOTE. When combined with *plastica-* and *–transplantatio*, the initial combining forms *auto-*, *allo-*, *xeno-* may have the following meanings: *auto-* using tissues or organs within one and the same organism; *allo-* using tissues and organs of other people; *xeno-* using tissues and organs of animals.

UNIT 8

REVISION

1. Differentiate the meanings of the similarly spelt combining forms:

-lithus	-lysis	-stomia	-stomat-	-somat-
-paedia	-paedo-	-phobia	-phagia	
-cyt-	-cyst-	brachy-	brady-	tachy-
-hist-	-hyster-	-tomia	-stomia	-ectomy
-hidr-	-hydr-	-graphia	-rhapsia	-rhagia
poly-	polio-	-stenosis	-asthenia	-aesthesia
-metra	-metria	-kinesis	-genesis	
-plasia	-penia			

2. Build terms matching the descriptions:

A. Hernia of brain coats, dissecting the scars of a nerve, stitching a nerve, disease of a nerve, dissecting a nerve, multiple inflammation of joints, inflammation of many groups of lymph vessels.

B. Unilateral (*semi-*) paralysis, lack of susceptibility to temperature changes, plastic operation involving transplantation of cornea of another person, pseudojaundice, pseudogout, slow swallowing, increased size and mass of the heart, reparative operation in the area of cardiac aperture, semilunar, inflammation of all vein coats, inflammation of the inner vein coat.

C. Receding upper jaw, receding lower jaw, black tongue, behind the pharynx (adj.), bleeding from the tongue, raphe of the tongue, dental calculus, suturing the palate, related to jaw and face (adj.), disease of tongue, dissection of gum, cleft lip, cleft palate, inflammation of salivary gland.

3. Name both Greek and Latin stems for the following:

A. Lung, muscle, head, nerve, vessel, vein, spleen, mouth, bone, cartilage, bone marrow, spinal marrow, tissue, cell, gland, lymph, chest, joint, stomach, large intestine, small intestine, rectum, abdomen, vertebra, heart, eye, ear, nose, tooth, kidney, renal pelvis, mammary gland, womb.

B. Vagina, ovary, uterine tube, navel, leg, foot, finger, blind gut, urinary bladder, gallbladder.

C. Jaw, upper jaw, lower jaw, chin, palate, gum, lacrimal sac, salivary gland.

4. What colour is the skin in the terms below:

B. Melanosis, xanthosis, leucodermia, erythrodermia, chlorosis.

5. Translate the following diagnoses in writing:

A. Gangrenous adenitis, infectious adenitis, submandibular adenitis, obliterating hepatocholangitis, hepatocellular adenoma, serous adenofibroma, subcutaneous emphysema, atrophic emphysema, embolism of the pulmonary artery, embolism of the spinal cord, hematogenic cholangitis, juvenile progressive paralysis, ventricular tachycardia, syndrome of the vagus nerve, atherosclerosis of coronary arteries.

B. Tuberculous empyema, arteriovenous angioma, hematoma of the brain, relapsing epidemic typhus, hemolytic coma, hyperglycemic coma, asystolia of atria, chronic atrophy of muscles, abscess of lymphatic glands, epidural abscess, intraarticular fracture, superficial keratitis, traumatic keratitis, idiopathic keratosis, pyloroantral resection of the stomach, peritoneal dissection of the abdomen, subcutaneous symphysiotomy, heart rupture or cardiorexis, white atrophy of skin.

C. Parodontosis or alveolar pyorrhea; catarrhal acute rhinitis, aphthous stomatitis, vasomotor(ial) sinusitis, gangrenous stomatitis, serous periodontitis, dental dislocation, replantation of a tooth.

6. Translate the following into English:

Paralysis glosso-labiopharyngea, status praeinfarcticus, infarctus myocardii transmuralis, ruptura septi interventricularis, extrasystolae ventriculares polytopicae, pulpa lienis s. pulpa splenica, atherosclerosis arteriarum coronariarum et aortae, glandula sudorifera, ductus sudorifer, striae gravidarum.

7. Explain the meaning of the terms below:

A. Haematomyelia, splanchnomegalia, xenogēnus (a, um), cholangioenterostomia, polyotia, chylothorax, anhidrosis, hypaesthesia, endophytus (a, um), exophytus (a, um), autopsyotherapia, erythrocytus, erythrocytosis, erythrophobia, bradypnoë, tachypnoë, bradysystolia, hemiparesis, osteoarthritis, osteogenēsis, lymphadenitis, lymphangiitis, lymphangioma, lymphadenographia, lymphadenosis, glycolysis, lymphangioendothelioma, lymphangiomatosis, lymphangiomyoma, lymphoma, lymphomatosis, lymphopenia, panserositis, lymphorrhoea, lymphosarcoma, lymphosarcomatosis, lymphocytus, lymphocytoma, lymphocytosis, biopsia, autopsia, chylostasis, oligophrenia.

B. Hyperkinesia, teleendoscopia, platyspondylia, spondylosyndesis (spinal fusion), choledochoduodenostomia, cholangioenterostomia, cholecystojejunostomia, parathyroideus, coloproctectomy, psychorthopaedia, splenoportocholangiographia, myeloradiculitis, decapitatio, myelocoele, panmyelosis, pantophobia, psychotherapia, megacolon, megaduodenum, megalomastia, macromastia, megaloureter, megarectum, splenomegalia, heterogenus, heterochromia, polyuria, melanoma, xanthoma, teleroentgenography, chloroma, desensitivisatio, allomyelotransplantatio, degenerativus, neurotropicus, ethiotropicus, morphogenesis, xerophthalmia, cryotherapia, cryochirurgia, polysplenia, bradysphygmia, autokeratoplastica, paracystitis, phlebotensiometria, endogenus, exogenus, leucolysis, leucopoiesis, esophagostoma, polyarthralgia, otorhea, olygemia, hysteroptosis, metrosalpingographia, periduodenitis, perinephritis, perineorhaphia.

C. Osteodentinum, osteodysplasia, osteodystrophia, osteolysis, osteoma, osteomyelitis, retromandibularis, retronasalis, perichondritis, periodontitis,

parotitis, paranasalis, rhinophonia, rhinorrhea, autocranioplastica, dacryocystocele, dacryocystostenosis, dacryorrhea, sialadenitis, sialogenus, sialographia, sialolithiasis, sialolithotomia, sialorrhea, gnathonecrosis, gnathoplastica, gingivoosteoplastica, pericoronitis, retromolaris, papilloma, papillomatosis, gnathoschisis, orthogenus, polyodontia, homodonticus, oncostomatologia, glossoptosis, xerostomia, palatoplastica, hypersalivatio, glossoplegia.

SECTION III

PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

This is the concluding section of the course. To master its vast terminological system – pharmaceutical terms and those of prescription – you will need the grammatical knowledge and skills acquired earlier. Besides, some new points of grammar in connection with prescription are introduced.

The vocabulary of the exercises embraces the terms used by practicing physicians and surgeons while prescribing drugs, reading drug annotations, pharmacopoeia and so on. The skills trained in this section are as follows: 1) writing Latin pharmaceutical terms without grammatical or spelling mistakes; 2) writing out a Latin prescription quickly and without mistakes or translating a Latin prescription into English.

UNIT 1

DRUG NAMES, STANDARDS

INTRODUCTION

Drugs are chemical substances used in medicine in the treatment of diseases. These chemical substances can come from many different sources. Drugs are obtained from various parts of plants, such as the roots, leaves, and fruit. Examples of such drugs are digitalis (from the foxglove plant), and antibiotics such as penicillin and streptomycin (from plants called molds). Drugs can also be obtained from animals; for example, hormones are secretions from the glands of animals. Drugs can be made from chemical substances which are synthesized in the laboratory. Anticancer drugs, such as methotrexate and prednizone, are examples of laboratory-synthesized drugs. Some drugs are

contained in food substances; these drugs are called vitamins. Drugs are dispensed and stored in an area known as a pharmacy.

The field of medicine which studies drugs, their nature, origin, and effect in the body is called pharmacology. Pharmacology is a large medical specialty and contains many subdivisions of study, including pharmacodynamics, molecular pharmacology, chemotherapy, and toxicology.

Pharmacodynamics involves the study of how drugs exert their effects in the body. Scientists interested in pharmacodynamics study the processes of drug absorption (how drugs pass into the bloodstream), metabolism (changes drugs undergo within the body) and excretion (removal of the drug from the body).

Molecular pharmacology concerns the study of the interaction of drugs and cells or subcellular entities, such as DNA, RNA, or enzymes. These studies provide important information about the mechanism of action of the drug.

Chemotherapy is the subdivision of pharmacology which studies drugs that are capable of destroying microorganisms, parasites, and cells within the body without destroying the body itself. Chemotherapy includes treatment of infectious disease, mental illness and cancer.

Toxicology is the study of harmful chemicals and their dangerous effects on the body. Toxicology includes the study of the potentially harmful effects of any drug on the body; any drug, if given in high enough doses, can have harmful actions on the body. Toxicological studies on animals are required by law before new drugs can be tested in individuals. A toxicologist is also interested in finding proper antidotes to these harmful effects. Antidotes are substances given to neutralize unwanted effects of drugs.

Names

A drug can have three different names. The **chemical name** is the chemical formula for the drug. This name is often long and complicated.

The **generic** or **official name** is a shorter, less complicated name which is recognized as identifying the drug for legal and scientific purpose. The generic name is public property and any drug manufacturer may use it. There is only one generic name for each drug.

The **brand name** or **trade name** is the private property of the individual drug manufacturer and no competitor may use it. Brand names often have the superscript after or before the name. Most drugs have several brand names because each manufacturer producing the drug gives it a different name. When a specific brand name is ordered on a prescription by a physician, it must be dispensed by the pharmacist; no other brand name may be substituted. It is common practice to capitalize the first letter of a brand name.

The following lists give the chemical, generic, and brand names of the well known antibiotic drug, ampicillin. Note that the drug can have several brand names but only one generic, or official, name.

<i>Chemical Name</i>	<i>Generic Name</i>	<i>Brand Name</i>
alpha-aminobenzyl P	ampicillin	Amcill capsules
		Omnipen
		Penbritin
		Polycillin
		Principen/N

Standards

While the **Food and Drug Administration** (FDA) has the legal responsibility for deciding whether a drug may be distributed and sold, there are definite standards for drugs set by an independent committee of physicians, pharmacologists, pharmacists, and manufacturers. This committee is called the

Pharmacopoeia. They also issue a special guide on drugs which is known under the same name.

Two important standards stipulated in the pharmacopoeia are that the drug must be clinically useful (useful for patients) and available in pure form (made by good manufacturing methods). If a drug is included in the pharmacopoeia, it has met with its standards. A list of drugs is published regularly and in different countries may go under different names. In Russia it is known as **Vidal**. Not all drugs are listed in the pharmacopoeia.

Administration of Drugs

The route of administration of a drug (how it is introduced into body) is very important in determining the rate and completeness of its absorption into the bloodstream and speed and duration of the drug's action in the body.

The many different methods used by physicians and allied health personnel to administer drugs are listed below, with a brief discussion of each method.

Oral Administration (*per os*)

The route of administration is by mouth. Drugs given orally must pass into the stomach and be absorbed into the bloodstream through the intestinal wall. Although this method is probably most acceptable to patients from the standpoint of convenience, it may have several disadvantages. If the drug is destroyed in the digestive tract by digestive juices or if the drug cannot pass through the intestinal mucosa, it will be ineffective. Also, oral administration is slower than other methods and disadvantageous if time is a factor in therapy.

Sublingual Administration (*sub linguam*)

In this route of administration, drugs are not swallowed but are placed under the tongue and allowed to dissolve in the saliva. Absorption may be rapid for some agents. Nitroglycerin tablets are taken this way to treat attacks of chest

pain (angina pectoris). The nitroglycerin is rapidly absorbed into the bloodstream and opens coronary arteries to increase blood flow to the heart muscle.

Rectal Administration (*per rectum*)

Suppositories (cone-shaped objects containing drugs) and aqueous (water) solutions are inserted into the rectum (distal end of the digestive tract). At times, drugs are given by rectum when oral administration presents difficulties, such as when the patient is nauseated and vomiting.

Parenteral Administration (*per injectionem*)

This type of administration is accomplished by injection through a **syringe** (**syring**/o = tube) under the skin, into muscle, into a vein, or into a body cavity. There are several types of parenteral injections:

Subcutaneous Injection. This type of administration is sometimes called a **hypodermic injection**, and is given just under the several layers of the skin. The outer surface of the arm and the anterior surface of the skin are usual locations for subcutaneous injections.

Intradermal Injection. This shallow injection is made onto the upper layers of the skin. It is used chiefly in skin testing for allergic reactions. Short needles are used, and an elevation appears on the skin when an intradermal injection is given properly.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 1

UNITS COMMONLY USED IN GENERIC NAMES OF DRUGS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>Russian</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
-alg-, -dol-	-альг-, -дол-	analgetic, pain-killing
-aesthes-	-естез-	anesthetic, producing loss of sensation
-chol-	-хол-	bile-expelling
-cid-	-цид-	antimicrobial
-cor-, -card-	-кор-, -кард-	cardiac (for heart diseases)

-myco-	-МИКО-	antifungal
-pres(s)-, -ten(s)-	-пресс (с)-, -тен(с,з)-	hypotensive, reducing blood pressure
-pyr-	-пир-	antipyretic, bringing down fever
-sed-	-сед-	sedative, calming
-sept-	-септ-	antiseptic
-test-, vir-, -andr-	-тест-, -вир-, -андр-	androgenic, male hormone
-thyr-	-тир-	affecting thyroid gland
-vas-, -angi-	-ваз-, -анги-	vasodilating, spasmolytic

<i>Latin</i>	<i>Russian</i>	<i>Pharmacological Classification</i>
-sulfa-	-сульфа-	antimicrobial sulfonamides
-cillin-	-циллин-	penicilline antibiotics
-mycin-	-мицин-	antibiotics produced by the fungi of <i>Streptomyces</i>
-cyclin-	-циклин-	antibiotics derived from tetracycline
-ceph- (-cef-, -cep-)	-цеф- (-цеп-)	antibiotics produced by <i>Cephalosporum</i>
-barb-	-барб-	barbiturates (sleeping drugs)
-cain-	-каин-	local anesthetics
-cort-	-корт-	corticosteroids (adrenal hormones)
-oestr-	-эстр-	estrogenic, female hormone
-andr-, -ster-	-андр-, -стер-	androgenic, male hormone
-az-, -zol-, -zin-, -zid-, -zepam-	-аз-, -зол-, -зин-, -зид-, -зепам-	presence of nitrogen ("azot" in Greek)

DOSAGE FORMS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>aërosolum, i, n</i>	aerosol, spray	a medicinal form in the form of a dispersion system obtained with the help of special packaging
<i>granulum, i, n</i>	granule	a solid medicinal form in the form of grain or granule
<i>gutta, ae, f</i>	drop	is intended for internal or external use in the form of drops
<i>unguentum, i, n</i>	unguent, ointment	soft medicinal form of viscous consistence; intended for external use
<i>linimentum, i, n</i>	liniment	a liquid ointment
<i>pasta, ae, f</i>	paste	an ointment with the content of powdery substances over 20-25 %
<i>emplastrum, i, n</i>	plaster	a medicinal form in the form of plastic mixture softening at body temperature and adhering to skin; intended for external use
<i>suppositorium, i, n</i>	suppository	a medicinal form which is solid at room temperature and expands or dissolves at body temperature; it is introduced into the body cavity. If introduced per rectum it is called a suppository. If it has a round shape for introducing into the vagina it is called globulus vaginalis – vaginal pellet
<i>pulvis, eris, m</i>	powder	a medicinal form intended for internal, external use or for injections (after dissolving in a corresponding solvent)
<i>tabuletta, ae, f</i>	tablet	a dosed medicinal form obtained by pressing the medicinal substance or a mixture of medicinal and accessory substances; intended for internal, external use or for injections (after dissolving in a corresponding solvent)
<i>tabuletta obducta</i>	coated tablet	a tablet with coating which localizes the target area, improves the taste, storageability and appearance
<i>dragée</i>	dragée	a solid dosed medicinal form obtained by layering medicinal and accessory substances on granules
<i>solutio, onis, f</i>	solution	a medicinal form obtained by dissolving one or more medicinal substances; intended for internal or external use or injections

<i>suspensio, onis, f</i>	suspension	a fluid medicinal form in the form of a dispersion system where a solid substance is suspended in fluid; intended for internal or external use or injections
<i>emulsum, i, n</i>	emulsion	a fluid medicinal form in the form of a dispersion system combining two mutually insoluble fluids; intended for internal or external use or injections
<i>pilula, ae, f</i>	pill	a solid dosed medicinal form in the form of a ball (weight 0.1-0.5 g) containing medicinal and accessory substances
<i>tinctura, ae, f</i>	tincture	a medicinal form in the form of alcohol, alcohol-ether or alcohol-water clear extract from medicinal raw material; intended for internal or external use
<i>infusum, i, n</i>	infusion	a medicinal form in the form of watery extract from medicinal raw material; intended for internal or external use
<i>decoctum, i, n</i>	decoction	an infusion with a different extraction technique
<i>sirupus, i, m</i>	sirup	a sweet fluid medicinal form intended for internal use
<i>species, ei, f (pl. species, erum)</i>	tea	a mixture of several kinds of broken down or entire medicinal raw material (herbs) for making infusions or decoctions
<i>capsula, ae, f</i> <i>c. gelatinosa</i> <i>c. amylacea seu oblata</i>	capsule gelatin capsule amylaceous/ starch capsule / cachet	dosed medicinal form in the form of coated drugs (coated with gelatin, starch or another biopolymer); intended for internal use
<i>membranula ophthalmica seu lamella ophthalmica</i>	film for treating eyes	a medicinal form in the form of polymer film as a substitute for eye drops
<i>extractum, i, n</i>	extract	is obtained by aqueous or alcoholic extraction from the crude drug

MISCELLANEOUS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>cortex, icis, m</i>	cortex, bark	кора
<i>flos, floris, m</i>	flower	цветок
<i>folium, i, n</i>	leaf	лист
<i>fructus, us, m</i>	fruit	плод
<i>gemma, ae, f</i>	gemma, bud	почка
<i>herba, ae, f</i>	herb	трава
<i>radix, icis, f</i>	root	корень
<i>rhizoma, atis, n</i>	rhizome	корневище
<i>semen, inis, n</i>	seed	семя

Exercises

1. Read drug names; say what information about the drug they provide:

Valocordinum, Covarboxylasum, Morphinum, Testoenatum, Sarcolysinum, Bicillinum, Rifothyroinum, Amycazolum, Pharyngosept, Polyoestradiolum, Aëvitum, Valosedan, Diiodthyrosinum, Chinicidum, Chlorophthalmum, Methicillinum, Kanamycinum, Cholosasum, Novocainum, Somatotropinum, Haemodesum, Haemophobinum, Panangin, Quadevitum, Phenobarbitalum, Anaesthesinum, Apressinum, Pyromecainum, Rocefinum.

2. Translate into English minding the grammatical structure of the name of pharmaceutical preparation:

Solutio Strophanthini, tabulettae Prednisoloni, granula Orasi, Tabulettae Octoestrolis, unguentum "Psoriasinum", species antiasthmaticae, solutio Camphorae oleosa, extractum Crataegi fluidum, tabulettae Furacilini,

Streptocidum solubile, solutio Streptocidi solubilis, dragée “Undevitum”, suppositoria vaginalia “Osarbonum”, remedia thyreostatica, tabulettae Mycoheptini obductae, species cholagogae, unguentum Tetracyclini ophthalmicum, remedia diuretica, flores Calendulae, dragée “Aëvitum”, tabulettae olei Menthae, remedia antineoplastica, folium Frafarae, radix Althaeae, sirupus Althaeae, decoctum corticis Frangulae, frustus Anisi, emplastrum Plumbi compositum, remedia contraceptiva, tabulettae Barbamyli, extractum Leonuri fluidum, suppositoria “Anaesthesolum”, tabulettae Aloës obductae, chole conservata medicata.

3. Translate into Latin:

Syrups, extracts, solutions, oils, infusions and decoctions, suppositories, complex powders, seeds, flowers, roots, white rhizome, white bark, drops, rutin tablets, promeran tablets, Vaseline oil, monomycine tablets, myelosan tablets, flowers of chamomile, nitroglycerine tablets, "Pyromein" tablets, ophthalmic ointment of dibiomycine;

"Flacarbin" granules, anise oil, Novocain solution, "Undevit" dragee, anise fruits, streptocide liniment, heparin ointment, arnica flowers, infusion of arnica flowers, valerian tincture, motherwort tincture, decoction of bark of oak tree, leaves of nettle;

tetracycline ointment, dactinomycine solution, alcoholic solution of iodine, "Camphomen" aerosol, oily solution of folliculine, sedative tea, infusion of valerian root, coated tablets of valerian extract, herb of lily-of-the-valley.

UNIT 2

VERBS: CONJUGATION OF THE VERB

The inflection of the Verb is called its *Conjugation*.

Voice, Mood, Tense, Person, Number

Through its conjugation the Verb expresses *Voice, Mood, Tense, Person, and Number*.

The *Voices* are two: Active and Passive.

The *Moods* are four: Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.

The Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative are called Finite Moods in distinction from the Infinitive.

The *Tenses* are six, viz.:

1. For continued action, Present, Imperfect, Future.
2. For completed action, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

The Indicative Mood has all six tenses, but the Subjunctive has no future or future perfect, and the Imperative has only the present and the future. The Infinitive has the present, perfect, and future.

The *Persons* are three: First, Second, and Third.

The *Numbers* are two: Singular and Plural.

PARTICIPLES as Noun and Adjective Forms

The following Noun and Adjective forms are also included in the inflection of the Latin Verb:

Four Participles, viz.:

Active: the Present and Future Participles.

Passive: the Perfect Participle and the Gerundive.

The Gerund: this is in form a neuter noun of the second declension, used only in the oblique cases of the singular.

The Supine: this is in form a verbal noun of the fourth declension in the accusative (-um) and dative or ablative (-u) singular.

1. The Infinitive is strictly the locative case of an abstract noun, expressing the action of the verb.

2. The Participles are adjectives in inflection and meaning, but have the power of verbs in construction and in distinguishing time.

3. The Gerundive is also used as an adjective of necessity, duty, etc. In late use it became a Future Passive Participle.

SIGNIFICATION OF THE FORMS OF THE VERB

Voices

The Active and Passive Voices in Latin generally correspond to the active and passive in English; but:

The passive voice often has a reflexive meaning:

Turnus vertitur - *Turnus turns* (himself).

Moods

The Moods are used as follows:

The Indicative Mood is used for most direct assertions and interrogations: as,-- “*Valesne*”? – “*Valeo*” - Are you well? - I am well.

The Subjunctive Mood has many idiomatic uses, as in commands, conditions, and various dependent clauses. It is often translated by the English

Indicative; frequently by means of the auxiliaries may, might, would, should; sometimes by the (rare) Subjunctive; sometimes by the Infinitive; and often by the Imperative, especially in prohibitions. A few characteristic examples of its use are the following:

eamus - let us go; *ne abeat* - let him not depart.

adsum ut videam - I am here to see (that I may see).

The Imperative is used for exhortation, entreaty, or command.

The Infinitive is used chiefly as an indeclinable noun, as the subject or complement of another verb. In special constructions it takes the place of the Indicative, and may be translated by that mood in English.

Participles

The Participles are used as follows: The Present Participle (ending in *-ns*) has commonly the same meaning and use as the English participle in *-ing*; as *vocans* (calling); *legentes* (reading).

The Future Participle (ending in *-urus*) is oftenest used to express what is likely or about to happen: as *recturus* (about to rule); *auditurus* (about to hear).

The Perfect Participle (ending in *-tus*, *-sus*) has two uses:

1. It is sometimes equivalent to the English perfect passive participle: as *tectus* (sheltered); *acceptus* (accepted) and often has simply an adjective meaning: as *acceptus* (acceptable).
2. It is used with the verb to be (*esse*) to form certain tenses of the passive: as, *vocatus est* (he was (has been) called).

NOTE. There is no Perfect Active or Present Passive Participle in Latin.

The Gerundive (ending in *-ndus*), has two uses:

1. It is often used as an adjective implying obligation, necessity, or propriety (ought or must): as, *audiendus est* (he must be heard).

2. In the oblique cases the Gerundive commonly has the same meaning as the Gerund though its construction is different.

Gerund and Supine

The Gerund and Supine are used as follows:

The Gerund is a verbal noun, corresponding in meaning to the English verbal noun in -ing: as, *loquendi causa* (for the sake of speaking).

NOTE. The Gerund is found only in the oblique cases. A corresponding nominative is supplied by the Infinitive: thus, *scribere est utile* (writing (to write) is useful); but *ars scribendi* (the art of writing).

The Supine is in form a noun of the fourth declension, found only in the accusative ending in - *tum*, - *sum*, and the dative or ablative ending in - *tu*, -*su*.

The Supine in -um is used after verbs and the Supine in -u after adjectives:

venit spectatum (he came to see).

Tenses of the Finite Verb

The Tenses of the Indicative have, in general, the same meaning as the corresponding tenses in English:

Of continued action,

1. PRESENT: *scribo* (I write, I am writing, I do write).
2. IMPERFECT: *scribebam* (I wrote, I was writing, I did write).
3. FUTURE: *scribam* (I shall write).

Of completed action,

4. PERFECT: *scripsi* (I have written, I wrote).
5. PLUPERFECT: *scripseram* (I had written).

6. FUTURE PERFECT: *scripsero* (I shall have written).

FORMS OF THE VERB

The Three Stems

The forms of the verb may be referred to three stems, called (1) the Present, (2) the Perfect, and (3) the Supine stem.

1. On the Present stem are formed:

The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative, Active and Passive.

The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, Active and Passive.

The Imperative, Active and Passive.

The Present Infinitive, Active and Passive.

The Present Participle, the Gerundive, and the Gerund.

2. On the Perfect stem are formed:

The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active.

The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Active.

The Perfect Infinitive Active.

3. On the Supine stem are formed:

The Perfect Passive Participle, which combines with the forms of the verb *sum*, *be*, to make:

The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive.

The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive.

The Perfect Infinitive Passive.

The Future Active Participle, which combines with *esse* to make the Future Active Infinitive.

The Supine in *-um* and *-u*. The Supine in *-um* combines with *-iri* to make the Future Passive Infinitive.

VERB-ENDINGS

Every form of the finite verb is made up of two parts:

1. The STEM. This is either the root or a modification or development of it.
2. The ENDING, consisting of--
 1. the Signs of Mood and Tense.
 2. the Personal Ending.

Thus in the verb *voca-ba-s* (you were calling), the root is *VOC*, modified into the verb-stem *voca-*, which by the addition of the ending *-ba-s* becomes the imperfect tense *vocabas*; and this ending consists of the tense-sign *ba-* and the personal ending (*-s*) of the second person singular.

Verbs are classed in Four Regular Conjugations, distinguished by the stem-vowel which appears before *-re* in the Present Infinitive Active:

CONJUGATION : INFINITIVE ENDING STEM

First ----- *are* (*amare*) - *a*

Second ----- *ere* (*monere*) - *e*

Third ----- *ere* (*regere*) - *e*

Fourth ----- *ire* (*audire*) - *i*

The Principal Parts

The Principal Parts of a verb, showing the three stems which determine its conjugation throughout, are:

1. The Present Indicative (as *amo*) 2. The Present Infinitive (as *ama-re*) showing the Present Stem.
3. The Perfect Indicative (as *amav-i*), showing the Perfect Stem.
4. The neuter of the Perfect Participle (as *amat-um*), or, if that form is not in use, the Future Active Participle (*amat-urus*), showing the Supine Stem.

The regular forms of the Four Conjugations are seen in the following:

First Conjugation

Active, *amo, amare, amavi, amatum* (love).

Passive, *amor, amari, amatus*.

Present Stem *ama-*, Perfect Stem *amav-*, Supine Stem *amat-*.

Second Conjugation

Active, *deleo, delere, delevi, deletum* (blot out) .

Passive, *deleor, deleri, deletus*.

Present Stem *dele-*, Perfect Stem *delev-*, Supine Stem *delet-*.

Third Conjugation

Active, *tego, tegere, texi, tectum* (cover).

Passive, *tegor, tegi, tectus*.

Present Stem *tege-*, Perfect Stem *tex-*, Supine Stem *tect-*.

Fourth Conjugation

Active, *audi, audire, audivi, auditum* (hear).

Passive, *audior, audiri, auditus*.

Present Stem *audi-*, Perfect Stem *audiv-*, Supine Stem *audit-*.

Present Stem

The Present Stem is formed from the Root in all regular verbs in one of the following ways:

In the First, Second, and Fourth conjugations, by adding a long vowel (a-, e-, i-) to the root, whose vowel is sometimes changed: as *voca-re* (VOC), *mone-re* (MEN), *sopi-re* (SOP).

In the Third Conjugation, by adding a short vowel e/o to the root. In Latin this e/o usually appears as i/u, but e is preserved in some forms. Thus, *tegi-s* (root TEG), *ali-tis* (AL), *regu-nt* (REG); but *tege-ris* (*tege-re*), *ale-ris*.

Perfect Stem

The Perfect Stem is formed as follows:

The suffix v (u) is added to the verb-stem: as, *voca-v-i*, *audi-v-i*; or to the root: as, *son-u-i* (*sona-re*, root SON), *mon-u-i*; (*mone-re*, MON treated as a root).

Supine Stem

The Supine Stem may be found by dropping -um from the Supine. It is formed by adding t (or, by a phonetic change, s):

To the present stem: as *ama-t-um*, *dele-t-um*, *audi-t-um*.

To the root, with or without i: as, *cap-t-um* (*capio*, CAP), *moni-t-um* (*moneo*, MON).

Forms of Conjugation

The forms of the several conjugations from which, by adding the verb-endings all the moods and tenses can be made are as follows:

The First Conjugation includes all verbs which add a- to the root to form the present stem: as *ama-re*; with a few whose root ends in -a.

The Second Conjugation includes all verbs which add e- to the root to form the present stem: as *mone-re*; with a few whose root ends in -e.

The Third Conjugation includes all verbs which add e- to the root to form the present stem: as *tegere, cape-re*; with a few whose root ends in e.

The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs which add i- to the root to form the present stem: as *audī-re*.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 2

LATIN VERBS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>addo, ĕre III</i>	add	добавлять
<i>curo, are I</i>	cure	лечить
<i>do, dare I</i>	give out	давать, выдавать
<i>finio, ire IV</i>	finish	заканчивать
<i>misceo, ĕre II</i>	mix	смешивать
<i>recipio, ĕre III</i>	take	взять
<i>repĕto, ĕre III</i>	repeat	повторять
<i>salveo, ĕre II</i>	be healthy (greeting)	быть здоровым, здравствовать
<i>signo, are I</i>	sign, indicate	обозначить
<i>sterilīso, are I</i>	sterilize	стерилизовать
<i>valeo, ĕre II</i>	be healthy (parting remark)	быть здоровым, быть сильным
<i>verto, ĕre III</i>	turn	вертеть, поворачивать

Prescription formulas

Misce, fiat pulvis

Mix to get a powder

Misce, fiat unguentum	Mix to get an ointment
Misce, fiat linimentum	Mix to get a liniment
Misce, fiat pasta	Mix to get paste
Misce, fiat emulsum	Mix to get emulsion
Misce, fiat suppositorium	Mix to get a suppository
Misce, fiant species	Mix to get a tea
Da tales doses numero...	Give out such doses in the amount of

MEDICINAL HERBS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>Calendula, ae, f</i>	marigold	календула (ноготки)
<i>Convallaria, ae, f</i>	lily-of the-valley	ландыш
<i>Eucalyptus, i, f</i>	eucalyptus, gum-tree	эвкалипт
<i>Mentha (ae, f) piperita (us, a, um)</i>	pepper mint	мята перечная
<i>Salvia, ae, f</i>	sage	шалфей
<i>Valeriana, ae, f</i>	valerian	валериана

DRUGS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>Adrenalinum, i, n</i>	adrenalin	адреналин
<i>Amidopyrinum, i, n</i>	amidopyrine	амидопирин
<i>Dibazolum, i, n</i>	dibazol	дибазол
<i>Ichthyolum, i, n</i>	ichthammol (ammonium ichthosulfonate)	ихтиол
<i>Norsulfazolum, i, n</i>	norsulfazol	норсульфазол
<i>Novocainum, i, n</i>	novocain	новокаин

<i>oleum (i, n) Ricini (us, i, m)</i>	castor oil	касторовое масло (масло клещевины)
<i>Papaverinum, i, n</i>	papaverine	папаверин
<i>Sulfadimezinum, i, n</i>	sulfadimine	сульфадимезин
<i>Synthomycinum, i, n</i>	synthomycine	синтомицин
<i>Xeroformium, i, n</i>	xeroform	ксероформ

MISCELLANEOUS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>rectificatus, a, um</i>	purified (<i>in combination with oleum Terebinthinae and spiritus</i>)	очищенный (в сочетании с oleum Terebinthinae и spiritus)
<i>spiritus, us, m</i>	alcohol, spirit	спирт
<i>spirituosus, a, um</i>	alcoholic, spirituous (adj.)	спиртовой

Exercises

1. Translate the terms into Latin:

Xeroform ointment, dibazol solution, peppermint tincture, papaverine solution, infusion of peppermint leaves, infusion of sage leaves, adrenalin solution, peppermint oil, amidopyrine granules, ichthammol ointment, infusion of eucalyptus leaves, sulfadimine tablets, eucalyptus oil, emulsion of castor oil.

2. Translate the sentences into Latin:

1. Add 5 ml of castor oil. 2. Take 30 gram of xeroform ointment. 3. Mix 10 ml of lily-of-the-valley tincture and 15 ml of valerian tincture. 4. Add 3 ml of peppermint oil. 5. Give out 25 gram of synthomycine liniment. 6. Take 20 gram of emulsion of castor oil. 7. Give out 20 ml of adrenalin solution. 8. Sterilize 20 ml of castor oil. 9. Give out suppositories in the amount of 6. 10. Take 5 ml of dibazol solution. Sterilize! Give out! Indicate! 11. Take 10 gram of sage leaves and 20 gram of peppermint leaves. Mix to get a tea. 12. Take 1.2 gram of xeroform and 20 ml of castor oil. Mix to get liniment. 13. Take 30 gram of

ichthammol ointment. Give out. Indicate. 14. Take 10 ml of lily-of-the-valley tincture and 20 ml of valerian tincture. Mix. Give out. Indicate.

UNIT 3

ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE CASES. PREPOSITIONS.

BASIC RULES OF PRESCRIPTION FORMAT

So far only two cases – the Nominative and Genitive – sufficed for translating medical terms. For the purposes of prescription writing two more cases – the Accusative and Ablative – are necessary.

The Accusative is a case of direct verb object, the case of nouns following transitive verbs. The following rules apply for nouns and adjectives:

Rules of neuter gender. All nouns and adjectives of neuter gender irrespectively of their declension follow these patterns:

1. The Accusative Singular ending is the same as the Nominative Singular of this word: *linimentum compositum*, *semen dulce*, *suppositorium rectale*.
2. The Accusative Plural ending is the same as the Nominative Plural ending and, irrespectively of the declension, is always **–a(-ia)**; e.g. *linimenta composita*, *semina dulcia*, *suppositoria rectalia*. The ending –ia is only given to neuter nouns in –e, –al, –ar (III declension) and to adjectives of the 2nd group (III declension).

Masculine and feminine genders. Masculine and Feminine nouns and adjectives have a common ending element –m in the Accusative Singular, –s in the Accusative Plural preceded by different vowels depending on the declension.

Endings in the Accusative

Singular	Plural
I - -am	I - -as
II - -um	II - -os
III – -em	III - -es

IV - -um

IV - -us

V - -em

V - -es

The ending –im in the Accusative Singular is given to Greek nouns in –sis like *dosis, is f* and some Latin nouns: *febris, is f; tussis, is f; pelvis, is f*.

The Ablative is an instrumental case and the case of nouns that are prepositional objects. It also has some other functions.

The Ablative endings

Singular

Plural

I - -a

I - -is

II - -o

II - -is

III – -e (-i)

III - -ibus

IV - -u

IV - -ibus

V - -e

V - -ebus

Prepositions in Latin can be only used with either the Accusative or the Ablative case. Each preposition has to be followed by a particular case. Most of the prepositions below were covered in the sections on Anatomical and Clinical terminology as prefixes so their meanings are clear.

1. Prepositions followed by nouns in the Ablative:

ad – up to, in (a disease), for: *ad 20.0* (up to 20 g); *ad usum internum* (for internal use); *ad decubitus* (in bedsores)

contra – against; *contra tussim* (against cough)

inter – between; *inter costas* (between ribs)

per – via, through; *per os* (through the mouth); *per inhalationem* (with the help of inhalation)

post – after; *post mortem* (after death)

2. Prepositions followed by nouns in the Ablative

cum – with, together with; *cum extracto* (with an extract)

ex – from; *ex aqua* (from water)

pro – for; *pro injectionibus* (for injections)

3. Prepositions followed by nouns in the Accusative or Ablative

The choice of case form after the prepositions **in** (in) and **sub** (under) is guided by their meaning. If they denote location they require the Ablative; if they denote direction, they require the Accusative, e.g.:

in the vial (direction) *in vitrum* (Acc.)

in the vial (location) *in vitro* (Abl.)

under the tongue (direction) *sub linguam* (Acc.)

under the tongue (location) *sub lingua* (Abl.)

MOST COMMON PRESCRIPTION FORMULAS WITH PREPOSITIONS

<i>in ampullis</i>	in ampoules
<i>in capsulis</i>	in capsules
<i>in capsulis gelatinosis</i>	in gelatine capsules
<i>in capsulis amylaceis seu</i>	in starch capsules, <i>or</i> :
<i>in oblatis</i>	in cachets
<i>in spritz-tubulis</i>	in syrettes, in unit dose syringes
<i>in tabulettis</i>	in tablets
<i>in tabulettis obductis</i>	in coated tablets
<i>in vitro</i>	in vitro, in a test-tube
<i>in vitro nigro</i>	in a dark test-tube
<i>per os</i>	orally, through the mouth
<i>per rectum</i>	rectally, through the rectum

<i>contra tussim</i>	against cough
<i>pro die</i>	daily dose
<i>pro dosi</i>	single dose
<i>pro infantibus</i>	for children
<i>pro inhalatione</i>	for inhalation
<i>pro injectionibus</i>	for injections
<i>pro narcosi</i>	for anesthesia
<i>pro roentgeno</i>	for X – ray examination

PRESCRIPTION

Prescription is the doctor's written instructions to the pharmacist about the preparation, dispensing and administration of a drug. Prescription is an important legal document that has to be filled in according to certain rules. Prescriptions are made out on a standard form 105 x 108 mm and filled in distinctly without corrections. The prescription usually has the following sections:

1. Inscriptio – the name of medical establishment
2. Datum – date of writing out the prescription
3. Nomen aegroti – the patient's surname and initials
4. Aetas aegroti – the patient's age
5. Nomen medici – the doctor's name and initials
6. Praescriptio – name and dosage of drug
7. Subscriptio – instructions to the pharmacist about dosage, dispensing or packaging of the drug.
8. Signatura – instructions to the patient about the administration of the drug
9. Nomen et sigillum personale medici – the doctor's signature and personal stamp.

The main content of the prescription is in section 6, *praescriptio*. The Latin part of the prescription begins with the imperative *Recipe*. Its direct object, the dosage, is written at the end of the line, with the name of drug or ingredient in between. Each ingredient is written on a separate line, beginning with a capital letter. Names of plants and medicinal agents are also capitalized. Names of ingredients or preparations are grammatically subordinate to the dosage and are used in the genitive case:

Recipe: Solutionis Iodi	Take: 5% iodine alcoholic
spirituosae 5% 2 ml	solution 2 ml
Tannini 3.0	Tannin 3.0
Glycerini 10.0	Glycerin 10.0
Misce. Da. Signa: For gingival application	Mix. Give out. Indicate: For gingival application

The amount of solid or friable medicinal agents is prescribed in grams, with the word *gram* omitted, the figure written as a decimal, e.g.:

Recipe: Unguenti Zinci 30.0

Recipe: Anaesthesini 0.3

Recipe: Extracti Belladonnae 0.015

The amount of fluid medicinal agents is given in milliliters. e.g.:

Recipe: Olei Vaselini 30 ml

Recipe: Extracti Crataegi fluidi 20 ml

If a fluid medicinal agent is prescribed in an amount under 1 ml, the dosage is indicated in drops: the word *drop* is used in Accusative Singular (*guttam*) or Accusative Plural (*guttas*); the amount is shown by a Roman figure, e.g.:

Recipe: Solutionis Aminazini hydrochloridi 0.1% guttam I

Recipe: Olei Menthae piperitae guttas V

In prescribing antibiotics the dosage is usually indicated in international Units of Action (UA), e.g.:

Recipe: Benzylpenicillini-natrii 250,000 UA

If two or more medicinal agents are prescribed in the same amount, the dose is indicated only once after the last one and preceded by the word *ana* “in equal measure”, e.g.:

Recipe: Amidopyrini

Analgin ana 0.25

Da tales doses numero 12 in tabulettis

Signa: 1 pill in case of headache

Combination drugs are often given a generic name written in inverted commas: *tabulettae “Codterpinum”*, *suppositoria “Neo-anusolum”*. The generic names of pills and suppositories are in the Nominative Singular. The dose is not indicated as it is standard.

When pills or suppositories are prescribed, the name of the medicinal form is written in the Accusative Plural (*tabulettas, tabulettas obductas, suppositoria, suppositoria rectalia*) as it is grammatically subordinate to the word *Recipe*, not to the dose, e.g.:

Recipe: Tabulettas Monomycini 0.25 numero 50

Da. Signa:

The name of the medicinal form (pill, suppository) can be written in the Accusative Singular (*tabulettam, suppositorium*). In this case the standard formula *Da tales doses numero...* will be found at the end, e.g.:

Recipe: Tabulettam Digoxini 0.0001

Da tales doses numero 12

Recipe: Suppositorium cum Ichthyolo 0.2

Da tales doses numero 10

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 3

MEDICINAL HERBS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>Belladonna, ae, f</i>	deadly / great nightshade,	белладонна, красавка

	banewort, death's herb, dwale, belladonna	
<i>Crataegus, i, f</i>	hawthorn, maybush	боярышник
<i>Frangula, ae, f</i>	buckthorn, black alder	крушина
<i>Hypericum, i, n</i>	St. John's wort	зверобой
<i>Rheum, i, n</i>	rhubarb	ревень
<i>Urtica, ae, f</i>	stinging nettle	крапива

DRUGS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>Aether, ěris, m</i>	ether	эфир
<i>Barbitalum-natrium, i, n</i>	barbital sodium	барбитал-натрий
<i>Cacao</i>	cocoa	какао
<i>Cordigitum, i, n</i>	cordigit	кордигит
<i>Dimedrolum, i, n</i>	benadryl, dimedrol	димедрол
<i>Diprophyllinum, i, n</i>	diprophylline	дипрофиллин
<i>Euphyllinum, i, n</i>	aminophylline	эуфиллин
<i>Furacilinum, i, n</i>	furaciline	фурацилин
<i>Mentholum, i, n</i>	menthol	ментол
<i>Nitroglycerinum, i, n</i>	nitroglycerin	нитроглицерин
<i>Phenacetinum, i, n</i>	phenacetine	фенацетин
<i>Sacchārum, i, n</i>	sugar	сахар
<i>Tetracyclinum, i, n</i>	tetracycline	тетрациклин

<i>Validolum, i, n</i>	validol	валидол
------------------------	---------	---------

MISCELLANEOUS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>aethylicus, a, um</i>	ethylic	этиловый
<i>antidotum, i, n</i>	antidote	противоядие
<i>aqua, ae, f</i>	water	вода
<i>destillatus, a, um</i>	distilled	дистиллированный
<i>fluidus, a, um</i>	fluid	жидкий
<i>obductus, a, um</i>	coated	покрытый оболочкой
<i>oleosus, a, um</i>	oily	масляный, в масле
<i>quantum satis</i>	as much as necessary	сколько нужно
<i>venēnum, i, n</i>	poison	яд

EXERCISES

1. Translate the following prescriptions into English:

- Recipe: Tincturae Valerianae
Tincturae Convallariae ana 10 ml
Extracti Crataegi fluidi 5 ml
Mentholi 0.05
Misce. Da. Signa:
- Recipe: Linimenti Synthomycini 1% cum Novocaino 0.5% – 50.0
Da. Signa:
- Recipe: Solutionis Dibazoli 5ml
Da tales doses numero 6 in ampullis
Signa:
- Recipe: Solutionis Nitroglycerini oleosae 1% – 0.0005

Da tales doses numero 20 in capsulis

Signa:

5. Recipe: Solutionis Ichthyoli cum Glycerino 40 ml

Da. Signa:

2. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Valerian tincture 0.3

Hawthorn tincture 0.15

Rhubarb tincture 0.8

Barbital-sodium 0.2

Ethyl alcohol 20 ml

Distilled water up to 200 ml

Mix. Give out. Indicate:

2. Take: Buckthorn bark

Stinging nettle leaves each 15.0

Peppermint leaves

Rhizomes of valerian roots each 5.0

Mix to get tea

Give out. Indicate:

3. Take: Fluid extract of hawthorn 25 ml

Give out. Indicate:

4. Take: Aminophylline 0.1

Benadryl 0.0125

Sugar 0.2

Mix to get a powder

Give out such doses in the amount of 12 in capsules

Indicate:

5. Take: Lily-of-the-valley tincture

Valerian tincture both 10 ml

1% nitroglycerine solution 1 ml

Validol 2 ml

Mix. Give out. Indicate:

6. Take: Amidopyrine

Phenacetine both 0.25

Give out such doses in the amount of 12 in tablets

Indicate:

7. Take: Barbital-sodium 0.5

Cocoa oil as much as necessary to get a suppository
Give out such doses in the amount of 12
Indicate:

3. *Translate into Latin:*

Poisons and antidotes; vitamins in granules; dibazol solution for injections; suppositories with benadryl for children; «Aevit» in capsules; tablets against cough; ampicillin powder for injections; diprophylline solution in ampoules, ether for anesthesia; benadryl solution in unit dose syringes; validol in tablets; gramicidine alcoholic solution in ampoules; castor oil in gelatine capsules; amidopyrine and phenacetine tablets 0.25 both.

4. *Translate into Latin:*

Sage leaf, valerian tincture, nightshade extract, furacilin paste, suppositories with cordigit, synthomycine liniment, vaginal suppositories with Novocain, ether for anesthesia, pyocide in ampoules, mucilage of linseed, ergotal solution for injections.

5. *Translate the following prescriptions:*

1. Take: 1% oily nitroglycerine solution 0.0005
Give out such doses in the amount of 30 in capsules
Indicate:
2. Take: Festal tablets in the amount of 60
Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Castor oil emulsion 180.0
Sugar syrup up to 200 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: 1% synthomycine liniment with Novocain 0.5% 50.0
Give out. Indicate:
5. Take: Lily-of-the-valley tincture
Valerian tincture 10 ml each

Fluid hawthorn extract 5 ml
Menthol 0.05
Mix. Give out. Indicate:

UNIT 4

CHEMICAL NOMENCLATURE

NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS, ACIDS

All Latin names of chemical elements are neuter nouns of the 2nd declension except for two words: *Sulfur, uris n* (III declension) and *Phosphorus, i m*. Chemical symbols are derived from Latin or Greek names of chemical elements and reflect their spelling: Ca – Calcium, K – Kalium, P – Phosphorus, Fe – Ferrum and others. In English-speaking countries the chemical elements Na, Hg and K can be called Sodium, Mercurium and Potassium, respectively.

One would do well to remember the spelling of the following units commonly used in chemical nomenclature and drug names:

hydr- (*Greek* water) shows the presence of hydrogen, water or hydroxylic group: *Hydrocortisonum, i n*; *hydrochloridum, i n*.

ox(y)- (*Greek* oxys, acid) shows the presence of oxygen: *Oxylidinum, i n*; *Oxolinum, i n*; *peroxydum, i n*.

Latin trivial acid names consist of the noun *acidum, i n* and an adjective of the 1st group that agrees with it in gender, case and number. Suffix *–ic-um* or *–os-um* is added to the stem of acid-forming element.

The suffix *–icum* indicates a maximum degree of oxidation; it corresponds to the English acid names ending in *–ic*, e.g.: *acidum sulfuricum* (sulphuric acid), *acidum barbituricum* (barbituric acid), *acidum folicum* (folic acid).

The suffix *–osum* indicates a low degree of oxidation; it corresponds to acid names in English that end in *–ous*, e.g. *acidum sulfurosum* (sulfurous acid), *acidum nitrosum* (nitrous acid).

The adjectives in the names of oxygen-free acids include the prefix *hydro-*, the stem of the acid-building element and the suffix *-icum*, e.g.: *acidum hydrobromicum* (hydrobromic acid).

Names of **oxides**, **peroxides** and **hydroxides** consist of two nouns where the first one – the chemical element – is in the Genitive Singular, the second one – the word *oxydum*, *i n* with corresponding prefixes – is in the Nominative Singular:

Zinci oxydum (zinc oxide)

Magnesii peroxydum (magnesium peroxide).

Oxides are translated as *oxydum*, *i n*; peroxide – *peroxydum*, *i n*; hydroxide – *hydroxydum*, *i n*, e.g.:

Calcii oxydum (calcium oxide), *Hydrogenii peroxydum* (hydrogen peroxide), *Calcii hydroxydum* (calcium hydroxide).

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 4

CHEMICAL ELEMENTS

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>Al</i>	<i>Aluminium, i, n</i>	aluminum	Алюминий
<i>Ag</i>	<i>Argentum, i, n</i>	silver	Серебро
<i>As</i>	<i>Arsenīcum, i, n</i>	arsenic	Мышьяк
<i>Au</i>	<i>Aurum, i, n</i>	aurum, gold	Золото
<i>Br</i>	<i>Bromum, i, n</i>	bromine	Бром
<i>Ba</i>	<i>Barium, i, n</i>	barium	Барий
<i>Bi</i>	<i>Bismuthum, i, n</i>	bismuth	Висмут
<i>C</i>	<i>Carboneum, i, n</i>	carbon	Углерод
<i>Ca</i>	<i>Calcium, i, n</i>	calcium	Кальций

Cl	Chlorum, i, n	chlorine	Хлор
Cu	Cuprum, i, n	cuprum, copper	Медь
F	Fluorum, i, n (Latin) seu Phthorum, i, n (Greek)	fluorine	Фтор
Fe	Ferrum, i, n	iron	Железо
H	Hydrogenium, i, n	hydrogen	Водород
Hg	Hydrargyrum, i, n	mercury	Ртуть
I	Iodum, i, n	iodine	Йод
K	Kalium, i, n	potassium	Калий
Li	Lithium, i, n	lithium	Литий
Mg	Magnesium, i, n seu Magnium, i, n	magnesium	Магний
Mn	Manganum, i, n	manganese	Марганец
N	Nitrogenium, i, n	nitrogen	Азот
Na	Natrium, i, n	sodium	Натрий
O	Oxygenium, i, n	oxygen	Кислород
Pb	Plumbum, i, n	lead	Свинец
Ph	Phosphorus, i, m	phosphorus	Фосфор
S	Sulfur, ūris, n	sulphur	Сера
Si	Silicium, i, n	silicium, silicon	Кремень
Zn	Zincum, i, n	zinc	Цинк

ACIDS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>acidum aceticum</i>	acetic acid	кислота уксусная
<i>acidum acetylsalicylicum (Aspirinum)</i>	acetylsalicylic acid	кислота ацетилсалициловая
<i>acidum ascorbinicum</i>	ascorb(in)ic acid	кислота аскорбиновая
<i>acidum arsenicosum</i>	arsenous acid	кислота мышьяковистая
<i>acidum benzoicum</i>	benzoic acid	кислота бензойная
<i>acidum carbolicum</i>	carbolic acid	кислота карболовая
<i>acidum carbonicum</i>	carbonic acid	кислота угольная
<i>acidum citricum</i>	citric acid	кислота лимонная
<i>acidum folicum</i>	folic acid	кислота фолиевая
<i>acidum glutaminicum</i>	glutamic acid	кислота глутаминовая
<i>acidum hydrochloricum</i>	hydrochloric acid	кислота хлористоводородная (соляная)
<i>acidum hydrocyanicum</i>	hydrocyanic acid	кислота цианистая (синильная)
<i>acidum hydrosulfuricum</i>	hydrosulphuric acid	кислота сероводородная
<i>acidum lacticum</i>	lactic acid	кислота молочная
<i>acidum lipoicum</i>	lipoic acid	кислота липоевая
<i>acidum nicotinicum</i>	nicotinic acid	кислота никотиновая
<i>acidum nitricum</i>	nitric acid	кислота азотная
<i>acidum nitrosum</i>	nitrous acid	кислота азотистая

<i>acidum phosphoricum</i>	phosphoric acid	кислота фосфорная
<i>acidum salicylicum</i>	salicylic acid	кислота салициловая
<i>acidum sulfuricum</i>	sulphuric acid	кислота серная
<i>acidum sulfurosum</i>	sulphurous acid	кислота сернистая

DRUGS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>Amylum (i, n) Tritici</i>	wheat starch	пшеничный крахмал
<i>Coffeinum, i, n</i>	caffeine	кофеин
<i>Hydrocortisonum, i, n</i>	hydrocortisone	гидрокортизон
<i>Oleum Persicorum (olei Persicorum)</i>	peach oil	персиковое масло
<i>Oxacillinum, i, n</i>	oxacilline	оксациллин
<i>Sulfacylum, i, n</i>	sulfacyl	сульфацил
<i>Talcum, i, n</i>	talc, talcum powder	тальк
<i>Vaselinum i, n</i>	vaseline	вазелин

MISCELLANEOUS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>albus, a, um</i>	white	белый
<i>concentratus, a, um</i>	concentrated	концентрированный
<i>depuratus, a, um (in relation to Sulfur)</i>	depurated	очищенный
<i>dilutus, a, um</i>	diluted	разведенный,

		разбавленный
<i>flavus, a, um</i>	yellow	желтый

EXERCISES

1. *Translate the following prescriptions into English*

- 1) Recipe: Acidi folici 0.0008
Acidi ascorbinici 0.1
Da tales doses numero 30 in tabulettis
Signa:
- 2) Recipe: Solutionis Hydrogenii peroxydi dilutae 50 ml
Da. Signa:
- 3) Recipe: Sulfuris depurati
Magnesii oxydi
Sacchari ana 10.0
Misce, fiat pulvis
Da. Signa:
- 4) Recipe: Unguenti Hydrargyri albi 5% 25.0
Da. Signa:
- 5) Recipe: Magnesii peroxydi 0.25
Da tales doses numero 12
Signa:

2. *Translate the prescriptions into Latin:*

1. Take: Benzoic acid 0.6
Salicylic acid 0.3
Vaseline 10.0
Mix to get an ointment
Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Dragee of ascorbic acid 0.05m in the amount of 50
Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Acetylsalicylic acid
Phenacetine 0.25 both
Caffeine 0.05

Give out such doses in the amount of 12 in tablets
Indicate:

4. Take: Yellow mercury oxide 0.6
Ichthammol 0.8
Zinc ointment 20.0
Mix to get an ointment
Give out. Indicate:

5. Take: Salicylic acid 1.0
Zinc oxide
Wheat starch 1.25 both
Vaseline up to 50.0
Mix to get a paste
Give out. Indicate:

6. Take: Salicylic acid 5.0
Zinc oxide 25.0
Talcum powder 50.0
Mix to get a powder
Give out. Indicate:

7. Take: Aminazine solution 2.5% 2 ml
Glucose solution 5% 20 ml
Mix. Sterilise!
Give out. Indicate:

8. Take: Buckthorn bark 30.0
Nettle leaves 20.0
Milfoil herb 10.0
Mix to get a tea
Give out. Indicate:

9. Take: Fluid aloe extract 1 ml
Give out such doses in the amount of 10 in ampoules
Indicate:

10. Take: Menthol 2.5
Novocain
Anesthesine 1.0 each
Ethyl alcohol 70 % up to 100 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:

11. Take: Oily synestrol solution 0.1% 1 ml
Give out such doses in the amount of 6 in ampoules
Indicate:
12. Take: Ichthammol 1.25
Zinc oxide
Wheat starch 12.5 each
Vaseline up to 50.0
Mix to get a paste
Give out. Indicate:
13. Take: Antiasthmatic tea 50.0
Give out. Indicate
14. Take: Boric acid 1.0
Salicylic acid 5.0
Zinc oxide 25.0
Talcum powder 50.0
Mix to get a powder
Give out. Indicate:

4. Translate into Latin:

Magnesium oxide; concentrated hydrogen peroxide solution; solution of lipoic acid in ampoules; vasograpline for injections; alcoholic iodine solution; “Bormenthol” ointment; depurated sulfur; yellow mercury oxide; suppositories with xeroform, coated tablets of glutamic acid; diluted hydrochloric acid; streptokinase for injections; ethyl alcohol; peppermint oil; cordiamine for injections in unit dose syringes; tetracycline ointment; gum-tree oil; lily-of-the-valley herb; infusion of nettle leaves; powder of rhubarb root; decoction of buckthorn bark; hawthorn tincture.

UNIT 5

CHEMICAL NOMENCLATURE

OXIDE AND SALT NAMES

Pharmacopoeias of different countries use two main ways of building Latin names of oxides and salts. One of them can be conventionally called “international” as it is an official one in International Pharmacopoeia, although it is not accepted in all national pharmacopoeias. The other way, conventionally called “old”, is still used in prescription practice. We are going to use the international way of building chemical names; as for the “old” way, some examples are given to familiarize students with it:

Zincum oxydatum (“old” name) – Zinci oxydum (zinc oxide)

Zincum sulfuricum (“old” name) – Zinci sulfas (zinc sulfate)

Names of **salts** (and sometimes of simple ethers) consist of two nouns of which the first is the name of anion in the Nominative Singular, the other one – the name of cation – in the Genitive Singular. Anion names are built with the following suffixes:

-as (-atis, m) – for salts of oxygen-containing acids with maximum degree of oxidation; *sulfas* (Gen. *sulfatis*) – sulfate; *nitras* (Gen. *nitratis*) – nitrate ;

-is (itis, m) – for salts of oxygen-containing acids with lower oxidation degree: *sulfis* (Gen. *sulfitis*) – sulfite; *nitris* (Gen. *nitritis*) – nitrite;

-idum (i, n) – for salts of oxygen-free acids: *bromidum* (Gen. *bromidi*) – bromide; *iodidum* (Gen. *iodidi*) – iodide.

NOTE. Anions in –as and –is are nouns of the III declension. Their Genitive Singular form ends in –is; this ending is added to the stem: **-at+is**; **-it+is**.

International Salt Names:

Natrii sulfas (Gen.Sing. *Natrii sulfatis*) – sodium sulfate

Natrii sulfis (Gen.Sing. *Natrii sulfitis*) – sodium sulfite

Cupri citras (Gen.Sing. *Cupri citratis*) – copper citrate;

Kalii chloridum (Gen.Sing. *Kalii chloridi*) – potassium chloride;

Hydrargyri iodidum (Gen.Sing. *Hydrargyri iodidi*) – mercury iodide;

Thiaini bromidum (Gen.Sing. *Thiaini bromidi*) – thiamine bromide

Morphini hydrochloridum (Gen.Sing. *Morphini hydrochloridi*) – morphine hydrochloride.

Examples of salt names in the “old” way:

Natrium sulfuricum – sodium sulfate

Kalium arsenicosum – potassium arsenite

Cuprum citricum – copper citrate

Kalium chloratum – potassium chloride

Morphinum hydrochloricum – morphine hydrochloride

In rare cases names of radicals function as independent words. In such cases they end in –ium, ii n, e.g.: *Methyl salicylas* – methyl salicylate (methylated ether of salicylic acid). *Phenyl salicylas* – phenyl salicylate (phenylated ether of salicylic acid). *Amyl nitris* – amyl nitrite (isomaylated ether of nitrous acid).

NOTE 1. Latin names of basic salts are built adding the suffix –**as** and prefix **sub-**: *Bismuthi subnitras* – basic bismuth nitrate.

NOTE 2. Names of sodium and potassium salts consist of a substance name and the suffix –**natrium** or –**kalium** in the Nominative case: *Sulfacylum-natrium*; *Barbitalum-natrium*.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 5

DRUGS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>Aethylmorphinum, i, n</i>	ethylmorphine hydrochloride	этилморфин
<i>Atropinum, i, n</i>	atropine	атропин
<i>Barbamylum, i, n</i>	barbamyl	барбамил
<i>Benzylpenicillinum, i, n</i>	benzylpenicillin	бензилпенициллин
<i>Camphōra, ae, f</i>	camphor	камфора
<i>Chloroformium, i, n</i>	chloroform	хлороформ
<i>Codeinum, i, n</i>	codeine	кодеин
<i>Coffeinum-natrii benzoas, Coffeini-natrii benzoatis</i>	sodium-caffeine benzoate	кофеин-бензоат натрия
<i>Ephedrinum, i, n</i>	ephedrine	эфедрин
<i>Glucosum, i, n</i>	glucose	глюкоза
<i>Lincomycinum, i, n</i>	lincomycin	линкомицин
<i>Methylī salicylas, Methylī salicylatis</i>	methyl salicylate	метилсалицилат
<i>Morphinum, i, n</i>	morphine	морфин
<i>Oleandomycinum, i, n</i>	oleandomycin	олеандомицин
<i>oleum Helianthi</i>	sunflower oil	подсолнечное масло
<i>oleum Olivarum (Oliva, ae, f)</i>	olive oil	оливковое масло
<i>Phenobarbitalum, i, n</i>	phenobarbital, luminal	фенобарбитал
<i>Phenoxymethylpenicillin-um, i, n</i>	phenoxymethylpenicilli ne	феноксиметилпеницил -лин

<i>Phenylī salicylas,</i> <i>Phenylī salicylatis</i>	phenyl salicylate	фенилсалицилат
<i>Pilocarpinum, i, n</i>	pilocarpine	пилокарпин
<i>Platyphyllum, i, n</i>	platyphyllin	платифиллин
<i>Rutinum, i, n</i>	rutin	рутин
<i>Streptocidum, i, n</i>	streptocide	стрептоцид
<i>Strychninum, i, n</i>	strychnine	стрихнин
<i>Synoestrolum, i, n</i>	synestrol	синэстрол
<i>Theophyllum, i, n</i>	theophylline	теофиллин
<i>Thiaminum, i, n</i>	thiamine	тиамин
<i>Vinylinum, i, n</i>	vinylene	винилин

MISCELLANEOUS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>glycerophosphas, atis, m</i>	glycerophosphate	глицерофосфат
<i>hydrotartras, atis, m</i>	hydrotartrate	гидротартрат
<i>isotonicus, a, um</i>	isotonic	изотонический
<i>thiosulfas, atis, m</i>	thiosulfate	тиосульфат

EXERCISES

1. Translate prescriptions into English:

1) Recipe: Zinci sulfatis

Plumbi acetatis ana 0.3

Aquae destillatae ad 200 ml

Misce. Da. Signa:

- 2) Recipe: Calcii glycerophosphatis
Calcii lactatis ana 0.25
Da tales doses numero 20 in tabulettis
Signa:

- 3) Recipe: Natrii salicylatis 1.0
Kalii iodidi 0.1
Solutionis Iodi spirituosae 5% guttas VI
Aquae destillatae ad 200 ml
Misce. Da. Signa:

2. Translate salt names into Latin:

Potassium iodide; iron lactate; copper citrate; hydrocortisone acetate; adrenaline hydrochloride; platyphylline hydrotartrate; strychnine nitrate; calcium glycerophosphate; basic bismuth citrate; oleandomycine phosphate; potassium arsenite; papaverine hydrochloride; calcium chloride: magnesium chloride; basic magnesium carbonate; potassium acetate; sodium-caffeine benzoate; testosterone propionate; ephedrine hydrochloride; lead acetate; lithium carbonate; lithium benzoate.

3. Translate the following prescriptions:

1. Take: Platyphylline hydrotartrate 0.03
Sodium bromide 0.15
Sodium-caffeine benzoate 0.05
Mix to get a powder
Give out such doses in the amount of 12
Indicate:
2. Take: Lincomycine hydrochloride 0.25
Give out such doses in the amount of 20 in capsules
Indicate:

3. Take: Sodium salicylate 1.0
Potassium iodide 0.1
Alcoholic iodine solution 6 drops
Distilled water up to 200 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: Deadly nightshade extract 0.01
Basic bismuth nitrate
Phenyl salicylate each 0.25
Mix to get a powder
Give out such doses in the amount of 10
Indicate:
5. Take: Calcium glycerophosphate
Calcium lactate each 0.25
Give out such doses in the amount of 20 in tablets
Indicate:
6. Take: Castor oil 20 ml
Xeroform 1.2
Vinyline 1 ml
Mix to get a liniment
Give out. Indicate:

REVISION

1. Translate the following prescriptions:

1. Take: 1% hydrocortisone ointment 10.0
Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Resorcine 0.1
95% ethyl alcohol 5 ml
Distilled water up to 15 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Depurated sulfur 0.5
Give out such doses in the amount of 30
Indicate:
4. Take: Concentrated hydrogen peroxide solution 5.0
Distilled water 15 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
5. Take: Acetylsalicylic acid 0.24
Phenacetine 0.18
Caffeine 0.03
Cocoa oil 0.015
Citric acid 0.02
Give out such doses in the amount of 6 in tablets
Indicate:
6. Take: Methylene blue 0.5
25% glucose solution 50 ml
Give out such doses in the amount of 3 in ampoules
Indicate:

UNIT 6

COMMON ABBREVIATIONS IN PRESCRIPTION

CHEMICAL COMBINING FORMS

Making out prescriptions doctors use universally accepted abbreviations. We abbreviate names of drug forms, parts of plants and standard prescription formulas. These abbreviations contain, as a rule, from one to three initial letters of the word, e.g.: *hb.* – herba; *liq.* – liquor, *M.* – Misce.

If the word is abbreviated on a syllable containing several consonants, they are all preserved: *extr.* – extractum; *ung.* – unguentum.

Names of drugs or plants should not be abbreviated!

Abbreviation	Full term	Translation
<i>āā</i>	<i>ana</i>	each
<i>ac., acid</i>	<i>acidum</i>	acid
<i>ad us. ext.</i>	<i>ad usum externum</i>	for external use
<i>ad us. int.</i>	<i>ad usum internum</i>	for internal use
<i>aq.</i>	<i>aqua</i>	water
<i>aq. dest.</i>	<i>aqua destillata</i>	distilled water
<i>comp., cps., cpt.</i>	<i>compositus</i>	composite
<i>concentr.</i>	<i>concentratus</i>	concentrated
<i>cort.</i>	<i>cortex</i>	bark
<i>D.</i>	<i>Da</i>	give out
<i>dec., dct.</i>	<i>decoctum</i>	decoction
<i>dep.</i>	<i>depuratus, a, um</i>	depurated
<i>dil.</i>	<i>dilutus, a, um</i>	diluted
<i>D. t. d.</i>	<i>Da tales doses</i>	give out such doses
<i>empl.</i>	<i>emplastrum</i>	plaster
<i>emuls.</i>	<i>emulsum</i>	emulsion
<i>extr.</i>	<i>extractum</i>	extract
<i>f.</i>	<i>fiat, fiant</i>	so that there is (are)
<i>fl.</i>	<i>flos</i>	flower
<i>fluid.</i>	<i>fluidus, a, um</i>	fluid
<i>fol.</i>	<i>folium</i>	leaf
<i>fr.</i>	<i>fructus</i>	fruit
<i>gel.</i>	<i>gelatinosus, a, um</i>	gelatinous
<i>gran.</i>	<i>granulum</i>	granule

<i>gtt., gtts.</i>	<i>guttam, guttas</i>	drop, drops
<i>h., hb.</i>	<i>herba</i>	herb
<i>in ampull.</i>	<i>in ampullis</i>	in ampoules
<i>in caps.</i>	<i>in capsulis</i>	in capsules
<i>inf.</i>	<i>infusum</i>	infusion
<i>in obl.</i>	<i>in oblatis</i>	in cachets
<i>in tab.</i>	<i>in tabulettis</i>	in tablets
<i>in vitr. nigr.</i>	<i>in vitro nigro</i>	in a dark vial
<i>linim.</i>	<i>linimentum</i>	liniment
<i>M.</i>	<i>Misce</i>	mix
<i>mucil.</i>	<i>mucilago</i>	mucilage
<i>n.</i>	<i>numero</i>	in the amount of
<i>obd.</i>	<i>obductus, a, um</i>	coated
<i>past.</i>	<i>pasta</i>	paste
<i>praec., pct., ppt.</i>	<i>praecipitatus a, um</i>	precipitated
<i>pro inject.</i>	<i>pro injectionibus</i>	for injections
<i>pulv.</i>	<i>pulvis</i>	powder
<i>q. s.</i>	<i>quantum satis</i>	as much as necessary
<i>r., rad.</i>	<i>radix</i>	root
<i>Rp.:</i>	<i>Recipe:</i>	take
<i>rectif.</i>	<i>rectificatus, a, um</i>	purified
<i>rhiz.</i>	<i>rhizoma</i>	rhizome
<i>S.</i>	<i>signa</i>	indicate
<i>sem.</i>	<i>semen</i>	seed
<i>simpl.</i>	<i>simplex</i>	simple
<i>sir.</i>	<i>sirupus</i>	sirup
<i>sol.</i>	<i>solutio</i>	solution
<i>sp.</i>	<i>species</i>	tea
<i>spir.</i>	<i>spiritus</i>	alcohol
<i>Steril.</i>	<i>Sterilisa!</i>	sterilise
<i>supp.</i>	<i>suppositorium</i>	
	<i>(rectale)</i>	(rectal) suppository
<i>supp. vagin.</i>	<i>suppositorium</i>	
	<i>vaginale</i>	vaginal suppository
<i>susp.</i>	<i>suspensio</i>	suspension
<i>tab.</i>	<i>tabuletta</i>	tablet
<i>t-ra, tinct.</i>	<i>tinctura</i>	tincture
<i>ung.</i>	<i>unguentum</i>	ointment

Memorise the spelling and meaning of some chemical combining forms:

Phthor- (Greek *phthoros* – destruction) shows the presence of fluorine compounds: *Phthoracizinum*, *Phthorothanum*.

Thi- (Greek *theion* – sulfur) shows the presence of a substituting sulfur atom: *Thiaminum*, *Thiopentalum*, *Thiophosphamidum*.

-az-, *-zol-*, *-(a)zin-*, *-(a)zid-* (from *azot* in Greek: *a* – negation, *zoon* – life)

shows the presence of nitrogen or nitrogen group: *Corazolum*, *Aminazinum*, *Saluzidum*.

NOTE 1. In some drug names the syllables that sound like *zin*, *zol* are of a different origin and so are spelt with an *s*, e.g.: *Anaesthesinum*, *Chinosolum*, *Aërosolum*, *Anusolum*.

NOTE 2. The suffix *-as-* is used in names of enzymes: *Lidasum*, *Ribonucleasum*, *Cocarboxylasum*.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION 6

MEDICINAL HERBS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>Adōnis vernalis</i> , <i>Adonīdis vernalis</i> , <i>f</i>	adonis, pheasant's eye, spring lychnis	горицвет весенний
<i>Althaea</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i>	alth-root, wymoth, marsh-mallow	алтей
<i>Chamomilla</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i>	camomile	ромашка
<i>Digitālis</i> , <i>is</i> , <i>f</i>	foxglove	наперстянка
<i>Millefolium</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>n</i>	milfoil, yarrow	тысячелистник

MEDICINES

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>Aminazinum</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>n</i>	aminazine	амиеназин
<i>Anaesthesinum</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>n</i>	anaesthesine	анестезин

<i>Bromisovalum, i, n</i>	bromisoval	бромизовал
<i>Chinosolum, i, n</i>	chinosol	хинозол
<i>Corazolum, i, n</i>	corazol	коразол
<i>Desoxycorticosteronum, i, n</i>	desoxycorticosterone	дезоксикортикостерон
<i>Erythromycinum, i, n</i>	erythromycine	эритромицин
<i>Furazolidonum, i, n</i>	furazolidone	фуразолидон
<i>Methyloestradiolum, i, n</i>	methyloestradiol	метилэстрадиол
<i>Phthoracizinum, i, n</i>	phthoracizine	фторацизин
<i>Phenazepamum, i, n</i>	phenazepam	феназепам
<i>Theobrominum, i, n</i>	theobromine	теобромин

MISCELLANEOUS

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<i>antiasthmaticus, a, um</i>	antiasthmatic	противоастматический
<i>ophthalmicus, a, um</i>	ophthalmic	глазной
<i>sirupus, i, m</i>	sirup/syrup	сироп
<i>solubilis, e</i>	soluble	растворимый

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English

Membranulae ophthalmicae cum Dicaino, membranulae ophthalmicae cum Atropini sulfate, sirupus Althaeae, species pectorales, sirupus Aloës cum Ferro, aerosolum "Cametonum", solutio Natrii chloridi isotonica, pulvis foliorum Digitalis, emulsum olei Persicorum, extractum Adonidis vernalis siccum, pulvis

Phenoxymethylpenicillini pro suspensione, membranulae ophthalmicae cum
Pilocarpini hydrochlorido, emplastrum Plumbi simplex.

2. Read aloud saying the abbreviated words in full, translate into English:

- 1) Rp.: Theophyllini 0.2
Ol. Cacao 2.0
M.f. supp.
D.t.d. N. 10
S.
- 2) Rp.: Sol. Oestradioli propionatis oleosae 0.1% 1 ml
D.t.d. N. 6 in amp. S.
- 3) Rp.: Acidi salicylici 1.0
Hydrargyri amidochloridi
Bismuthi subnitratis āā 3.0
Vasellini
Lanolini āā 15.0
M.f. ung.
D.S.
- 4) Rp.: Dec. cort. Frangulae 20.0 – 200 ml
D.S.
- 5) Rp.: Fl. Chamomillae 30.0
D.S.
- 6) Rp.: Trichomonacidi 0.25
Vasellini ad 50.0
M.f. supp. Steril.!
D.S.
- 7) Rp.: Pulv. fol. Digitalis 5.0
Chinini hydrochloridi 0.05
Bromcamphorae 0.25
M.f. pulv.
D.t.d. N. 12 in caps. gel.
S.
- 8) Rp.: Codeini phosphatis 0.2
Aq. Menthae piperitae ad 10 ml
M.f. sol.
D. in vitr. nigr. S.

- 9) Rp.: Sol. Hydrogenii peroxydi dil. 50 ml
D.S.
- 10) Rp.: Natrii chloridi 3.0
Kalii chloridi 0.038
Calcii chloridi 0.062
Novocaini 1.2
Aq. pro inject. 50 ml
M. Steril.!
D.S.
- 11) Rp.: Natrii tetraboratis
Natrii hydrocarbonatis āā 20.0
Natrii chloridi 10.0
Ol. Menthae gtts. III
M.f. pulv.
D.S.
- 12) Rp.: Sol. Desoxycorticosteroni acetatis oleosae 0.5% 1 ml
D.t.d. N. 6 in amp.
S.
- 13) Rp.: Tab. Methionini 0.25 obduct. N. 50
D.S.
- 14) Rp.: Tab. “Nicoverinum” N. 20
D.S.
- 15) Rp.: Spir. aethyl. 95% 20 ml
Aq. pro inject. 100 ml
M.D.S.

3. Read aloud, translate into English:

- 1) Recipe: Tabulettas “Citramonum” numero 10
Da. Signa:
- 2) Recipe: Tabulettas Monomycini 0.25 numero 50
Da. Signa:
- 3) Recipe: Tabulettas “Quadevitum” obductas numero 25
Da. Signa:
- 4) Recipe: Suppositoria cum Ichthyolo 0.2 numero 10
Da. Signa:

5) Recipe: Suppositoria cum extracto Belladonnae 0.015

Da. Signa:

6) Recipe: Tabulettas Furacilini 0.02 ad usum externum numero 10

Da. Signa:

4. Look through the prescriptions. Say which of them require the Accusativus. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Tablets of lipoic acid 0.25 in the amount of 50

Give out. Indicate:

2. Take: Coated tablets of oleandomycine phosphate 0.125 in the amount of 25

Give out. Indicate:

3. Take: Zinc soleplate

Lead acetate 0.3 each

Distilled water up to 200 ml

Mix. Give out. Indicate:

4. Take: Great nightshade extract 0.02

Xeroform 0.1

Zinc sulfate 0.05

Glycerin 0.12

Mix, so that there is a suppository

Give out such doses in the amount of 10

Indicate:

5. Take: Silver nitrate 0.25

Vinyline 1.0

Vaseline 30.0

Mix so that there is ointment

Give out. Indicate:

6. Take: Methylestradiol tablets 0.0002 in the amount of 10

Give out. Indicate:

7. Take: Furazolidone tablets 0.1 in the amount of 20

Give out. Indicate:

8. Take: Tablet of furaciline

Give out such doses in the amount of 10. Indicate:

5. Translate the names of raw materials:

Spring lychnis herb; rhizome and roots of valerian; foxglove leaf; lily-of-the-valley herb; hawthorn fruits; buckthorn bark; St. John's wort herb; peppermint leaf; oak bark (*Quercus*, us, f); sunflower seeds; peach oil; milfoil herb; sage leaf; linseed (*Linum*, i, n); linseed oil; stinging nettle leaves; eucalyptus leaf; marsh-mallow root.

6. Translate the following prescriptions with *Accusativus*:

1. Take: Sulfadimine tablets 0.5 in the amount of 12
Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: "Revit" dragee in the amount of 50
Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: "Anusol" suppositories in the amount of 6
Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: "Kameton" aerosol 30.0
Give out. Indicate:
5. Take: Coated "Microiodine" tablets with Phenobarbital in the amount of 40
Give out in a dark test-tube
Indicate:

UNIT 7

REVISION

1. Translate the following prescriptions:

1. Take: Chloroform
Sunflower oil
Methyl salicylate 15 ml each
Mix, so that there is liniment
Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Mercury oxycyanide solution 50 ml
Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Menthol 0.1
Phenyl salicylate 0.3
Vaseline oil up to 10 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: 3 % thiamine bromide solution 1 ml
Give out such doses in the amount of 10 in ampoules
Indicate:
5. Take: Streptocide
Norsulfazol 1.5 each
Benzylpenicilline-sodium 25000 units of action
Ephedrine hydrochloride 0.05
Mix to get a powder
Give out. Indicate:
6. Take: Sodium thiosulfate 10.0
Isotonic sodium chloride solution up to 100 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
7. Take: Codeine phosphate 0.015
Acetylsalicylic acid 0.5
Ascorbic acid 0.1
Rutine 0.02
Benadryl 0.02
Calcium lactate 0.1
Mix to get a powder
Give out such doses in the amount of 20

Indicate:

8. Take: Morphine hydrochloride 0.015
Apomorphine hydrochloride 0.05
Diluted hydrochloric acid 1 ml
Distilled water up to 200 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
9. Take: Suppository with methyluracil 0.5
Give out such doses in the amount of 10
Indicate:
10. Take: Infusion of wymoth root 100 ml
Wymoth sirup 20 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
11. Take: Chloroform
Ethyl alcohol 95% 20 ml each
Ethyl ether 10ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
12. Take: Chamomile flowers infusion 200 ml
Give out. Indicate:
13. Take: Tincture of rhubarb root and rhizome 200 ml
Give out. Indicate:
14. Take: Spring lychnis herb 8.0
Peppermint leaves 1.0
Mix to get a tea
Give out. Indicate:
15. Take: Rhubarb syrup 300 ml
Give out. Indicate:
16. Take: Infusion of valerian bark from 20.0 – 200 ml
Infusion of motherwort herb from 20.0 – 200 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
'from' – 'ex', followed by a noun in the Ablative case.

2. Translate into Latin:

Basic bismuth nitrate with nightshade extract; ointment of copper citrate; solution of sodium arsenite for injections; coated methione tablets; ointment of

aethacridine lactate; codeine phosphate in tablets; sodium nitrite solution in ampoules; ointment of tetracycline hydrochloride; granules of glycerophosphate; oily solution of medrotestosterone propionate; sodium hydrocitrae for injections; tablets of calcium lactate and calcium glycerophosphate; phenylene tablets; potassium orotate tablets for children; methacine solution; methylandrosteroid tablets.

3. Translate the following prescriptions:

1. Take: Erythromycin ointment 15.0
Give out. Indicate:
- 2 Take: Theobromine
Amidopyrine 0.25 each
Phenobarbital 0.02
Give out such doses in the amount of 12 in tablets
Indicate:
3. Take: Infusion of rhubarb rhizome and root from 15.0 – 200 ml
Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: Alcoholic solution of hydrogen peroxide 50 ml
Give out. Indicate:
5. Take: Suppositories with diprophylline 0.5 in the amount of 10
Give out. Indicate:
6. Take: Platyphylline hydrotartrate 0.003
Papaverine hydrochloride 0.03
Theobromine 0.25
Give out such doses in the amount of 10 in tablets
Indicate:
7. Take: Menthol 0.15
Gum-tree tincture 50 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
8. Take: 10% solution of norsulfazol-sodium
Isotonic sodium chloride solution 10 ml each
Mix. Give out. Indicate:

9. Take: Great nightshade extract 0.02
Xeroform 0.1
Zinc sulfate 0.05
Glycerin 0.12
Cocoa oil 2.0
Mix, so that there is a suppository
Give out such doses in the amount of 10
Indicate:
10. Take: 10% oily camphor solution for external use 10 ml
Give out. Indicate:
NB! For external use – *ad usum externum*
11. Take: Theophylline 0.1
Ephedrine hydrochloride 0.025
Mix to get a powder
Give out such doses in the amount of 20
Indicate:
12. Take: 0.5% hydrocortisone acetate ointment 20.0
Give out. Indicate:
13. Take: 0.1% furaciline alcoholic solution 2 ml
Menthol 0.06
Gum-tree oil
Castor oil
Olive oil up to 15 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
14. Take: Pectoral tea 50.0
Give out. Indicate:
15. Take: St. John's wort herb 20.0
Sage leaves 30.0
Peppermint leaves 10.0
Mix to get a tea
Give out. Indicate:
16. Take: Dibazol 0.005
Sugar 0.3
Mix to get a powder
Give out such doses in the amount of 20
Indicate:

ENGLISH-LATIN GLOSSARY

A		
abdominal	abdominalis, e	брюшной
abducting (VI cranial) nerve	abducens, entis	отводящий (нерв)
abductor (muscle)	abductor, oris m	отводящая (мышца)
about	de	о, об
accessory	accessorius, a , um	добавочный
accompanying	comitans, antis	сопутствующий, сопровождающий
acetylsalicylic	acetylsalicylicus, a, um	ацетилсалициловый
acid	acidum, i n	кислота
acoustic	acusticus, a, um	акустический, слуховой
acquired	acquisitus, a, um	приобретенный
acromial	acromialis, e	акромиальный
acromion	acromion, i n	акромион
act	actus, us m	акт, действие
activated	activatus, a, um	активированный
acute	acutus, a , um	острый
add	addo, ere III	добавлять
adductor	adductor, oris m	приводящая (мышца)
adipose, fatty	adiposus, a , um	жирный, жировой
adoniside	Adonisidum, i, n	адонизид
adult	adultus, a, um	взрослый, совершеннолетний
aeron	Aeronum, i n	аэрон
aevit	Aevitum, i n	азвит
afferent	afferens, entis	афферентный (центростремительный), приносящий
against	contra (<i>with Acc.</i>)	против, вопреки
age	aetas, atis f	возраст
air	aer, aeris, m	воздух
alar	alaris, e	крыльный
albumin	albumen, inis n	белок
alcohol	alcohol, olis n	алкоголь
alcohol	spiritus, us m	спирт, алкоголь
alcoholic	alcoholicus, a, um	алкогольный
alimentary	alimentarius, a, um	алиментарный, пищевой
alive	vivus, a, um	живой
allergic	allergicus, a, um	аллергический
aloe	Aloe, es f	алоэ, сабур
alternate	alternans, antis	чередующийся

alum (sg)	alumen, inis n	квасцы (алюминиево-калиевые)
alveolar	alveolaris, e	альвеолярный
amidochloride	Amidochloridum, i n	амидохлорид
amidopyrine	Amidopyrinum, i n	амидопирин
aminazine	Aminazinum, i n	аминазин
ammoniac	ammoniatus, a, um	аммиачный
amnion	amnion, i n	амнион
amorphous	amorphus, a, um	аморфный
ampicillin	Ampicillinum, i n	ампициллин
ampoule	ampulla, ae f	ампула
amputation	amputatio, onis f	ампутация
anal	analis, e	анальный
analysis	analysis, is, f	анализ
anatomical	anatomicus, a, um	анатомический
and	et	и
anesthesia	narcosis, is f	наркоз
anesthesin	Anaesthesinum, i n	анестезин
aneurysm	aneurysma, atis n	аневризма
angioneurotic	angioneuroticus, a, um	ангионевротический
angle	angulus, i m	угол
animal	animal, alis n	животное
animal	animalis, e	животный
anise	Anisum, i n	анис
ankle bone	talus, i m	таранная кость
ankylosis	ankylosis, is f	анкилоз
another	alter, era, erum	другой
anterior, front	anterior, ius	передний
anthrax	anthrax, acis m	сибирская язва
antiasthmatic	antiasthmaticus, a, um	противоастматический
antibiotic	antibioticum, i n	антибиотик
antidote	antidotum, i n	антидот, противоядие
antiseptic	antisepticus, a, um	антисептический
antrum	antrum, i n	пещера, полость
anus	anus, i m	анус, задний проход
aorta	aorta, ae f	аорта
aortic	aorticus, a, um	аортальный
aperture	apertura, ae f	апертура, отверстие
apomorphine	Apomorphinum, i n	апоморфин
aponeurosis	aponeurosis, is f	апоневроз
appearance	habitus, us m	внешность, наружность
appendix	appendix, icis f	аппендикс, придаток
aqueduct	aqu(a)eductus, us m	водопровод

arachnoid membrane	arachnoidea, ae f	паутинная мозговая оболочка
arch	arcus, us m	дуга
arched	arcuatus, a, um	дугообразный
area	area, ae f	поле (кружок)
arrhythmia	ar(r)hythmia, ae f	аритмия
arsenic	arsenis, itis m	арсенит
arterial	arteriosus, a, um arterialis, e	артериальный
artery	arteria, ae f	артерия
articular	articularis, e	суставной
arytenoid	arytenoideus, a, um	черпаловидный
as if, as though	quasi	как будто, словно
as much as is desired	quantum libet, q.l.	сколько угодно (в рецептах)
as much as suffices	quantum satis, q.s.	сколько нужно, сколько потребуется (в рецептах)
as much as suffices, as much as needed	quantum sufficit, q.suff.	сколько нужно (в рецептах)
as much as you like	quantum vis, q.v.	сколько угодно (в рецептах)
ascending	ascendens, entis	восходящий
assemble	cumulo, are I	складывать, достигать
asthma (difficulty in breathing)	asthma, atis n	астма (удушие)
asthmatic	asthmaticus, a, um	астматический
at pleasure	ad lib. = ad libitum	по желанию, сколько угодно, в любом количестве
atherosclerotic	atheroscleroticus, a, um	атеросклеротический
atlas, atlantes (pl)	atlas, antis m	атлант, шейный позвонок
atrium (of the heart)	atrium cordis	предсердие
atropine	Atropinum, i n	атропин
atrophic	atrophicus, a, um	атрофический
auditory, auditive	auditivus, a, um	слуховой
auricle (of the ear)	auricula, ae f	ушная раковина, ушко
auricular (relating to the ear or to the auricle of the heart)	auricularis, e	ушной, ушковидный
auscultation	auscultatio, onis, f	аускультация, выслушивание
author	auctor, oris m	автор
autonomous	autonomicus, a, um	автономный
auxiliary	adjuvans, antis	помогающий,

		вспомогательный
auxiliary	juvans, antis	вспомогательный
axillary	axillaris, e	подмышечный
axis	axis, is m	ось, II шейный позвонок
В		
back	dorsum, i n	спина, тыл
bad	malus, a, um	плохой, худой
band	taenia, ae f	лента
band	vinculum, i n	связка
barbital, barbitone	Barbitalum, i n	барбитал
base	basis, is f	основание, базис (основное средство в сложном рецепте)
basic carbonate	subcarbonas, atis m	основной карбонат
basic nitrate	subnitras, atis m	основной нитрат
basilar	basilaris, e	базиллярный
bed-sore	decubitus, us m	пролежень
before	ante (with Acc.)	до, раньше
before death	ante mortem	перед смертью
before meals	ante cenam	перед едой
before meals	ante cibos	перед едой (ante cibum) сокр. а.с.
behind	post (with Acc.)	1.позади, за, 2.после, спустя
belly	venter, tris m	брюшко (мышцы), брюхо
belly	abdomen, inis n	живот, брюхо
benign	benignus, a, um	доброкачественный,
benzoate	benzoas, atis m	бензоат
benzoate sodium	Coffeinum(i) natrii benzoas (atis)	кофеин-бензоат натрия
benzoic	benzoicus, a, um	бензойный
benzylpenicillin	Benzylpenicillinum, i n	бензилпенициллин
berry	bacca, ae f	ягода
best	melior, ius	лучший
best	optimus, a, um	наилучший
biceps (muscle)	biceps, cipitis	двуглавая мышца
bicuspid	bicuspidalis, e	двустворчатый
bicuspid	praemolaris, e	малый коренной зуб, премоляр
bifurcation	bifurcatio, onis f	бифуркация, раздвоение
big toe	hallux, ucis, m	большой палец стопы
bile	chole, es f	желчь
bile	fel, fellis n	желчь
biliary	biliaris, e	желчный, билиарный

biliary	felleus, a, um	желчный
biliferous	bilifer, era, erum	желчный, желчеотводящий
bilious	biliosus, a, um	желчный, желтушный
bilious	choledochus, a, um	желчный
bitter	amarus, a, um	горький
bivalent	bivalens, entis	двухвалентный
biventral	digastricus, a, um	двубрюшный
black	niger, gra, grum	чёрный, тёмный
bladder	vesica, ae f	пузырь
blind	c(a)ecus, a, um	слепой
blind gut	caecum, i n	слепая кишка
blood	sanguis, inis m	кровь
bloody	sanguineus, a, um	кровеносный, кровавый
body	corpus, oris n	тело; организм
body-fluid	humor, oris m	влага
boil	abscessus, us m	абсцесс, нарыв, гнойник
bone	os, ossis n	кость
bone marrow	medulla ossium	костный мозг
bony	osseus, a, um	костный
border	margo, inis m	край, граница
boric	boricus, a, um	борный
born	natus, a, um	рожденный
bottom	fundus, i m	дно
bowel (intestinal) obstruction	ileus, m	непроходимость кишечника
box	scatula, ae f	коробка, коробочка
brachial	brachialis, e	плечевой
brain	encephalon, i n	головной мозг
branch	ramus, i m	ветвь
breast	mamma, ae f pectus, oris n	молочная железа, грудь
breast-bone	sternum, i n	грудина
bridge	pons, pontis m	мост, образование, подобное мосту
briefly	breviter	кратко
brilliant	nitens, entis	блестящий
broad	latus, a, um	широкий
broken dose, divided dose, fractional dose	dosis refracta	дробная доза, уменьшенная, назначается многократно через краткие промежутки времени
bromide	bromidum, i n	бромид
bronchial	bronchialis, e	бронхиальный
bronchus	bronchus, i m	бронх

buccal; oral	buccalis, e	щёчный, ротовой
buckthorn	Frangula, ae f	крушина
bulb, bulbus	bulbus, i m	луковица (клубневидное утолщение)
bulging	eminens, entis	выдающийся, выступающий
butter	butyrum, I n	масло твердое
by mouth, through the mouth, per os	peroralis, e, per os	пероральный
С		
c(a)esarean section	sectio caesarea	кесарево сечение
cachet	oblata, ae f	капсула, облатка
caffeine	Coffeinum, i, n	кофеин
calcaneal	calcaneus, a, um	пяточный
calcar	calcar, aris n	шпора, напоминающий шпору отросток
calcification	calcificatio, onis f	кальцификация
calculous	calculous, a, um	калькулезный
calf-bone	fibula, ae f	малоберцовая кость
camphor	Camphora, ae f	камфора
camphorated oil	oleum camphoratum	камфорное (камфарное) масло
canal	canalis, e	канал
cancer	cancer, cri m	канцер, рак
cancerous	carcinomatosus, a, um	карциноматозный, раковый
canine	caninus, a, um dens caninus	собачий, клыковый (зуб); клык
capillary	capillaris, e	капиллярный
capitulum	capitulum, i n	головка
capsula	capsula, ae f	капсула
carbon	carbo, onis m	уголь
carbonate	carbonas, atis m	карбонат
carcinoma	carcinoma, atis n	раковая опухоль, рак
cardiac	cardiacus, a, um	сердечный
cardiovalen	Cardiovalenum, i n	кардиовален
carefully	caute	осторожно
caries	caries, ei f	кариес, костоеда
carotid	caroticus, a, um	сонный
carotid artery	carotis, tidis (arteria) f	сонная артерия
carpal	carpeus, a, um	запястный
cartilage	cartilago, inis f	хрящ
cartilaginous	cartilagineus, a, um	хрящевой
case history	anamnesis, is f	анамнез, воспоминание
castor oil	oleum Ricini	касторовое масло

castor-oil plant	Ricinus, i m	клещевина
cataract	cataracta, ae f	катаракта
catarrhal	catarrhalis, e	катаральный
causal	causalis, e	причинный
cave	caverna, ae f	полость, пещера, каверна
cavernous	cavernosus, a, um	пещеристый
cavity	cavitas, atis f	полость, впадина
cavity, cistern	cavum, i n	полость, впадина
cell	cellula, ae f	клетка, ячейка
cellular	cellularis, e	клеточный
cement (dental)	cementum, i n	цемент (зубной)
central	centralis, e	центральный
cerebellar	cerebellaris, e	мозжечковый
cerebellum	cerebellum, i n	мозжечок
cerebral	cerebralis, e	мозговой, церебральный
cerebrospinal	cerebrospinalis, e	спинномозговой
cerebrum, brain, encephalon	cerebrum, i n	большой мозг
cervical	cervicalis, e	шейный
cervicobrachial	cervicobrachialis, e	шейно-плечевой
cesarean	caesareus, a, um	царский, кесарев
chamber	camera, ae f	камера, полость
chamomile	Chamomilla, ae f	ромашка
channel	canalis, is m	канал, проход, проток
charcoal	carbo, onis m	уголь
cheek	bucca, ae f	щека
cheek bone	zygoma, atis n	скула, скуловая кость
cheek muscle	buccinator, oris m	букцинатор, щечная мышца
chest	pectus, oris n	грудь
chest	thorax, acis, m	грудная клетка, грудь
chewing	masticatorius, a, um	жевательный
chicken-pox	varicella, ae f	варицелла, ветряная оспа
child	infans, ntis m, f	ребёнок
chin	mentum, i n	подбородок
chinosol	Chinosolum, i n	хинозол
chloride	chloridum, i n	хлорид
chloroform	Chloroformium, i n	хлороформ
chlorophyllipt*	Chlorophylliptum, i n	хлорофиллипт
chondrocyte*	chondrocytus, i m	хондроцит
chronic	chronicus, a, um	хронический
ciliary	ciliaris, e	ресничный
circle	circulus, i m	круг
circular	circularis, e	круговой, циркулярный

circumflex	circumflexus, a, um	огибающий
cirrhosis	cirrhosis, is f	цирроз
cistern	cisterna, ae f	цистерна
citrate	citras, atis m	цитрат
clavicular	clavicularis, e	ключичный
closed	clausus, a, um	закрытый
coat	tunica, ae f	оболочка
coat of brain	meninx, ngis f	мозговая оболочка
coated	obductus, a, um	покрытый оболочкой
coccygeal	coccygeus, a, um	копчиковый
coccyx	coccyx, ygis m	копчик
cochlea	cochlea, ae f	улитка (внутреннего уха)
cochlear	cochlearis, e	улиточный, относящийся к улитке
cocoa (powder)	cacao n	какао
codeine	Codeinum, i n	кодеин
cod-liver-oil	oleum jecoris Aselli	рыбий жир
cod-liver-oil	oleum Morruae = oleum jecoris Aselli	рыбий жир
collar-bone	clavicula, ae f	ключица
collargole	Collargolum, i n	колларгол
collateral	collateralis, e	коллатеральный
colon	colon, i n	ободочная кишка
colour	color, oris m	цвет, окраска
coltsfoot	Farfara, ae f	мать-и-мачеха
column	columna, ae f	колонна, столб
coma loss of consciousness	coma, atis n	кома, полная потеря сознания
commissure	commissura, ae f	спайка
common	communis, e	общий
common [cat's] valerian, garden heliotrope	Valeriana officinalis	лекарственная
communicant	communicans, antis	соединяющий
complex	compositus, a, um	сложный, ставной
complicated	complicatus, a, um	осложнённый
concentrated	cocncentratus, a, um	концентрированный
concha	concha, ae f	раковина
concussion	commotion, onis f	сотрясение
concrement	concrementum, i n	конкремент
concussion	commotio, onis f	сотрясение
condylar	condylaris, e	мышцелковый
condyle	condylus, i m	мышцелок
cone-shaped	conicus, a, um	конусовидный, конический

congenital	congenitus, a, um	врождённый
congestive	congestivus, a, um	застойный
connecting	conjunctivus, a, um	соединительный, соединительнотканый
constrictor	constrictor, oris m	констриктор (мышца)
contraction, contracture	contractura, ae f	контрактура, сведение (непроизвольное спастическое сокращение мышц)
convolution	gyrus, i m	извилины
cord	chorda, ae f	хорда, нить, струна
cornea	cornea, ae f	роговица
corneal	corneus, a, um,	роговой
corneal	cornealis, e	роговой
coronary	coronarius, a, um	венечный
corpse	cadaver, eris n	труп
corrigent	corrigen, entis	исправляющий корригенс
corrugator muscle	corrugator, oris m	сморщивающая (мышца)
cortex	cortex, icis m	кора, корковое вещество
cortical	corticalie, e	корковый
costal	costalis, e	рёберный
costal	costarius, a, um	рёберный
cotyloid (cup-like) cavity	acetabulum, i n	вертлужная впадина
cough	tussis, is f	кашель
cranial	cranialis, e	черепной, краниальный
cremaster muscle	cremaster, eris m	кремастер, мышца поднимающая яичко
crest	crista, ae f	гребень, гребешок
crest	pecten, inis n	гребень
cribriform	cribrosus, a, um	решётчатый
cricoesophageal	cricoesophageus, a, um	перстнепищеводный
cricoid	cricoides, a, um	перстневидный
cross-shaped	cruciatus, a, um	скрещенный
croupous	crouposus, a, um (cruposus)	крупозный
crown	corona, ae f	коронка
crown of the head	vertex, icis m	темя, вершина
cruciform	cruciformis, e	крестообразный
crus	crus, cruris n	голень, ножка
crystalline	crystallinus, a, um	кристаллический
cuboidal, cubical	cuboides, a, um	кубовидный, кубический
cup	calyx, ycis m	чашка, чашечка
curative dose	dosis curativa	лечебная доза,

		терапевтическая доза
cure	cura, ae f	лечение
curve	curvatura, ae f	кривизна
cusps	cusps, idis f	острие, створка
cutaneous	cutaneus, a, um	кожный
cuticle	cuticula, ae f	кутикула, кожица
cyanide	cyanidum, i n	цианид
cyst	cysta, ae f	киста
cystic	cysticus, a, um	пузырный, относящийся к мочевому или желчному пузырю
cystous	cystosus, a, um	кистозный
D		
daily	in die, de die	ежедневно
damaged	laesus, a, um	поврежденный
dead	mortuus, a, um	мёртвый, умерший
death	mors, mortis f	смерть
decoction	decoctum, i n	отвар
decussation	chiasma, atis n	перекрест
decussation	decussatio, onis f	перекрест
deep	profundus, a, um	глубокий
deforming	deformans, antis	деформирующий, обезображивающий
delicate	tenius, e	тонкий, нежный
deltoid	deltoideus, a, um	дельтовидный
dental	dentalis, e	зубной
dentine	dentinum, i n	дентин
depression	fovea, ae f	ямка, углубление
depressor muscle	depressor, oris m	опускатель (мышца)
depurated	depuratus, a, um	очищенный
descending	descendens, entis	нисходящий
diabetes	diabetes, ae m	диабет
diabetic	diabeticus, a, um	диабетический
diagnosis	diagnosis, is, f	диагноз
diameter	diametrum, i n	диаметр, поперечник
diaphragm	diaphragma, atis n	диафрагма
diaphragmatic	diaphragmaticus, a, um	диафрагмальный
diarrhea	diarrhoea, ae f	понос
dibazol	Dibazolum, i n	дибазол
diethylstilbestrol, estrosten	Diaethylstilboestrolum i, n	диэтилстильбэстрол
diffuse	diffusus, a, um	диффузный, разлитой
digastric	biventer, tra, trum	двубрюшный (о мышце)

digital	digitalis, e	пальцевой
dilatation	dilatatio, onis f	дилатация, расширение
dilatation	ectasia, ae f	эктазия - расширение
diluted	dilutus, a, um	разведённый, разбавленный
disease, malady, illness, sickness	morbus, i m	болезнь, заболевание
disk	discus, i m	диск
disseminated	disseminatus, a, um	диссеминированный
dissolved, solute	solutus, a, um	растворённый
distal	distalis, e	дистальный
distilled	destillatus, a, um	дистиллированный
distinction	differentia, ae f	различие
diverticulum	diverticulum, i n	дивертикул, выпячивание
divide	divido, ere III	разделять
divide into equal parts	div. in p. aeq(u).= divide in partes aequales	раздели на равные части (сокр. в рецептах)
do not repeat	ne repetatur, ne repet. (abbreviation for prescription)	не повторять, т.е. не приготавливать повторно предписанное в рецепте и уже один раз приготовленное лекарство;
domestic	domesticus, a, um	домашний
dorsal	dorsalis, e	спинной, тыльный, дорсальный
dose	dosis, is f	доза
dragee	dragee	драже
drop	gutta, ae f	капля
drug	medicamentum, i n	лекарство
drug	pharmacon, i n	лекарство
drugstore	officina, ae f	мастерская, аптека
drum	tympanum, i n	барабан
dry	siccus, a, um	сухой
duct	ductus, us m	проток
ductile	ductulus, is m	проточек
duodenal	duodenalis, e	дуоденальный, двенадцатиперстный
duodenojejunal	duodenojejunalis, e	двенадцатиперстно- тощекишечный
duodenum	duodenum, i n	двенадцатиперстная кишка
duplex, double	duplex, icis	двойной, сдвоенный
dura mater	dura mater	твёрдая мозговая оболочка
dyspnea, shortness of breath	dyspnoë, ës f (dyspnoea)	диспноэ, отдышка
Е		

ear	auris, is f	ухо
eczema	eczema, atis n	экзема
edema	oedema, atis n	отёк
edematous	oedematosus, a, um	эдематозный, отечный
efferent	efferens, entis	эфферентный, выносящий, выводящий
egg cell	ovum, i n	яйцо, яйцеклетка
eight	octo	восемь
eighth	octavus, a, um	восьмой
elbow bone	ulna, ae f	локтевая кость
elbow process	olecranon, i n	локтевой отросток
eleven	undecim	одиннадцать
eleventh	undecimus, a, um	одиннадцатый
eminence	eminentia, ae f	возвышение
emphysema	emphysema, atis m	эмфизема, увеличение количества воздуха в органах
emulsion	emulsum, i n, emulsio, onis f	эмульсия
enamel	enamelum, i n	эмаль
end	terminatio, onis f	конец, окончание
endemic	endemicus, a, um	эндемический, свойственный данной области, местный
enough	satis	довольно, достаточно
entrance	aditus, us m	вход
epidemic	epidemicus, a, um	эпидемический
epigastric	epigastricus, a, um	надчревный
epiglottis	epiglottis, idis f	надгортанник
epinephrine	Adrenalinum, i, n	адреналин
epiphysial	epiphysialis, e	эпифизарный
epiphysis	epiphysis, is f	эпифиз
epithelial	epithelialis, e	эпителиальный
equal	aequalis, e	равный
equally	ana	поровну, по
equator	equator, oris m	экватор
erector muscle	erector, oris m	выпрямитель (мышца)
esophageal	esophageus, a, um	пищеводный
esophageal	oesophageus, a, um	пищеводный
esophagus	oesophagus, i m	пищевод
esophagus, gullet	esophagus, i m	пищевод
essential oil	oleum aethereum	эфирное масло
eternal	aeternus, a, um	вечный
ether, ester	aether, eris m	эфир

ethereal	aethereus, a, um	эфирный
ethmoid	ethmoidalis, e	решетчатый
ethyl	aethylicus, a, um	этиловый
ethyl	Aethylum, i n	этил
ethyl morphine	Aethylmorphinum, i n	этилморфин
every hour	omni hora (omn. hor.)	каждый час
every hour	quaque hora, q.h.	каждый час (в рецептах)
every two hours	omni bihora (omn.bih.)	каждые два часа
extemity	extremitas, atis f	конец
extended	extensus, a, um	вытянутый
extension	extensio, onis f	разгибание, растягивание
extensor muscle	extensor, oris m	разгибатель (мышца)
external	externus, a, um	наружный
extirpation	exstirpatio, onis f	экстирпация, искоренение
extract	extractum, i n	экстракт (вытяжка)
extraction	extractio, onis f	извлечение
extrauterine	extrauterinus, a, um	внематочный
eye	oculus, i m	глаз
eye socket	orbita, ae f	глазница
eyeball	bulbus oculi	глазное яблоко
eyebrow	supercilium, i n	бровь
eyelid	palpebra, ae f	веко
F		
facial	facialis, e	лицевой, поверхностный
false recollection	paramnesia, ae f	парамнезия, псевдовоспоминания
fascia	fascia, ae f	фасция
fascicle	fasciculus, i m	пучок
fauces	fauces, ium f	зев
feminine	femininus, a, um	женский
fetus, f(o)etus	fetus, us m, foetus, i m	плод (утробный, от 9-й недели до рождения)
fever	febris, is f	лихорадка
feverish	febrillis, e	лихорадочный
fibre	fibra, ae f	волокно
fibrous	fibrosus, a, um	фиброзный, волокнистый
fifth	quintus, a, um	пятый
film	membranula, ae f	плёнка
finger, toe	digitus, i m	палец
finger-shaped	digitatus, a, um	пальцевидный
finish	finio, ire IV	оканчивать, заканчивать, кончать
first	primus, a, um	первый

fissure	fissura, ae f	щель
five	quinque	пять
flat	planus, a, um	плоский
flax	Linum, i n	лен
flexion	flexio, onis f	сгибание
flexor, m.flexor	flexor, oris m	сгибатель (мышца)
flexure	flexura, ae f	изгиб
floating (about kidney)	migrans, ntis	блуждающий
flower	flos, floris m	цветок; цветущее состояние
fluid	fluidus, a, um	жидкий
fluid	liquor, oris m	жидкость, раствор
fold	plica, ae f	складка
follicle	folliculus, i m	фолликул, пузырёк
fontanelle	fonticulus, i m	родничок
food	cibus, i m	еда, пища
foot	pes, pedis m	стопа, нога
for	pro (<i>with Abl.</i>)	для, за
for external use	ad us. ext. = ad usum externum	для наружного употребления
for internal use	ad us. int. = ad usum internum	для внутреннего употребления
for the personal use of the physician	ad us. propr. = ad usum proprium	для личного (собственного) употребления
forearm	antebrachium, i n	предплечье
forefinger	index, icis m	указатель, указательный палец
forehead	frons, frontis f	лоб
form	forma, ae f	форма
four	quattuor	четыре
fourth	quartus, a, um	четвёртый
fracture	fractura, ae f	перелом
frenulum	frenulum, i n	уздечка
frequent	frequens, entis	частый, учащенный
from	a, ab (<i>with Abl.</i>)	от
frontal	frontalis, e	лобный
fruit	fructus, us m	плод (раст.)
function	functio, onis f	действие, функция; исполнение; обязанность
fungoid	fungiformis, e	грибовидный
funnel	infundibulum, i n	воронка
furrow	sulcus, i m	борозда
fusiform, spindle-shaped	fusiformis, e	веретеновидный, веретенообразный
G		

gallbladder	vesica fellea, vesica biliaris	желчный пузырь
ganglion	ganglion, i n	ганглий (нервный узел)
gap	hiatus, us m	щель, расщелина
gastric	gastricus, a, um	желудочный
gastroduodenal	gastroduodenalis, e	желудочно-двенадцатиперстно-кишечный
gate	porta, ae f	ворота
general	generalis, e	генеральный, общий
geniohyoid	geniohyoideus, a, um	подбородочно-подъязычный
genital	genitalis, e	половой, генитальный
genitourinary	urogenitalis, e	мочеполовой
giant-cell (attr.)	gigantocellularis, e	гигантоклеточный
gingival	gingivalis, e	десневой
girdle	cingulum, i n	пояс
give	do, are I	давать, выдавать
give out	D.= da, detur, dentur	дай, выдай, пусть будет дано (сокр. в рецептах)
gland	glandula, ae f	железа
glaucoma	glaucoma, atis n	глаукома
globule, small pill, cotton pellet	globulus, i n	шарик
glomus, glome	glomus, eris n	клубок, гломус (сосудистый)
glossopharyngeal nerve, 9th cranial nerve	glossopharyngeus, a, um (<i>nervus</i>)	языкоглоточный
glottis	glottis, idis f	голосовая щель, собственно голосовой аппарат
gluconate	gluconas, atis m	глюконат
glucose	Glucosum, i n	глюкоза
gluteal	gluteus, a, um	ягодичный
glycerophosphate	glycerophosphas, atis m	глицерофосфат
gold(en)	aureus, a, um	золотой
good	bonum, i n	добро
good	bonus, a, um	хороший
gram, gramme	gramma, atis n	грамм
granule	granulum, i n	гранула, крупинка
great nightshade	Belladonna, ae f	белладонна, красавка
great, large	magnus, a, um	большой, больший
greater	major, jus	большой
greatest	maximus, a, um	наибольший, больший
grey	cinereus, a, um	серый

groin	inguen, inis n	пах
groove	sulcus, i m	борозда, бороздка
gum	gingiva, ae f	десна
gum-tree	Eucalyptus, i f	эвкалипт
Н		
hand	manus, us f	кисть руки, рука
hard	durus, a, um	твёрдый
hawthorn	Crataegus, i f	боярышник
head	caput, itis n	голова, головка
health	valetudo, inis f	здоровье
hearing	auditus, us m	слух, способность слышать
heart	cor, cordis n	сердце
heat	calor, oris m	теплота, жар
heel	calx, calcis f	пята, пятка
heel bone	calcaneus, i m	пяточная кость
help	adjuvo, are I	помогать
hemisphere	hemispherium, i n	полушарие
hepatic	hepaticus, a, um	печёночный
herb	herba, ae f	лекарственная трава
hernia	hernia, ae f	грыжа
hernial	hernialis, e	грыжевой
herpes	herpes, etis m	герпес, пузырьковый лишай
highest	supremus, a, um	самый высокий
hilus	hilus, i m	ворота
hip-bone	coxa, ae f	таз, бедро
hip-joint	coxa, ae f	соха, ae f
hippocamp(us)	hippocampus, i m	гиппокамп
Hippocratic	hippocraticus, a, um	гиппократов
hollow	cavus, a, um	полый, пустой, впалый
hollow	fossa, ae f	ямка, яма
homatropine	Homatropinum, i n	гоматропин
honey	mel, mellis n	мёд
honour	honor, oris m	честь, почесть
hooklet	hamulus, i m	крючок (крючковидный отросток)
hook-shaped	hamatus, a, um	крючковидный
horizontal	horizontalis, e	горизонтальный
horn	cornu, us n	рог, рожок
how much, as much as	quantum, i n	сколько
humeral	humeralis, e	плечевой
hydrobromide	hydrobromidum, i n	гидробромид
hydrochloride	Hydrochloridum, i n,	гидрохлорид
hydrogen	Hydrogenium, i n	водород

hydrochlorothiazide dichlothiazide	Dichlothiazidum, i n	дихлотиазид
hydrogen carbonate	hydrocarbonas, atis m	гидрокарбонат
hydroiodide	hydroiodidum, i n	гидроиодид
hydrotartrate	hydrotartras, atis m	гидротартрат
hydroxide	hydroxydum, i n	гидроксид
hyoid	hyoideus, a, um	подъязычный
hypogastric	hypogastricus, a, um	подчервный
hypoglossal	hypoglossus, a, um	подъязычный (нерв)
hypophysis	hypophysis, is f	гипофиз
I		
I	ego	я
ichthammol	Ichthyolum, i n	ихтиол
iliac	iliacus, a, um	подвздошный
iliac region	ile, ilis n, ilia, ilium pl	подвздошная область
iliohypogastric	iliohypogastricus, a, um	подвздошно-подчервный
ill	aegrotus, a, um	больной
impression	impressio, onis f	вдавление
in	in	в, на (с Acc. на вопрос куда?; с Abl. на вопрос где?)
in equal parts	p.aeq. = partes aequales	в равных частях, равными частями сокр. в рецептах)
in twos	bini, ae, a	по два
incision	incisio, onis f	надрез, насечка
incisor (adj.)	incisivus, a, um	резцовый
incisure	incisura, ae f	вырезка
incurable	insanabilis, e	неизлечимый
inflammation	inflammatio, onis f	воспаление
inflammatory	inflammatorius, a, um	воспалительный
infraclavicular	infraclavicularis, e	подключичный
infrahyoid	infrahyoideus, a, um	подподъязычный
infrajugular	infrajugularis, e	подъязырный
infraorbital	infraorbitalis, e	подглазничный
infusion	infusum, i n	настой
inguinal	inguinalis, e	паховый
injection	injectio, onis f	инъекция
insufficiency	insufficiencia, ae f	недостаточность
intact	integer, gra, grum	неповрежденный
intercostal	intercostalis, e	межреберный
interlobular	interlobularis, e	междольковый
intermediary	intermedius, a, um	средний, промежуточный
intermittent	intermittens, entis	перемежающийся, прерывистый

intermuscular	intermuscularis, e	межмышечный
internal	internus, a, um	внутренний
internal organs	splanchna pl.	внутренности
interosseous	interosseus, a, um	межкостный
interstitial	interstitialis, e	промежуточный
intervertebral	intervertebralis, e	межпозвоночный
intestinal	intestinalis, e	кишечный
intestine	intestinum, i n	кишка
intra-articular	intraarticularis, e	внутрисуставной
intramuscular	intramuscularis, e	внутримышечный
inverted	inversus, a, um	перевернутый, извращенный
iodide	iodidum, i n	йодид
iris	iris, idis f	радужка, радужная оболочка
ischadic	ischadicus, a, um	седалищный
ischium	ischium, i n	седалище
isotonic	isotonicus, a, um	изотонический
isthmus	isthmus, i n	перешеек
itch	pruritus, us m	зуд кожи или слизистых оболочек
J		
jaundice	icterus, i m	желтуха
jejunal	jejunalis, e	относящийся к тощей кишке
jejunum	jejunum, i n	тощая кишка
joint	articulatio, onis f	сустав
jugular	jugularis, e	ярёмный
juice	succus, i m	сок
juncture	junctura, ae f	соединение
juniper	Juniperus, i f	можжевельник
juvenile	juvenilis, e	юношеский, молодой
K		
kaolin	bolus, i f	белая глина, каолит (силикат алюминия)
kidney	ren, renis m	почка
knee	genu, us n	колено
knee-cap	patella, ae f	надколенник
known	notus, a, um	известный
L		
labyrinth	labyrinthus, i m	лабиринт, внутреннее ухо
labyrinthine	labyrinthicus, a, um	лабиринтный
lacrimal	lacrimalis, e	слёзный
lactate	lactas, atis m	лактат

large intestine	intestinum crassum	толстая кишка
larynx	larynx, yngis m	гортань
late	serotinus, a, um	поздний, запоздалый
latent	latens, ntis	латентный
lateral	lateralis, e	боковой
Latin	Latinus, a, um	латинский
laxative	laxans, antis	слабительный
layer	stratum, i n	слой
lead	Plumbum, I n	свинец
leaf	folium, i n	лист, листок
leech	hirudo, inis f	пиявка
left	sinister, tra, trum	1.левый 2.неблагоприятный
lens	lens, lentis f	хрусталик
lesser	minor, minus	малый, меньший
let there be made; so that there is	f., F. = fiat, fiant	пусть будет сделано, пусть будут сделаны (сделай, приготовь!) сокр. в рецептах
lethal dose	dosis letalis	летальная доза, смертельная доза (доза лекарства и др., могущая вызвать смерть)
lethal, fatal, mortal	letalis, e	смертельный
levator	levator, oris m	подниматель, поднимающая мышца
life	vita, ae f	жизнь
ligament	ligamentum, i n	связка
lily of the valley	Convallaria, ae f	ландыш
limb	membrum, i n	конечность, член
line	linea, ae f	линия, черта
lingual	lingualis, e	язычный
liniment	linimentum, i n	линимент
lip	labium, i n	губа
liquid ammonia	solutio Ammonii caustici	нашатырный спирт, раствор аммиака
liquid ammonia anise dripped	liquor Ammonii anisatus (i)	нашатырно-анисовые капли
liquid paraffin	oleum Paraffini = oleum Vaselini	вазелиновое масло
liquid paraffin	oleum Vaselini sive Paraffinum liquidum	вазелиновое масло, жидкий парафин
listen	audio, ire IV	слушать
liver	hepar, atis n	печень
lobar	lobaris, e	долевой

lobe	lobulus, i m	долька
local	localis, e	местный
loin	lumbus, i m	поясница
long	longus, a, um	длинный
longitudinal	longitudinalis, e	продольный
lower	inferior, ius	нижний
lower jaw	mandibula, ae f	нижняя челюсть
lozenge	pastillus, i m	лекарственная пастилка
lumbar	lumbalis, e	поясничный
lumbosacral	lumbosacralis, e	пояснично-крестцовый
lung	pulmo, onis m	легкое
lychnis	Adonis, idis m,f	адонис, горюцвет
lymphatic	lymphaticus, a, um	лимфатический
M		
m.dilator	dilatator, oris m	расширяющая мышца
malignant	malignus, a, um	злокачественный
man	homo, inis m	человек
mandibular	mandibularis e	нижнечелюстной
marrow	medulla, ae f	мозговое вещество
masculine	masculus, a, um	мужской
masseter (muscle)	masseter, eris m	жевательная мышца
mastoid	mastoideus, a, um	сосцевидный
matrix	matrix, icis f	ложе, основание
maxillary	maxillaris, e	верхнечелюстной
maximum dose	dosis maxima	максимальная доза, которую может принять человек без опасности для здоровья
medial	medialis, e	средний, медиальный
median	medianus, a, um	срединный
mediastinal	mediastinalis, e	средостенный
mediastinum	mediastinum, i n	средостение
medical certificate, certificate of health	relatio medica	медицинское свидетельство
medicinal	medicinalis, e	лекарственный
medicine	medicina, ae f	медицина
medullary	medullaris, e	мозговой
membranaceous	membranaceus, a, um	перепончатый
membrane	membrana, ae f	мембрана, перепонка
memory	memoria, ae f	память
mental	mentalis, e	подбородочный
menthol	Mentholum, i n	ментол
metacarpus	metacarpus, i m	пять

metastasis	metastasis, is f	метастаз
metastatic	metastaticus, a, um	метастатический
methyl salicylate	Methylī salicylas (atis), m	метилсалицилат
methylene blue	Methylenum coeruleum	метиленовый синий
methylestradiol	Methyloestradiolum, i n	метилэстрадиол
middle	medius, a, um	средний
milfoil	Millefolium, i n	тысячелистник
milk	lac, lactis n	молоко
milk, baby, deciduous, first, primary, temporary	deciduus	отпадающий, молочный (о зубе)
mind, intellect	mens, mentis f	ум
minimum lethal dose	dosis letalis minima	минимальная смертельная (летальная) доза
mint	Mentha, ae f	мята
minute fovea, minute pit	foveola, ae f	ямочка
mitral	mitralis, e	митральный, двустворчатый
mix	misceo, ere II	мешать, смешивать
mix!	M. = misce	смешай!
mixed	mixtus, a, um	смешанный
mixture	mixtura, ae f	микстура
molar (attr.)	molaris, e	большой коренной (зуб), моляр
monobromated camphora	Bromcamphora, ae f	бромкамфора
mother, mater	mater, tris f	мать, мозговая оболочка
motherwort	Leonurus, i m	пустырник
motor (attr.)	motorius, a, um	моторный, двигательный
mouth	os, oris n	рот
mouth	ostium, i n	отверстие, устье
mouth, artificial opening	stoma, atis n	рот, уста, искусственное отверстие
movable	mobilis, e	подвижный, блуждающий
mucilage	mucilago, inis f	слизь (лек.ф.)
mucosa	mucosa, ae f	слизистая (оболочка)
mucous	mucosus, a, um	слизистый
mucus	mucus, i m	слизь
muscle	musculus, i m	мышца
muscular	muscularis, e	мышечный
mylohyoid	mylohyoideus, a, um	челюстно-подъязычный
myocardium	myocardium, i n	миокард
N		
nail	unguis, is m	ноготь

name	nomen, inis n	название, имя
nape	nucha, ae f	выя
naphthalan*	Naphthalanum, i n	нафталан
nasal	nasalis, e	носовой
nasociliary	nasociliaris, e	носоресничный
nasolacrima	nasolacrimalis, e	носослёзный
natal	natalis, e	относящийся к рождению, родной
neck	cervix, icis f	шея, шейка
neck	collum, i n	шея, шейка
necrosis	necrosis, is f	некроз, омертвление
necrotic	necroticus, a, um	омертвелый, омертвевший
neoplasm	neoplasma, atis n	новообразование
nerve	nervus, i m	нерв
nervous	nervosus, a, um	нервный, богатый нервами
nettle	Urtica, ae f	крапива
network	rete, is n	сеть, сетка
neuter	neuter, tra, trum	средний (род)
new growth	neoplasma, atis n	новообразование, опухоль
newborn	neonatus, a, um	новорождённый
nine	novem	девять
ninth	nonus, a, um	девятый
nipple, papilla	papilla, ae f	сосок, сосочек
nitrate	nitras, atis m	нитрат
nitrite	nitris, itis m	нитрит
nitrogen	Nitrogenium, i n	азот
node	nodus, i m	узел
nodule	nodulus, i m	узелок
nose	nasus, i m	нос
nostril	naris, is f	ноздря
not	non	не
nuclear	nuclearis, e	ядерный
nucleus	nucleus, i m	ядро
number	numerus, i m	число
nut	nux, nucis f	орех
nutrient	nutriens, entis	относящийся к питанию, доставляющий пищу, питающий
nutritious	nutricius, a, um	питательный
О		
oak	Quercus, us f	дуб
oblique	obliquus, a, um	косой, наклонный
obliterating	obliterans, ntis	облитерирующий

oblong	oblongatus, a, um	продолговатый
obturation	obturatio, onis f	обтурация
occipital	occipitalis, e	затылочный
occipitofrontal	occipitofrontalis, e	затылочно-лобный
occipitotemporal	occipitotemporalis, e	затылочно-височный
occiput	occiput, itis n	затылок
occlusion	occlusio, onis f	окклюзия
octestrol	Octoestrolum, i n	октэстрол
ocular	ocularis, e	окулярный, глазной
oculomotor(ius)	oculomotorius, a, um	глазодвигательный
oil	oleum, i n	масло
oily	oleosus, a, um	масляный
ointment	unguentum, i n	мазь
olfactory	olfactorius, a, um	обонятельный
olive	Oliva, ae f	олива (плод)
olive oil	oleum Olivarum	оливковое масло
omentum	omentum, i n	сальник
one	unus, a, um	один
open	apertus, a, um	открытый
opening	foramen, inis n	отверстие
ophthalmic	ophthalmicus, a, um	глазной
ophthalmic remedies	ophthalmica (remedia), n/pl	глазные лекарственные средства
optic	opticus, a, um	зрительный, оптический
or	seu	или
oral	oralis, e	ротовой
orbicular	orbicularis, e	орбикулярный, круговой, кольцевой
orbital	orbitalis, e	глазничный
organ	organum, i n	орган
organism	organismus, i m	организм
orotate	orotas, atis m	оротат
orthodontics	orthodontia, ae f	ортодонтия
oval	ovalis, e	овальный
ovary	ovarium, i n	яичник
over	supra	над, выше, на
oxide	oxydum, i n	оксид
P		
pain	dolor, oris m	боль
palate	palatum, i n	небо
palatine, palatal	palatinus, a, um	нёбный
palatoglossal	palatoglossus, a, um	нёбно-язычный
palmar	palmaris, e	ладонный

pancreas	pancreas, atis n	поджелудочная железа
papillary	papillaris, e	папиллярный
paralysis	paralysis, is f	паралич
parasacral	parasacralis, e	парасакральный, околокрестцовый, расположенный около крестцовой кости
parasternal	parasternalis, e	окологрудинный
parathyroid(al)	parathyroideus, a, um	околощитовидный
parenchyma	parenchyma, atis n	паренхима
parietal	parietalis, e	теменной, пристеночный
parietooccipital	parietooccipitalis, e	теменно-затылочный
parotic	paroticus, a, um	паротидный, околоушный
parotid gland	parotis, tidis f	околоушная железа
part, portion	pars, partis f	часть, сторона
partial	partialis, e	частичный
partial paralysis	paresis, is f	парез
partition	septum, i n	перегородка
passage	meatus, us m	проход, ход
paste	pasta, ae f	паста
patellar	patellaris, e	пателлярный
patient	aeger, gri m	больной
peach	Persicum, i n	персик
peach oil	oleum Persicorum	персиковое масло
pectoral	pectoralis, e	грудной
pelvic	pelvinus, a, um	тазовый
pelvic	pelvicus, a, um	тазовый
pelvis	pelvis, is f	таз, лоханка
pen	calamus, i m	перо (писчее)
pentylenetetrazol	Corazolum, i n	коразол
pepper (adj.)	piperitus, a, um	перечный
per day, daily	pro die	в день, в сутки
perforating	perforans, antis	прободающий
perforation	perforatio, onis f	перфорация
periarterial	periarterialis, e	периартериальный, вокругартериальный
peridental membrane	periodontium, i n	периодонт, надкостница зуба
perineum, fork	perineum, i n	промежность
periodontium	parodontium, paradentium, i n	пародонт
periosteum	periosteum, i n	надкостница
peritoneum	peritoneum, i n	брюшина
perivascular	perivascularis, e	периваскулярный,

		вокругсосудистый
peroneal	fibularis, e	малоберцовый
peroneal	peroneus, a, um	малоберцовый
peroxide	peroxydum, i n	пероксид
petrous, petrosal	petrosus, a, um	каменистый
phalanx	phalanx, ngis f	фаланга
pharmaceutics	pharmacia, ae f	фармация
pharyngeal	pharyngeus, a, um	глоточный
pharynx	pharynx, ngis m	глотка
phenyl salicylate	phenyliisalicylas (atis) m	фенилсалицилат
phosphate	phosphas, atis m	фосфат
physician	aesculapius, i m	эскулап
physician	medicus, i m	врач
pia mater	pia mater, tris f	мягкая мозговая оболочка
pill	pilula, ae f	пилюля
pituitary	pituitarius, a, um	питуитарный
place, spot	locus, i m	место
plane	planum, i n	плоскость
plantar	plantaris, e	подошвенный
plasma	plasma, atis n	плазма
plaster	emplastrum, i n	пластырь
plate	lamella, ae f	пластинка
plate	lamina, ae f	пластинка
platysma	platysma, atis n	платизма
plexus	plexus, us m	сплетение
plowshare	vomer, eris m	сошник
pneumonia	pneumonia, ae f	пневмония
poison	venenum, i n	яд
polyp	polypus, i m	полип
post mortem, sectio legalis	sectio legalis	судебно-медицинское вскрытие
postcibal, after meals, after eating	post cibos (p.c.)	после еды
posterior	posterior, ius	задний
postganglionic	postganglionaris, e	постганглионарный
pouch	bursa, ae f	сумка, мешок
powder	pulvis, eris m	порошок
powerful	heroicus, a, um	сильнодействующий
precentral	praecentralis, e	прецентральный, предцентральный
prescription	praescriptio, onis f	рецепт
prescription	receptum, i n	рецепт

presternum	manubrium, i n	рукоятка
prevention of disease	prophylaxis, is f	профилактика
process	processus, us m	отросток
prognosis	prognosis, is f	прогноз
pronation	pronatio, onis f	пронация, поворот ладони вниз
pronator (muscle)	pronator, oris m	пронатор
proper	proprius, a, um	собственный
propionate	propionas, atis m	пропионат
prostate gland	prostata, ae f	предстательная железа
prostatic	prostaticus, a, um	предстательный
protuberance	protuberantia, ae f	выступ, бугор
proximal	proximalis, e	проксимальный
psoas (muscle)	psoas, atis m	поясничная (мышца)
pterygoid, wing-shaped	pterygoideus, a, um	крыловидный
pterygopalatine	pterygopalatinus, a, um	крыло-небный
pubis	pubes, is f	лобок
pulmonary	pulmonalis, e	легочный
pulp	pulpa, ae f	пульпа, мякоть
pulse	pulsus, us m	пульс
puncture	punctio, onis f	пункция, прокол
pupil	pupilla, ae f	зрачок
pure	purus, a, um	чистый
purified	purificatus, a, um	очищенный
pus	pus, puris n	гной
pyloric	pyloricus, a, um	привратниковый
pylorus	pylorus, i m	привратник, пилорус
pyramid	pyramis, idis f	пирамида
pyramidal	pyramidalis, e	пирамидальный
Q		
quadriceps	quadriceps, cipitis	четырёхглавый
quadrigeminal	quadrigeminus, a, um	четырёхпарный, четвертной
quick	celer, eris, ere	быстрый
quickly	celeriter	быстро
quickly	cito	быстро
quinine	Chininum, i n	хинин
R		
rabies	rabies, ei f	бешенство
rachidian bulb	medulla oblongata	продолговатый мозг
radial	radialis, e	лучевой
radiation	radiatio, onis f	лучистость
radius, radial (spoke) bone	radius, i m	лучевая кость

ray	radius, i m	луч
recess	recessus, us m	углубление, карман
rectal	rectalis, e	ректальный
rectified	rectificatus, a, um	очищенный
rectum	rectum, i n	прямая кишка
red	ruber, bra, brum	красный
redness	rubor, oris m	покраснение
region	regio, onis f	область
remedy	remedium, i n	средство
renal	renalis, e	почечный
renal pelvis	pelvis renalis	почечная лоханка
repeat	repeto, ere III	повторять
resection, excision	resectio, onis f	резекция
respiration, breathing	respiratio, onis f	дыхание
respiratory	respiratorius, a, um	дыхательный
resuscitation	reanimatio, onis f	реанимация
retaining band	retinaculum, i n	удерживатель
reticular	reticularis, e	ретикулярный
retina	retina, ae f	сетчатка
retromandibular	retromandibularis, e	позадинижнечелюстной
retroperitoneal	retroperitonealis, e	забрюшинный
retrovesical	retrovesicalis, e	ретровезикальный
rhizome	rhizoma, atis n	корневище
rhombic	rhomboideus, a, um	ромбовидный
rhubarb	Rheum, i n	ревень
rib	costa, ae f	ребро
ridge	jugum, i n	возвышение
right	dexter, tra, trum	правый
ring	anulus, i m	кольцо, ободок
roof	tegmen, inis n	покрышка, крыша
root	radix, icis f	корень, корешок
rotator (muscle)	rotator, oris m	вращатель (мышца)
rough	asper, era, erum	шероховатый; суровый
roughness	asperitas, atis, f	шероховатость
round	rotundus, a, um	круглый (отверстие)
round and long	teres, etis	круглый
rupture	ruptura, ae f	разрыв
S		
sacral	sacralis, e	крестцовый
sacred	sacer, cra, crum	крестцовый (кость)
sacrococcygeal	sacrococcygeus, a, um	крестцово-копчиковый
saddle	sella, ae f	седло
sage	Salvia, ae f	шалфей

sagittal	sagittalis, e	сагиттальный (стреловидный)
salicylate	salicylas, atis m	салицилат
salicylic	salicylicus, a, um	салициловый
salt	sal, salis m	соль
sarcoma	sarcoma, atis n	саркома
scabies	scabies, ei f	чесотка
scale	squama, ae f	чешуя
scalenus (muscle)	scalenus, a, um	лестничная мышца
scaphoid	scaphoideus, a, um	ладьевидный
scapulohypoglossal	omohyoideus, a, um	лопаточно-подъязычный
scar	cicatrix, icis f	рубец, шрам
sciatic	ischadicus, a, um	седалищный
sea buckthorn	Hippophae, es f	облепиха
seam, rhaphe	raphe, es f rhaphe	шов (на мягких тканях)
second	secundus, a, um	второй
secondary	secundarius, a, um	вторичный
secretion	secretum, i n	секрет
section	sectio, onis f	рассечение, вскрытие
sedative	sedatives, a, um	седативный, успокаивающий
sedatives (<i>drugs</i>)	sedativa (remedia), n/pl	седативные, лекарственные средства
seed, semen	semen, inis n	семя, семенная жидкость
semicircular	semicircularis, e	полукружный
semilunar	semilunaris, e	полулунный, серповидный
senile	senilis, e	старческий
sense	sensus, us m	чувство
sensory	sensorius, a, um	чувствительный, сенсорный
septal	septalis, e	перегородочный
serous	serosus, a, um	серозный
serum	serum, i n	сыворотка
seven	septem	семь
seventh	septimus, a, um	седьмой
shin bone	tibia, ae f	большеберцовая кость
short	brevis, e	короткий
shoulder	brachium, i n	плечо
shoulder blade	scapula, ae f	лопатка
shoulder bone	humerus, i m	плечевая кость
sick	aeger, gra, grum	заболевший, нездоровый
sickle	falx, falcis f	серп, коса, серповидное образование
side	latus, eris n	сторона

sigmoid	sigmoideus, a, um	сигмовидный
signature	signatura, ae f	сигнатура
simple, easy	simplex, icis	простой
singular	singularis, e	единственный
sinus	sinus, us m	пазуха, синус
six	sex	шесть
sixth	sextus, a, um	шестой
skeleton	skeleton(um), i n	скелет
skeleton	skeleton, i n	скелет
skin	cutis, is f	кожа
skull	cranium, i n	череп
skull-cap	calvaria, ae f	крыша черепа, черепной свод
slit	rima, ae f	щель
small canal	canaliculus, i m	каналец
small intestine	intestinum tenue	тонкая кишка
small, little	parvus, a um	малый
smallest	minimus, a, um	наименьший, минимальный
smallpox	variola, ae f	натуральная оспа
snowdrop	Galanthus, i m	подснежник
soap	sapo, onis m	мыло
socket	alveolus, i m	альвеола, ячейка, луночка
soft	mollis, e	мягкий
sole (of the foot); plant	planta, ae f	подошва; растение
soluble	solubilis, e	растворимый
solution	solutio, onis f	раствор
soul	animus, i m	дух, душа
space	spatium, i n	пространство
spasmolytic	spasmolyticus, a, um	спазмолитический
spastic	convulsivus, a, um	конвульсивный
sphenoid	sphenoidalis, e	клиновидный
sphincter (<i>muscle</i>)	sphincter, eris m	сфинктер (мышца)
spinal	spinalis, e	спинномозговой
spinal marrow	medulla spinalis	спинной мозг
spine	spina, ae f	ость
spinous, spinal	spinosus, a, um	остистый
spirituous, alcoholic	spirituosus, a, um	спиртовой
spleen	lien, enis m	селезёнка
spleen	splen, splenis m	селезенка
spongy	spongiosus, a, um	губчатый
squamous	sqamosus, a, um	чешуйчатый
square	quadratus, a, um	квадратный
St. John's wort	Hypericum, i n	зверобой

stapes	stapes, edis m	стрема, стремная слуховая косточка
starch	Amylum, i n	крахмал
state	status, us m	положение, состояние
stenosis	stenosis, is f	стеноз, сужение
sterilize	steriliso, are I	стерилизовать
sternocleidomastoid	sternocleidomastoideus, a, um	грудино-ключично-сосцевидный
sternocostal	sternocostalis, e	грудино-рёберный
sternohyoid	sternohyoideus, a, um	грудино-подъязычный
sternothyroid	sternothyreoideus, a, um	грудино-щитовидный
stir	agito, are I	взбалтывать
stomach	gaster, tris f	желудок
stone	calculus, i m	камень
straight	rectus, a, um	прямой, правильный
stroma	stroma, atis n	строма, остов
strophanthine	Strophanthinum, i n	строфантин
stylohypoglossal	stylohyoideus, a, um	шилоподъязычный
styloid	styloideus, a, um	шиловидный
stylopharyngeal	stylopharyngeus, a, um	шилоглоточный
subcutaneous	subcutaneus, a, um	подкожный
subhepatic	subhepaticus, a, um	подпечёчный
sublingual	sublingualis, e	подъязычный
submandibular	submandibularis, e	поднижнечелюстной
suboxide, protoxide	oxydulatus, a, um	закисный, закись
subscapular	subscapularis, e	подлопаточный
substance	substantia, ae f	вещество
sudden	subitus, a, um	внезапный, неожиданный
sugar	saccharum, i n	сахар
sulphate	sulfas, atis m	сульфат
sulphur	Sulfur, uris n	сера
sunflower	Helianthus, i m	подсолнечник
sunflower oil	oleum Helianthi	подсолнечное масло
superficial	superficialis, e	поверхностный
superficies	superficies, ei f	наружная поверхность
superior	superior, ius	верхний
supination	supinatio, onis f	супинация, поворот ладони вверх
supinator (muscle)	supinator, oris m	супинатор (мышца)
suppository (pl suppositories)	suppositorium, i n	суппозиторий, свеча
supraclavicular	supraclavicularis, e	надключичный
suprahyoid *	suprahyoideus, a, um	надподъязычный

supraorbital	supraorbitalis, e	надглазничный
suprarenal	suprarenalis, e	надпочечный
surface	facies, ei f	лицо, поверхность
surgery	chirurgia, ae f	хирургия
suspension	suspensio, onis f	суспензия
suture	sutura, ae f	шов
sweet	dulcis, e	сладкий
sympathic	sympathicus, a, um	симпатический
synestrol*	Synoeestrolum, i n	синэстрол
synovial	synovialis, e	синовиальный
syrette	spritz-tubulus, i m	шприц-тюбик
syrup	sirupus, i m	сироп
system	systema, atis n	система
T		
tabes	tabes, is f	сухотка
tablet	tabuletta, ae f	таблетка
take	recipio, ere III	взять
take!	recipe!	возьми!
talc	Talcum, i n	тальк
tall	altus, a, um	высокий
talocrural	talocruralis, e	голеностопный
tannin, tannins	tanninum, i n	танин
tarsus	tarsus, i m	предплюсна, хрящ века
tea	species, ei f	сбор (трав), чай
teacher	doctor, oris m	учитель
tear	lacrima, ae f	слеза
temple, time	tempus, oris n	висок, время
temporal	temporalis, e	височный
ten	decem	десять
tendon	tendo, inis m	сухожилие
tensor muscle	tensor, oris m	напрягающая мышца
terminal	terminalis, e	терминальный, конечный
testicle	testis, is m	яичко, семенник
test-tube	vitrum, i n	склянка, пробирка
thalamus	thalamus, i m	таламус (зрительный бугор)
therapeutics	therapeutica, ae f	терапевтика, наука о лечении болезней, наука о терапии
therapy	therapia, ae f	терапия
thick	spissus, a, um	густой
thigh-bone	femur, oris n	бедренная кость, бедро
thiosulphate	thiosulfas, atis m	тиосульфат
third	tertius, a, um	третий

thirteen	tredecium	тринадцать
thirty	triginta	тридцать
thoracic	thoracicus, a, um	грудной
three	tres, tria	три
three times a day	ter in die	три раза в день
thumb	pollex, icis m	большой палец кисти
thymus	thymus, i n	вилочковая железа
thyrohyoid	thyrohyoideus, a, um	щито-подъязычный
thyroid	thyreoideus, a, um	щитовидный
tibial	tibialis, e	большеберцовый
tincture	tinctura, ae f	настойка
tip	apex, icis m	верхушка, кончик
to, before, for, under	ad (с Acc.)	к, до, для, при
tongue	lingua, ae f	язык
tonic	tonicus, a, um	тонизирующий
tonics	tonica (remedia) n/pl	тонизирующие лекарственные средства
tonsil	tonsilla, ae f	миндалина
tooth	dens, ntis m	зуб
toxic, poisonous	toxicus, a, um	токсический, ядовитый
trachea	trachea, ae f	трахея
tract	tractus, us m	путь, тракт
transfusion	transfusio, onis f	переливание
transverse	transversus, a, um	поперечный
trapezoid	trapezoideus, a, um	трапециевидный
trauma	trauma, atis n	травма
tree	arbor, oris f	дерево, древо
triangular	triangularis, e	треугольный
triceps (muscle)	triceps, cipitis	трёхглавый
tricuspid	tricuspidalis, e	трёхстворчатый
trigeminal ([V cranial] nerve)	trigeminus, a, um	тройничный (нерв)
trochanter	trochanter, eris m	вертел
trochanteric	trochantericus, a, um	вертельный
trochlea	trochlea, ae f	блок
trochlear	trochlearis, e	блоковый, относящийся к блоку
trophic	trophicus, a, um	трофический
trunk	truncus, i m	туловище
tube	tuba, ae f	труба
tuber	tuber, eris n	бугор
tubercle	tuberculum, i n	бугорок
tuberosity	tuberositas, atis f	бугристость

tuberous	tuberosus, a, um	бугристый
tubule	tubulus, i m	трубочка
tumour	tumor, oris m	опухоль
turn	verto, ere III	поворачивать
turpentine	oleum Terebinthinae	терпентинное масло, скипидар
twelfth	duodecimus, a, um	двенадцатый
twelve	duodecim	двенадцать
twenty	viginti	двадцать
twice	bis	дважды
twisted bowels	volvulus, i m	заворот кишок
two	duo, duae, duo	два
tympanic	tympanicus, a, um	барабанный
U		
ulcer	ulcus, eris n	язва
ulcerated	exulceratus, a, um	изъязвлённый, покрытый язвами
ulcerative	ulcerosus, a, um	язвенный
ulnar	ulnaris, e	локтевой
under	sub (<i>with Acc., Abl.</i>)	под
under "poison" label	sub signo veneni, s.s.v.	с обозначением (на этикетке) "яд!" сокр. в рецептах
upper	superior, ius	
upper arm	brachium, i n	плечо
upper jaw	maxilla, ae f	верхняя челюсть
ureter	ureter, eris m	мочеточник
urethra	urethra, ae f	уретра
urethral	urethralis, e	уретральный
urgently	citissime	срочно, очень быстро
urinary	urinarius, a, um	мочевой
urinary bladder	vesica urinaria	мочевой пузырь
uterine	uterinus, a, um	маточный
uterus, womb	uterus, i m	матка
uvula	lingula, ae f	язычок
V		
vagina, sheath	vagina, ae f	влагалище
vaginal	vaginalis, e	влагалищный
vagus nerve (Xth cranial nerve)	vagus, a, um	блуждающий (нерв)
valerian	Valeriana, ae f	валериана
valve	valva, ae f	клапан (в целом)
valvule	valvula, ae f	заслонка, клапан
varicose	varicosus, a, um	варикозный

varicosis	varices, m, f /pl	варикозное расширение вен
varix, varicose vein	varix, icis m, f	варикозная вена
vascular	vascularis, e	сосудистый
vault	fornix, icis m	свод
vehicle	constituens, entis	конституенс
vein	vena, ae f	вена
venous	venosus, a, um	венозный, венный
ventral	ventralis, e	вентральный
ventricle	ventriculus, i m	желудочек, желудок
ventricular	ventricularis, e	желудочковый
venule	venula, ae f	маленькая вена
vermiform	vermiformis, e	червеобразный
vermifuge	anthelminthicus, a, um	глистогонный
vertebra	vertebra, ae f	позвонок
vertebral	vertebralis, e	позвоночный
vesicle	vesicula, ae f	везикула, пузырек
vesicular	vesicularis, e	везикулярный
vesiculose	vesiculosus, a, um	везикулярный, пузырчатый
vessel	vas, vasis n	сосуд
vestibular	vestibularis, e	преддверный, вестибулярный
vestibule	atrium, i n	преддверие
vestibule	vestibulum, i n	преддверие
villus	villus, i m	ворсинка
violet	Viola, ae f	фиалка
virus	virus, i n	яд, вирус
viscera	viscera, um n pl	внутренности, внутренние органы в брюшной полости
viscera	viscus, eris n	внутренность
vitamin	vitaminum, i n	витамин
vortex (of heart)	vortex, icis m	завиток (сердца)
W		
wall	paries, etis m	стена, стенка
water	aqua, ae f	вода
way	via, ae f	путь
weak	asthenicus, a, um	астенический, слабый
wedge-shaped	cuneiformis, e	клиновидный
well	bene	хорошо
wheat	Triticum, i n	пшеница
white	albus, a, um	белый
wide	latus, a, um	широкий
widest	latissimus, a, um	широчайший
width	latitudo, inis f	ширина

wild rose	Rosa, ae f	роза, шиповник
wing	ala, ae, f	крыло
with	cum (<i>with Abl.</i>)	с, вместе с; когда
within	intra (<i>with Acc.</i>)	внутри
wolf's bane	Arnica, ae f	арника
woman	femina, ae f	женщина
wound	vulnus, eris n	рана
wrist	carpus, i m	запястье
wymote	Althaea, ae f	алтей
X		
xeroform	Xeroformium, i n	ксероформ
Y		
year	annus, i m	год
Z		
zygomatic	zygomaticus, a, um	скуловой

LATIN-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

A		
a, ab (c Abl.)	from	от
abdomen, inis n	belly	живот, брюхо
abdominalis, e	abdominal	брюшной
abducens, entis	abducting (VI cranial) nerve	отводящий (нерв)
abductor, oris m	abductor (muscle)	отводящая (мышца)
abscessus, us m	boil	абсцесс, нарыв, гнойник
accessorius, a , um	accessory	добавочный
acetabulum, i n	cotyloid (cup-like) cavity	вертлужная впадина
acetylsalicylicus, a, um	acetylsalicylic	ацетилсалициловый
acidum, i n	acid	кислота
acquisitus, a, um	acquired	приобретенный
acromialis, e	acromial	акромиальный
acromion, i n	acromion	акромион
activatus, a, um	activated	активированный
actus, us m	act	акт, действие
acusticus, a, um	acoustic	акустический, слуховой
acutus, a , um	acute	острый
ad (c Acc.)	to, before, for, under	к, до, для, при
addo, ere III	add	добавлять
adductor, oris m	adductor	приводящая (мышца)
adiposus, a , um	adipose, fatty	жирный, жировой
aditus, us m	entrance	вход
adjuvans, antis	auxiliary	помогающий, вспомогательный
adjuvo, are I	help	помогать
ad lib. = ad libitum	at pleasure	по желанию, сколько угодно, в любом количестве
Adonis, idis m,f	lychnis	адонис, горицвет
Adonisidum, i, n	adoniside*	адонизид
Adrenalinum, i, n	epinephrine	адреналин
adultus, a, um	adult	взрослый, совершеннолетний
ad us. ext. = ad usum externum	for external use	для наружного употребления
ad us. int. = ad usum internum	for internal use	для внутреннего употребления
ad us. propr. = ad usum proprium	for the personal use of the physician	для личного (собственного) употребления
aeger, gra, grum	sick	заболевший, нездоровый
aeger, gri m	patient	больной

aegrotus, a, um	ill	больной
aequalis, e	equal	равный
aer, aeris, m	air	воздух
Aeronum, i n	aeron*	аэрон
aesculapius, i m	physician	эскулап
aetas, atis f	age	возраст
aeternus, a, um	eternal	вечный
aether, eris m	ether, ester	эфир
aethereus, a, um	ethereal	эфирный
aethylicus, a, um	ethyl	этиловый
Aethylum, i n	ethyl	этил
Aethylmorphinum, i n	ethyl morphine	этилморфин
Aevitum, i n	aevit	азвит
afferens, entis	afferent	афферентный (центростремительный), приносящий
agito, are I	to stir	взбалтывать
ala, ae, f	wing	крыло
alaris, e	alar	крыльный
albumen, inis n	albumin	белок
albus, a, um	white	белый
alcohol, olis n	alcohol	алкоголь
alcoholicus, a, um	alcoholic	алкогольный
alimentarius, a, um	alimentary	алиментарный, пищевой
allergicus, a, um	allergic	аллергический
Aloe, es f	aloe	алоэ, сабур
alter, era, erum	another	другой
alternans, antis	alternate	чередующийся
Althaea, ae f	wymote	алтей
altus, a, um	tall	высокий
alumen, inis n	alum (sg)	квасцы (алюминиево-калиевые)
alveolaris, e	alveolar	альвеолярный
alveolus, i m	socket	альвеола, ячейка, луночка
amarus, a, um	bitter	горький
Amidochloridum, i n	amidochloride	амидохлорид
Amidopyrinum, i n	amidopyrine	амидопирин
Aminazinum, i n	aminazine	аминазин
ammoniatus, a, um	ammoniac	аммиачный
amnion, i n	amnion	амнион
amorphus, a, um	amorphous	аморфный
Ampicillinum, i n	ampicillin	ампициллин
ampulla, ae f	ampoule	ампула

amputatio, onis f	amputation	ампутация
Amylum, i n	starch	крахмал
ana	equally	поровну, по
Anaesthesinum, i n	anesthesin	анестезин
analís, e	anal	анальный
analysis, is, f	analysis	анализ
anamnesis, is f	case history	анамнез, воспоминание
anatomicus, a, um	anatomical	анатомический
aneurysma, atis n	aneurysm	аневризма
angioneuroticus, a, um	angioneurotic	ангионевротический
angulus, i m	angle	угол
animal, alis n	animal	животное
animalis, e	animal	животный
animus, i m	soul	дух, душа
Anisum, i n	anise	анис
ankylosis, is f	ankylosis	анкилоз
annus, i m	year	год
ante (с Acc)	before	до, раньше
ante cenam	before meals	перед едой
ante cibos	before meals	перед едой (ante cibum) сокр. а.с.
ante mortem	before death	перед смертью
antebrachium, i n	forearm	предплечье
anterior, ius	anterior, front	передний
anthelminthicus, a, um	vermifuge	глистогонный
anthrax, acis m	anthrax	сибирская язва
antiasthmaticus, a, um	antiasthmatic	противоастматический
antibioticum, i n	antibiotic	антибиотик
antidotum, i n	antidote	антидот, противоядие
antisepticus, a, um	antiseptic	антисептический
antrum, i n	antrum	пещера, полость
anulus, i m	ring	кольцо, ободок
anus, i m	anus	анус, задний проход
aorta, ae f	aorta	аорта
aorticus, a, um	aortic	аортальный
apertura, ae f	aperture	апертура, отверстие
apertus, a, um	open	открытый
apex, icis m	tip	верхушка, кончик
aphthae, arum f	1) aphtha, aphthae pl. 2) aphthous stomatitis	афты
Apomorphinum, i n	apomorphine	апоморфин
aponeurosis, is f	aponeurosis	апоневроз

appendix, icis f	appendix	аппендикс, придаток
aqua, ae f	water	вода
aqu(a)eductus, us m	aqueduct	водопровод
arachnoidea, ae f	arachnoid membrane	паутинная мозговая оболочка
arbor, oris f	tree	дерево, древо
arcuatus, a, um	arched	дугообразный
arcus, us m	arch	дуга
area, ae f	area	поле (кружок)
Arnica, ae f	wolf's bane	арника
ar(r)hythmia, ae f	arrhythmia	аритмия
arsenis, itis m	arsenic	арсенит
arteria, ae f	artery	артерия
arteriosus, a, um arterialis, e	arterial	артериальный
articularis, e	articular	суставной
articulatio, onis f	joint	сустав
arytenoideus, a, um	arytenoid	черпаловидный
ascendens, entis	ascending	восходящий
asper, era, erum	rough	шероховатый; суровый
asperitas, atis, f	roughness	шероховатость
asthenicus, a, um	weak	астенический, слабый
asthma, atis n	asthma (difficulty in breathing)	астма (удушье)
asthmaticus, a, um	asthmatic	астматический
atheroscleroticus, a, um	atherosclerotic	атеросклеротический
atlas, antis m	atlas, atlantes (pl)	атлант, шейный позвонок
atrium, i n	vestibule	преддверие
atrium cordis	atrium (of the heart)	предсердие
Atropinum, i n	atropine	атропин
auctor, oris m	author	автор
audio, ire IV	listen	слушать
auditivus, a, um	auditory, auditive	слуховой
auditus, us m	hearing	слух, способность слышат
aureus, a, um	gold(en)	золотой
auricula, ae f	auricle (of the ear)	ушная раковина, ушко
auricularis, e	auricular (relating to the ear or to the auricle of the heart)	ушной, ушковидный
auris, is f	ear	ухо
auscultatio, onis, f	auscultation	аускультация, выслушивание
autonomicus, a, um	autonomous	автономный
axillaris, e	axillary	подмышечный
axis, is m	axis	ось, II шейный позвонок

В		
bacca, ae f	berry	ягода
Barbitalum, i n	barbital, barbitone	барбитал
basilaris, e	basilar	базиллярный
basis, is f	base	основание, базис (основное средство в сложном рецепте)
Belladonna, ae f	great nightshade	белладонна, красавка
bene	well	хорошо
benignus, a, um	benign	доброкачественный,
benzoas,atis m	benzoate	бензоат
benzoicus, a, um	benzoic	бензойный
Benzylpenicillinum, i n	benzylpenicillin	бензилпенициллин
biceps, cipitis	biceps (muscle)	двуглавая мышца
bicuspidalis, e	bicuspid	двустворчатый
bifurcatio, onis f	bifurcation	бифуркация, раздвоение
biliaris, e	biliary	желчный, билиарный
bilifer, era, erum	biliferous	желчный, желчеотводящий
biliosus, a, um	bilious	желчный, желтушный
bini, ae, a	in twos	по два
bis	twice	дважды
bivalens, entis	bivalent	двухвалентный
biventer, tra, trum	digastric	двубрюшный (о мышце)
1.bolus, i f ; us f	1) bolus, very large pill 2) morsel	1) большая пилюля, пилюль весом больше 0,5 г 2)пищевой комок
bolus, i f	kaolin	белая глина, каолин (силикат алюминия)
bonum, i n	good	добро
bonus, a, um	good	хороший
boricus, a, um	boric	борный
brachium, i n	upper arm, shoulder	плечо
brevis, e	short	короткий
breviter	briefly	кратко
Bromcamphora, ae f	monobromated camphora	бромкамфора
bromidum, I n	bromide	бромид
bronchialis, e	bronchial	бронхиальный
bronchus, I m	bronchus	бронх
bucca, ae f	cheek	щека
buccalis, e	buccal; oral	щёчный, ротовой
buccinator, oris m	cheek muscle	букцинатор, щечная мышца
bulbus, I m	bulb, bulbus	луковица (клубневидное утолщение)
bulbus oculi	eyeball	глазное яблоко

bursa, ae f	pouch	сумка, мешок
C		
cacao n	cocoa (powder)	какао
c(a)ecus, a, um	blind	слепой
caecum, i n	blind gut	слепая кишка
cadaver, eris n	corpse	труп
caesareus, a, um	cesarean	царский, кесарев
calamus, i m	pen	перо (писчее)
calcaneus, a, um	calcaneal	пяточный
calcaneus, i m	heel bone	пяточная кость
calcar, aris n	calcar	шпора, напоминающий шпору отросток
calcificatio, onis f	calcification	кальцификация
calculous, a, um	calculous	калькулезный
calculus, i m	stone	камень
Calendula, ae f	marigold	календула, ноготки
calor, oris m	heat	теплота, жар
calvaria, ae f	skull-cap	крыша черепа, черепной свод
calx, calcis f	heel	пята, пятка
calyx, ycis m	cup	чашка, чашечка
camera, ae f	chamber	камера, полость
Camphora, ae f	camphor	камфора
canaliculus, i m	small canal	каналец
canalis, is m	channel	канал, проход, проток
cancer, cri m	cancer	канцер, рак
caninus, a, um dens caninus	canine	собачий, клыковый (зуб); клык
capillaris, e	capillary	капиллярный
capitulum, i n	capitulum	головка
capsula, ae f	capsula	капсула
caput, itis n	head	голова, головка
carbo, onis m	charcoal	уголь
carbonas, atis m	carbonate	карбонат
carcinoma, atis n	carcinoma	раковая опухоль, рак
carcinomatosus, a, um	cancerous	карциноматозный, раковы
cardiacus, a, um	cardiac	сердечный
Cardiovalenum, i n	cardiovalen*	кардиовален
caries, ei f	caries	кариес, костоеда
caroticus, a, um	carotid	сонный
carotis, tidis (arteria) f	carotid artery	сонная артерия
carpeus, a, um	carpal	запястный
carpus, i m	wrist	запястье

cartilagineus, a, um	cartilaginous	хрящевой
cartilago, inis f	cartilage	хрящ
cataracta, ae f	cataract	катаракта
catarrhalis, e	catarrhal	катаральный
causalis, e	causal	причинный
caute	carefully	осторожно
caverna, ae f	cave	полость, пещера, каверна
cavernosus, a, um	cavernous	пещеристый
cavitas, atis f	cavity	полость, впадина
cavum, i n	cavity, cistern	полость, впадина
cavus, a, um	hollow	полый, пустой, впалый
celer, eris, ere	quick	быстрый
celeriter	quickly	быстро
cellula, ae f	cell	клетка, ячейка
cellularis, e	cellular	клеточный
cementum, i n	cement (dental)	цемент (зубной)
centralis, e	central	центральный
cerebellaris, e	cerebellar	мозжечковый
cerebellum, i n	cerebellum	мозжечок
cerebralis, e	cerebral	мозговой, церебральный
cerebrospinalis, e	cerebrospinal	спинномозговой
cerebrum, i n	cerebrum, brain, encephalon	большой мозг
cervicalis, e	cervical	шейный
cervicobrachialis, e	cervicobrachial	шейно-плечевой
cervix, icis f	neck	шея, шейка
Chamomilla, ae f	chamomile	ромашка
chiasma, atis n	decussation	перекрест
Chininum, i n	quinine	хинин
Chinosolum, i n	chinosol*	хинозол
chirurgia, ae f	surgery	хирургия
chloridum, i n	chloride	хлорид
Chloroformium, i n	chloroform	хлороформ
Chlorophylliptum, i n	chlorophyllipt*	хлорофиллипт
chole, es f	bile	желчь
choledochus, a, um	bilious	желчный
chondrocytus, i m	chondrocyte*	хондроцит
chorda, ae f	cord	хорда, нить, струна
chronicus, a, um	chronic	хронический
cibus, i m	food	еда, пища
cicatrix, icis f	scar	рубец, шрам
ciliaris, e	ciliary	ресничный
cinereus, a, um	grey	серый
cingulum, i n	girdle	пояс

circularis, e	circular	круговой, циркулярный
circulus, i m	circle	круг
circumflexus, a, um	circumflex	оггибающий
cirrhosis, is f	cirrhosis	цирроз
cisterna, ae f	cistern	цистерна
citissime	urgently	срочно, очень быстро
cito	quickly	быстро
citras, atis m	citrate	цитрат
clavicula, ae f	collar-bone	ключица
clavicularis, e	clavicular	ключичный
coccygeus, a, um	coccygeal	копчиковый
coccyx, ygis m	coccyx	копчик
cochlea, ae f	cochlea	улитка (внутреннего уха)
cochlearis, e	cochlear	улиточный, относящийся к улитке
Codeinum, i n	codeine	кодеин
Coffeinum, i, n	caffeine	кофеин
Coffeinum(i) natrii benzoas(atis)	benzoate sodium	кофеин-бензоат натрия
Collargolum, i n	collargole	колларгол
collateralis, e	collateral	коллатеральный
collum, i n	neck	шея, шейка
colon, i n	colon	ободочная кишка
color, oris m	colour	цвет, окраска
columna, ae f	column	колонна, столб
coma, atis n	coma loss of consciousness	кома, полная потеря сознания
comitans, antis	accompanying	сопутствующий, сопровождающий
commissura, ae f	commissure	спайка
commotio, onis f	concussion	сотрясение
communicans, antis	communicant	соединяющий
communis, e	common	общий
complicatus, a, um	complicated	осложнённый
compositus, a, um	complex	сложный, ставной
cocncentratus, a, um	concentrated	концентрированный
concha, ae f	concha	раковина
concrementum, i n	concrement	конкремент
condylaris, e	condylar	мышцелковый
condylus, i m	condyle	мышцелок
congenitus, a, um	congenital	врождённый
congestivus, a, um	congestive	застойный
conicus, a, um	cone-shaped	конусовидный, конический

conjunctivus, a, um	connecting	соединительный, соединительнотканый
constituens, entis	vehicle	конституент
constrictor, oris m	constrictor	констриктор (мышца)
contra (<i>with Acc.</i>)	against	против, вопреки
contractura, ae f	contraction	контрактура, сведение (непроизвольное спастическое сокращение мышц)
Convallaria, ae f	lily of the valley	ландыш
convulsivus, a, um	spastic	конвульсивный
cor, cordis n	heart	сердце
Corazolum, i n	pentylentetrazol	коразол
cornea, ae f	cornea	роговица
corneus, a, um, cornealis, e	corneal corneal	роговой роговой
cornu, us n	horn	рог, рожок
corona, ae f	crown	коронка
coronarius, a, um	coronary	венечный
corpus, oris n	body	тело; организм
corrigen, entis	corrigent	исправляющий корригент
corrugator, oris m	corrugator muscle	сморщивающая (мышца)
cortex, icis m	cortex	кора, корковое вещество
corticalie, e	cortical	корковый
costa, ae f	rib	ребро
costalis, e	costal	рёберный
costarius, a, um	costal	рёберный
coxa, ae f	1. hip-bone 2.hip-joint	таз, бедро
cranialis, e	cranial	черепной, краниальный
cranium, i n	skull	череп
Crataegus, i f	hawthorn	боярышник
cremaster, eris m	cremaster muscle	кремастер, мышца поднимающая яичко
cribrosus, a, um	cribriform	решётчатый
cricoesophageus, a, um	cricoesophageal	перстнепищеводный
cricoideus, a, um	cricoid	перстневидный
crista, ae f	crest	гребень, гребешок
crouposus, a, um (cruposus)	croupous	крупозный
cruciatus, a, um	cross-shaped	скрещенный
cruciformis, e	cruciform	крестообразный
crus, cruris n	crus	голень, ножка
crystallisatus, a, um	crystalline	кристаллический
cuboideus, a, um	cuboidal, cubical	кубовидный, кубический

cum (<i>with Abl.</i>)	with	с, вместе с; когда
cumulo, are I	assemble	складывать, достигать
cuneiformis, e	wedge-shaped	клиновидный
cura, ae f	cure	лечение
curvatura, ae f	curve	кривизна
cusps, idis f	cusp	острие, створка
cutaneus, a, um	cutaneous	кожный
cuticula, ae f	cuticle	кутикула, кожица
cutis, is f	skin	кожа
cyanidum, i n	cyanide	цианид
cysta, ae f	cyst	киста
cysticus, a, um	cystic	пузырный, относящийся к мочевому или желчному пузырю
cystosus, a, um	cystous	кистозный
D		
D.= da, detur, dentur	give out	дай, выдай, пусть будет дано (сокр. в рецептах)
de	about	о, об
decem	ten	десять
deciduus	milk, baby, deciduous, first, primary, temporary	отпадающий, молочный (о зубе)
decoctum, i n	decoction	отвар
decubitus, us m	bed-sore	пролежень
decussatio, onis f	decussation	перекрест
deformans, antis	deforming	деформирующий, обезображивающий
deltoideus, a, um	deltoid	дельтовидный
dens, ntis m	tooth	зуб
dentalis, e	dental	зубной
dentinum, i n	dentine	дентин
depressor, oris m	depressor muscle	опускатель (мышца)
depuratus, a, um	depurated	очищенный
descendens, entis	descending	нисходящий
destillatus, a, um	distilled	дистиллированный
dexter, tra, trum	right	правый
diabetes, ae m	diabetes	диабет
diabeticus, a, um	diabetic	диабетический
diagnosis, is, f	diagnosis	диагноз
Diaethylstilboestrolum i, n	diethylstilbestrol, estrostiben	диэтилстильбэстрол
diametrum, i n	diameter	диаметр, поперечник
diaphragma, atis n	diaphragm	диафрагма
diarrhoea, ae f	diarrhea	понос

Dibazolum, i n	dibazole*	дибазол
Dichlothiazidum, i n	hydrochlorothiazide dichlothiazide	дихлотиазид
differentia, ae f	distinction	различие
diffusus, a, um	diffuse	диффузный, разлитой
digastricus, a, um	biventral	двубрюшный
digitalis, e	digital	пальцевой
digitatus, a, um	finger-shaped	пальцевидный
digitus, i m	finger, toe	палец
dilatatio, onis f	dilatation	дилатация, расширение
dilatator, oris m	m.dilator	расширяющая мышца
dilutus, a, um	diluted	разведённый, разбавленный
discus, i m	disk	диск
disseminatus, a, um	disseminated	диссеминированный
distalis, e	distal	дистальный
diverticulum, i n	diverticulum	дивертикул, выпячивание
div. in p. aeq(u).= divide in partes aequales	divide into equal parts	раздели на равные части (сокр. в рецептах)
divido, ere III	to divide	разделять
do, are I	give	давать, выдавать
doctor, oris m	teacher	учитель
dolor, oris m	pain	боль
domesticus, a, um	domestic	домашний
dorsalis, e	dorsal	спинной, тыльный, дорсальный
dorsum, i n	back	спина, тыл
dosis, is f	dose	доза
dosis curativa	curative dose	лечебная доза, терапевтическая доза
dosis letalis	lethal dose	летальная доза, смертельная доза (доза лекарства и др., могущая вызвать смерть)
dosis letalis minima	minimum lethal dose	минимальная смертельная (летальная) доза
dosis maxima	maximum dose	максимальная доза, которую может принять человек без опасности для здоровья
dosis refracta	broken dose, divided dose, fractional dose	дробная доза, уменьшенная, назначается многократно через краткие промежутки времени
dragee	dragee	драже

ductulus, is m	ductile	проточек
ductus, us m	duct	проток
dulcis, e	sweet	сладкий
duo, duae, duo	two	два
duodecim	twelve	двенадцать
duodecimus, a, um	the twelfth	двенадцатый
duodenalis, e	duodenal	дуоденальный, двенадцатиперстный
duodenojejunalis, e	duodenojejunal	двенадцатиперстно- тощекишечный
duodenum, i n	duodenum	двенадцатиперстная кишка
duplex, icis	duplex, double	двойной, сдвоенный
dura mater	dura mater	твёрдая мозговая оболочка
durus, a, um	hard	твёрдый
dyspnoë, ës f (dyspnoea)	dyspnea, shortness of breath	диспноэ, отдышка
Е		
ectasia, ae f	dilatation	эктазия - расширение
eczema, atis n	eczema	экзема
efferens, entis	efferent	эфферентный, выносящий, выводящий
ego	I	я
eminens, entis	bulging	выдающийся, выступающий
eminentia, ae f	eminence	возвышение
emphysema, atis m	emphysema	эмфизема, увеличение количества воздуха в органах
emplastrum, i n	plaster	пластырь
emulsum, i n, emulsion, onis f	emulsion	эмульсия
enamelum, i n	enamel	эмаль
encephalon, i n	brain	головной мозг
endemicus, a, um	endemic	эндемический, свойственный данной области, местный
epidemicus, a, um	epidemic	эпидемический
epigastricus, a, um	epigastric	надчревный
epiglottis, idis f	epiglottis	надгортанник
epiphysialis, e	epiphysial	эпифизарный
epiphysis, is f	epiphysis	эпифиз
epithelialis, e	epithelial	эпителиальный
equator, oris m	equator	экватор
erector, oris m	erector muscle	выпрямитель (мышца)

esophageus, a, um	esophageal	пищеводный
esophagus, i m	esophagus, gullet	пищевод
et	and	и
ethmoidalis, e	ethmoid	решетчатый
Eucalyptus, i f	gum-tree	эвкалипт
exstirpation, onis f	extirpation	экстирпация, искоренение
extensio, onis f	extension	разгибание, растягивание
extensor, oris m	extensor muscle	разгибатель (мышца)
extensus, a, um	extended	вытянутый
externus, a, um	external	наружный
extractio, onis f	extraction	извлечение
extractum, i n	extract	экстракт (вытяжка)
extrauterinus, a, um	extrauterine	внематочный
extremitas, atis f	1. extremity, limb, 2. end	конец
exulceratus, a, um	ulcerated	изъязвлённый, покрытый язвами
F		
f., F. = fiat, fiant	let there be made; so that there is	пусть будет сделано, пусть будут сделаны (сделай, приготовь!) сокр. в рецептах
facialis, e	facial	лицевой, поверхностный
facies, ei f	surface	лицо, поверхность
falx, falcis f	sickle	серп, коса, серповидное образование
Farfara, ae f	coltsfoot	мать-и-мачеха
fascia, ae f	fascia	фасция
fasciculus, i m	fascicle	пучок
fauces, ium f	fauces	зев
febrillis, e	feverish	лихорадочный
febris, is f	fever	лихорадка
fel, fellis n	bile	желчь
felleus, a, um	biliary	желчный
femina, ae f	woman	женщина
femininus, a, um	feminine	женский
femur, oris n	thigh-bone	бедренная кость, бедро
fetus, us m, foetus, i m	fetus, f(o)etus	плод (утробный, от 9-й недели до рождения)
fibra, ae f	fibre	волокно
fibrosus, a, um	fibrous	фиброзный, волокнистый
fibula, ae f	calf-bone	малоберцовая кость
fibularis, e	peroneal	малоберцовый
finio, ire IV	finish	оканчивать, заканчивать, кончать

fissura, ae f	fissure	щель
flavus, a, um	yellow	жёлтый
flexio, onis f	flexion	сгибание
flexor, oris m	flexor, m.flexor	сгибатель (мышца)
flexura, ae f	flexure	изгиб
flos, floris m	flower	цветок; цветущее состояние
fluidus, a, um	fluid	жидкий
folium, i n	leaf	лист, листок
folliculus, i m	follicle	фолликул, пузырёк
fonticulus, i m	fontanelle	родничок
foramen, inis n	opening	отверстие
forma, ae f	form	форма
fornix, icis m	vault	свод
fossa, ae f	hollow	ямка, яма
fovea, ae f	depression	ямка, углубление
foveola, ae f	minute fovea, minute pit	ямочка
fractura, ae f	fracture	перелом
Frangula, ae f	buckthorn	крушина
frenulum, i n	frenulum	уздечка
frequens, entis	frequent	частый, учащенный
frons, frontis f	forehead	лоб
frontalis, e	frontal	лобный
fructus, us m	fruit	плод (раст.)
functio, onis f	function	действие, функция; исполнение; обязанность
fundus, i m	bottom	дно
fungiformis, e	fungoid	грибовидный
fusiformis, e	fusiform, spindle-shaped	веретеновидный, веретенообразный
G		
Galanthus, i m	snowdrop	подснежник
ganglion, i n	ganglion	ганглий (нервный узел)
gaster, tris f	stomach	желудок
gastricus, a, um	gastric	желудочный
gastroduodenalis, e	gastroduodenal	желудочно- двенадцатиперстно- кишечный
generalis, e	general	генеральный, общий
geniohyoideus, a, um	geniohyoid	подбородочно- подъязычный
genitalis, e	genital	половой, генитальный
genu, us n	knee	колени
genus, eris n	1.family, kin 2.birth, origin, stock 3.sort, kind 4.genus	род

	5.gender	
gigantocellularis, e	giant-cell (attr.)	гигантоклеточный
gingiva, ae f	gum	десна
gingivalis, e	gingival	десневой
glandula, ae f	gland	железа
glaucoma, atis n	glaucoma	глаукома
globulus, i n	globule, small pill, cotton pellet	шарик
glomus, eris n	glomus, glome	клубок, гломус (сосудистый)
glossopharyngeus, a, um (nervus)	glossopharyngeal nerve, 9th cranial nerve	языкоглоточный
glottis, idis f	glottis	голосовая щель, собственный голосовой аппарат
gluconas, atis m	gluconate	глюконат
Glucosum, i n	glucose	глюкоза
gluteus, a, um	gluteal	ягодичный
glycerophosphas, atis m	glycerophosphate	глицерофосфат
gramma, atis n	gram, gramme	грамм
granulum, i n	granule	гранула, крупинка
gutta, ae f	drop	капля
gyrus, i m	convolution	извилина
Н		
habitus, us m	appearance	внешность, наружность
hallux, ucis, m	big toe	большой палец стопы
hamatus, a, um	hook-shaped	крючковидный
hamulus, i m	hooklet	крючок (крючковидный отросток)
Helianthus, i m	sunflower	подсолнечник
hemispherium, i n	hemisphere	полушарие
hepar, atis n	liver	печень
hepaticus, a, um	hepatic	печёночный
herba, ae f	herb	лекарственная трава
hernia, ae f	hernia	грыжа
hernialis, e	hernial	грыжевой
heroicus, a, um	powerful	сильнодействующий
herpes, etis m	herpes	герпес, пузырьковый лишай
hiatus, us m	gap	щель, расщелина
hilus, i m	hilus	ворота
hippocampus, i m	hippocamp(us)	гиппокамп
hippocraticus, a, um	Hippocratic	гиппократов
Hippophae, es f	sea buckthorn	облепиха
hirudo, inis f	leech	пиявка
Homatropinum, i n	homatropine	гоматропин

homo, inis m	man	человек
honor, oris m	honour	честь, почестъ
horizontalis, e	horizontal	горизонтальный
humeralis, e	humeral	плечевой
humerus, i m	shoulder bone	плечевая кость
humor, oris m	body-fluid	влага
hydrobromidum, i n	hydrobromide	гидробромид
hydrocarbonas, atis m	hydrogen carbonate	гидрокарбонат
Hydrochloridum, i n, Hydrogenium, i n	hydrochloride hydrogen	гидрохлорид водород
hydroiodidum, i n	hydroiodide	гидроиодид
hydrotartras, atis m	hydrotartrate	гидротартрат
hydroxydum, i n	hydroxide	гидроксид
hyoideus, a, um	hyoid	подъязычный
Hypericum, i n	St. John's wort	зверобой
hypogastricus, a, um	hypogastric	подчервный
hypoglossus, a, um	hypoglossal	подъязычный (нерв)
hypophysis, is f	hypophysis	гипофиз
I		
Ichthyolum, i n	ichthammol	ихтиол
icterus, i m	jaundice	желтуха
ile, ilis n, ilia, ilium pl	iliac region	подвздошная область
ileus, m	bowel (intestinal) obstruction	непроходимость кишечника
iliacus, a, um	iliac	подвздошный
iliohypogastricus, a, um	iliohypogastric	подвздошно-подчервный
impressio, onis f	impression	вдавление
in	in	в, на (с Acc. на вопрос куда?; с Abl. на вопрос где?)
incisio, onis f	incision	надрез, насечка
incisivus, a, um	incisor (adj.)	резцовый
incisura, ae f	incisure	вырезка
index, icis m	forefinger	указатель, указательный палец
in die, de die	daily	ежедневно
infans, ntis m, f	child	ребёнок
inferior, ius	lower	нижний
inflammatio, onis f	inflammation	воспаление
inflammatorius, a, um	inflammatory	воспалительный
infraclavicularis, e	infraclavicular	подключичный
infrahyoideus, a, um	infrahyoid	подподъязычный
infrajugularis, e	infrajugular	подъяремный
infraorbitalis, e	infraorbital	подглазничный

infundibulum, i n	funnel	воронка
infusum, i n	infusion	настой
inguen, inis n	groin	пах
inguinalis, e	inguinal	паховый
injectio, onis f	injection	инъекция
insanabilis, e	incurable	неизлечимый
insufficientia, ae f	insufficiency	недостаточность
integer, gra, grum	intact	неповрежденный
intercostalis, e	intercostal	межреберный
interlobularis, e	interlobular	междольковый
intermedius, a, um	intermediary	средний, промежуточный
intermittens, entis	intermittent	перемежающийся, прерывистый
intermuscularis, e	intermuscular	межмышечный
internus, a, um	internal	внутренний
interosseus, a, um	interosseous	межкостный
interstitialis, e	interstitial	промежуточный
intervertebralis, e	intervertebral	межпозвоночный
intestinalis, e	intestinal	кишечный
intestinum, i n	intestine	кишка
intestinum crassum	large intestine	толстая кишка
intestinum tenue	small intestine	тонкая кишка
intra (<i>with Acc.</i>)	within	внутри
intraarticularis, e	intra-articular	внутрисуставной
intramuscularis, e	intramuscular	внутримышечный
inversus, a, um	inverted	перевернутый, извращенный
iodidum, i n	iodide	йодид
iris, idis f	iris	радужка, радужная оболочка
ischiadicus, a, um	ischadic	седалищный
ischium, i n	ischium	седалище
isotonicus, a, um	isotonic	изотонический
isthmus, i n	isthmus	перешеек
J		
jejunalis, e	jejunal	относящийся к тощей кишке
jejunum, i n	jejunum	тощая кишка
jugularis, e	jugular	ярёмный
jugum, i n	ridge; yoke	возвышение
junctura, ae f	juncture	соединение
Juniperus, i f	juniper	можжевельник
juvans, antis	auxiliary	вспомогательный

juvenilis, e	juvenile	юношеский, молодой
L		
labium, i n	lip	губа
labyrinthicus, a, um	labyrinthine	лабиринтный
labyrinthus, i m	labyrinth	лабиринт, внутреннее ухо
lac, lactis n	milk	молоко
lactas, atis m	lactate	лактат
lacrima, ae f	tear	слеза
lacrimalis, e	lacrimal	слёзный
laesus, a, um	damaged; affected	поврежденный
lamella, ae f	plate	пластинка
lamina, ae f	plate	пластинка
larynx, yngis m	larynx	гортань
lateralis, e	lateral	боковой
Latinus, a, um	Latin	латинский
latissimus, a, um	the widest	широчайший
latitudo, inis f	width	ширина
latus, eris n	side	сторона
latus, a, um	wide	широкий
laxans, antis	laxative	слабительный
Leonurus, i m	motherwort	пустырник
lens, lentis f	lens	хрусталик
letalis, e	lethal, fatal, mortal	смертельный
levator, oris m	levator	подниматель, поднимающая мышца
lien, enis m	spleen	селезёнка
ligamentum, i n	ligament	связка
linea, ae f	line	линия, черта
lingua, ae f	tongue	язык
lingualis, e	lingual	язычный
lingula, ae f	uvula	язычок
linimentum, i n	liniment	линимент
Linum, i n	flax	лен
liquor, oris m	fluid	жидкость, раствор
liquor Ammonii anisatus (i)	liquid ammonia anise dripped	нашатырно-анисовые капл
lobaris, e	lobar	долевой
lobulus, i m	lobe	долька
localis, e	local	местный
locus, i m	place, spot	место
longitudinalis, e	longitudinal	продольный
longus, a, um	long	длинный
lumbalis, e	lumbar	поясничный

lumbosacralis, e	lumbosacral	пояснично-крестцовый
lumbus, i m	loin	поясница
lymphaticus, a, um	lymphatic	лимфатический
M		
M. = misce	mix!	смешай!
magnus, a, um	great, large	большой, больший
major, jus	greater	большой
malignus, a, um	malignant	злокачественный
malus, a, um	bad	плохой, худой
mamma, ae f	breast	молочная железа, грудь
mandibula, ae f	lower jaw	нижняя челюсть
mandibularis e	mandibular	нижнечелюстной
manubrium, i n	presternum	рукоятка
manus, us f	hand	кисть руки, рука
margo, inis m	border	край, граница
masculinus, a, um	masculine	мужской
masseter, eris m	masseter (muscle)	жевательная мышца
masticatorius, a, um	chewing	жевательный
mastoideus, a, um	mastoid	сосцевидный
mater, tris f	mother, mater	мать, мозговая оболочка
matrix, icis f	matrix	ложе, основание
maxilla, ae f	upper jaw	верхняя челюсть
maxillaris, e	maxillary	верхнечелюстной
maximus, a, um	greatest	наибольший, большой
meatus, us m	passage	проход, ход
medialis, e	medial	средний, медиальный
medianus, a, um	median	срединный
mediastinalis, e	mediastinal	средостенный
mediastinum, i n	mediastinum	средостение
medicamentum, i n	drug	лекарство
medicina, ae f	medicine	медицина
medicinalis, e	medicinal	лекарственный
medicus, i m	physician	врач
medius, a, um	middle	средний
medulla, ae f	marrow	мозговое вещество
medulla oblongata	rachidian bulb	продолговатый мозг
medulla ossium	bone marrow	костный мозг
medulla spinalis	spinal marrow	спинной мозг
medullaris, e	medullary	мозговой
mel, mellis n	honey	мёд
melior, ius	best	лучший
membrana, ae f	membrane	мембрана, перепонка
membranaceus, a, um	membranaceous	перепончатый

membranula, ae f	film	плёнка
membrum, i n	limb	конечность, член
memoria, ae f	memory	память
meninx, ngis f	coat of brain	мозговая оболочка
mens, mentis f	mind, intellect	ум
mentalis, e	mental	подбородочный
Mentha, ae f	mint	мята
Mentholum, i n	menthol	ментол
mentum, i n	chin	подбородок
metacarpus, i m	metacarpus	пясть
metastasis, is f	metastasis	метастаз
metastaticus, a, um	metastatic	мета статический
Methylenum coeruleum	methylene blue	метиленовый синий
Methyl salicylas (atis), m	methyl salicylate*	метилсалицилат
Methyloestradiolum, i n	methylestradiol*	метилэстрадиол
Millefolium, i n	milfoil	тысячелистник
minimus, a, um	smallest	наименьший, минимальный
minor, minus	lesser	малый, меньший
misceo, ere II	mix	мешать, смешивать
mitralis, e	mitral	митральный, двустворчатый
mixtura, ae f	mixture	микстура
mixtus, a, um	mixed	смешанный
mobilis, e	movable	подвижный, блуждающий
molaris, e	molar (attr.)	большой коренной (зуб), моляр
mollis, e	soft	мягкий
morbus, i m	disease, malady, illness, sickness	болезнь, заболевание
mors, mortis f	death	смерть
mortuus, a, um	dead	мёртвый, умерший
motorius, a, um	motor (attr.)	моторный, двигательный
mucilago, inis f	mucilage	слизь (лек.ф.)
mucosus, a, um	mucous	слизистый
mucus, i m	mucus	слизь
muscularis, e	muscular	мышечный
musculus, i m	muscle	мышца
mylohyoideus, a, um	mylohyoid	челюстно-подъязычный
myocardium, i n	myocardium	миокард
N		
narcosis, is f	anesthesia	наркоз
Naphthalanum, i n	naphthalan*	нафталан

naris, is f	nostril	ноздря
nasalis, e	nasal	носовой
nasociliaris, e	nasociliary	носоресничный
nasolacrimalis, e	nasolacrimal	носослёзный
nasus, i m	nose	нос
natalis, e	natal	относящийся к рождению, родной
natus, a, um	born	рожденный
necrosis, is f	necrosis	некроз, омертвление
necroticus, a, um	necrotic	омертвелый, омертвевший
neonatus, a, um	newborn	новорождённый
neoplasma, atis n	new growth	новообразование, опухоль
ne repetatur, ne repet. (сокр. в рецептах)	do not repeat	не повторять, т.е. не приготавливать повторно предписанное в рецепте и уже один раз приготовленное лекарство
nervosus, a, um	nervous	нервный, богатый нервами
nervus, i m	nerve	нерв
neuter, tra, trum	neuter	средний (род)
niger, gra, grum	black	чёрный, тёмный
nitens, entis	brilliant	блестящий
nitras, atis m	nitrate	нитрат
nitris, itis m	nitrite	нитрит
Nitrogenium, i n	nitrogen	азот
nodulus, i m	nodule	узелок
nodus, i m	node	узел
nomen, inis n	name	название, имя
non	not	не
nonus, a, um	the ninth	девятый
notus, a, um	known	известный
novem	nine	девять
nucha, ae f	nape	выя
nuclearis, e	nuclear	ядерный
nucleus, i m	nucleus	ядро
numerus, i m	number	число
nutricius, a, um	nutritious	питательный
nutriens, entis	nutrient	относящийся к питанию, доставляющий пищу, питающий
nux, nucis f	nut	орех
O		
obductus, a, um	coated	покрытый оболочкой
oblata, ae f	cachet	капсула, облатка

obliquus, a, um	oblique	косой, наклонный
oblongatus, a, um	oblong	продолговатый
occipitalis, e	occipital	затылочный
occipitofrontalis, e	occipitofrontal	затылочно-лобный
occipitotemporalis, e	occipitotemporal	затылочно-височный
occiput, itis n	occiput	затылок
octavus, a, um	the eighth	восьмой
octo	eight	восемь
Octoestrolum, i n	octestrol*	октэстрол
ocularis, e	ocular	окулярный, глазной
oculomotorius, a, um	oculomotor(ius)	глазодвигательный
oculus, i m	eye	глаз
oedema, atis n	edema	отёк
oedematosus, a, um	edematous	эдематозный, отечный
oesophageus, a, um	esophageal	пищеводный
oesophagus, i m	esophagus	пищевод
officina, ae f	drugstore	мастерская, аптека
olecranon, i n	elbow process	локтевой отросток
oleosus, a, um	oily	масляный
oleum, i n	oil	масло
oleum aethereum	essential oil	эфирное масло
oleum camphoratum	camphorated oil	камфорное (камфарное) масло
oleum jecoris Aselli	cod-liver-oil	рыбий жир
oleum Morruae = oleum jecoris Aselli	cod-liver-oil	рыбий жир
oleum Helianthi	sunflower oil	подсолнечное масло
oleum Olivarum	olive oil	оливковое масло
oleum Paraffini = oleum Vaselinei	liquid paraffin	вазелиновое масло
oleum Persicorum	peach oil	персиковое масло
oleum Ricini	castor oil	касторовое масло
oleum Terebinthinae	turpentine	терпентинное масло, скипидар
oleum Vaselinei sive Paraffinum liquidum	liquid paraffin	вазелиновое масло, жидкий парафин
olfactorius, a, um	olfactory	обонятельный
Oliva, ae f	olive	олива (плод)
omentum, i n	omentum	сальник
omni bihora (omn.bih.)	every two hours	каждые два часа
omni hora (omn. hor.)	every hour	каждый час
omohyoideus, a, um	scapulohypoglossal *	лопаточно-подъязычный
ophthalmica (remedia), n/pl	ophthalmic remedies	глазные лекарственные средства

ophthalmicus, a, um	ophthalmic	глазной
opticus, a, um	optic	зрительный, оптический
optimus, a, um	best	наилучший
oralis, e	oral	ротовой
orbicularis, e	orbicular	орбикулярный, круговой, кольцевой
orbita, ae f	eye socket	глазница
orbitalis, e	orbital	глазничный
organismus, i m	organism	организм
organum, i n	organ	орган
orotas, atis m	orotate	оротат
orthodontia, ae f	orthodontics	ортодонтия
os, oris n	mouth	рот
os, ossis n	bone	кость
osseus, a, um	bony	костный
ostium, i n	mouth	отверстие, устье
ovalis, e	oval	овальный
ovarium, i n	ovary	яичник
ovum, i n	egg cell	яйцо, яйцеклетка
oxydulatus, a, um	suboxide, protoxide	закисный, закись
oxydum, i n	oxide	оксид
P		
p.aeq. = partes aequales	in equal parts	в равных частях, равными частями сокр. в рецептах)
palatinus, a, um	palatine, palatal	нёбный
palatoglossus, a, um	palatoglossal *	нёбно-язычный
palatum, i n	palate	небо
palmaris, e	palmar	ладонный
palpebra, ae f	eyelid	веко
pancreas, atis n	pancreas	поджелудочная железа
papilla, ae f	nipple, papilla	сосок, сосочек
papillaris, e	papillary	папиллярный
paralysis, is f	paralysis	паралич
paramnesia, ae f	false recollection	парамнезия, псевдовоспоминания
parasacralis, e	parasacral	парасакральный, окологрестцовый, расположенный около крестцовой кости
parasternalis, e	parasternal	окологрудинный
parathyroideus, a, um	parathyroid(al)	околощитовидный
parenchyma, atis n	parenchyma	паренхима
paresis, is f	partial paralysis	парез
paries, etis m	wall	стена, стенка

parietalis, e	parietal	теменной, пристеночный
parietooccipitalis, e	parietooccipital	теменно-затылочный
parodontium, paradentium, i n	periodontium	пародонт
paroticus, a, um	parotic	паротидный, околоушный
parotis, tidis f	parotid gland	околоушная железа
pars, partis f	part, portion	часть, сторона
partialis, e	partial	частичный
parvus, a um	small, little	малый
pasta, ae f	paste	паста
pastillus, i m	lozenge	лекарственная пастилка
patella, ae f	knee-cap	надколенник
patellaris, e	patellar	пателлярный
pecten, inis n	crest	гребень
pectoralis, e	pectoral	грудной
pectus, oris n	chest	грудь
pelvinus, a, um	pelvic	тазовый
pelvicus, a, um	pelvic	тазовый
pelvis, is f	pelvis	таз, лоханка
pelvis renalis	renal pelvis	почечная лоханка
perforans, antis	perforating	прободающий
periarterialis, e	periarterial	периартериальный, вокругартериальный
perineum, i n	perineum, fork	промежность
periodontium, i n	peridental membrane	периодонт, надкостница зуба
periosteum, i n	periosteum	надкостница
peritoneum, i n	peritoneum	брюшина
perivascularis, e	perivascular	периваскулярный, вокругсосудистый
peroneus, a, um	peroneal	малоберцовый
peroralis, e, per os	by mouth, through the mouth, per os	пероральный
peroxydum, i n	peroxide	пероксид
Persicum, i n	peach	персик
pes, pedis m	foot	стопа, нога
petrosus, a, um	petrous	каменистый
phalanx, ngis f	phalanx	фаланга
pharmacia, ae f	pharmaceutics	фармация
pharmacon, i n	drug	лекарство
pharyngeus, a, um	pharyngeal	глоточный
pharynx, ngis m	pharynx	глотка
Phenylis salicylas (atis), m	phenyl salicylate	фенилсалицилат

phosphas, atis m	phosphate	фосфат
pia mater, tris f	pia mater	мягкая мозговая оболочка
pilula, ae f	pill	пилюля
piperitus, a, um	pepper (adj.)	перечный
pituitarius, a, um	pituitary	питуитарный
planta, ae f	sole (of the foot); plant	подошва; растение
plantaris, e	plantar	подошвенный
planum, i n	plane	плоскость
planus, a, um	flat	плоский
plasma, atis n	plasma	плазма
platysma, atis n	platysma	платизма
plexus, us m	plexus	сплетение
plica, ae f	fold	складка
Plumbum, I n	lead	свинец
pneumonia, ae f	pneumonia	пневмония
pollex, icis m	thumb	большой палец кисти
polypus, i m	polyp	полип
pons, pontis m	bridge	мост, образование, подобное мосту
porta, ae f	gate	ворота
post (<i>with Acc.</i>)	1.behind 2.after	1.позади, за, 2.после, спуст
post cibos (p.c.)	postcibal, after meals, after eating	после еды
posterior, ius	posterior	задний
postganglionaris, e	postganglionic	постганглионарный
praecentralis, e	precentral	прецентральный, предцентральный
praemolaris, e	bicuspid	малый коренной зуб, премоляр
praescriptio, onis f	prescription	рецепт
primus, a, um	the first	первый
pro (<i>with Abl.</i>)	for	для, за
processus, us m	process	отросток
pro die	per day, daily	в день, в сутки
profundus, a, um	deep	глубокий
prognosis, is f	prognosis	прогноз
pronatio, onis f	pronation	пронация, поворот ладони вниз
pronator, oris m	pronator (muscle)	пронатор
prophylaxis, is f	prevention of disease	профилактика
propionas, atis m	propionate *	пропионат
proprius, a, um	proper	собственный
prostata, ae f	prostate gland	предстательная железа
prostaticus, a, um	prostatic	предстательный

protuberantia, ae f	protuberance	выступ, бугор
proximalis, e	proximal	проксимальный
pruritus, us m	itch	зуд кожи или слизистых оболочек
psoas, atis m	psoas (muscle)	поясничная (мышца)
pterygoideus, a, um	pterygoid, wing-shaped	крыловидный
pterygopalatinus, a, um	pterygopalatine	крыло-небный
pubes, is f	pubis	лобок
pulmo, onis m	lung	легкое
pulmonalis, e	pulmonary	легочный
pulpa, ae f	pulp	пульпа, мякоть
pulsus, us m	pulse	пульс
pulvis, eris m	powder	порошок
punctio, onis f	puncture	пункция, прокол
pupilla, ae f	pupil	зрачок
purificatus, a, um	purified	очищенный
purus, a, um	pure	чистый
pus, puris n	pus	гной
pyloricus, a, um	pyloric	привратниковый
pylorus, i m	pylorus	привратник, пилорус
pyramidalis, e	pyramidal	пирамидальный
pyramis, idis f	pyramid	пирамида
Q		
quadratus, a, um	square	квадратный
quadriceps, cipitis	quadriceps	четырёхглавый
quadrigeminus, a, um	quadrigeminal	четырёхпарный, четвертис
quantum, i n	how much, as much as	сколько
quantum libet, q.l.	as much as is desired	сколько угодно (в рецептах)
quantum satis, q.s.	as much as suffices	сколько нужно, сколько потребуется (в рецептах)
quantum sufficit, q.suff.	as much as suffices, as much as needed	сколько нужно (в рецептах)
quantum vis, q.v.	as much as you like	сколько угодно (в рецептах)
quaque hora, q.h.	every hour	каждый час (в рецептах)
quartus, a, um	the fourth	четвёртый
quasi	as if, as though	как будто, словно
quattuor	four	четыре
Quercus, us f	oak	дуб
quinque	five	пять
quintus, a, um	the fifth	пятый
R		
rabies, ei f	rabies	бешенство

radialis, e	radial	лучевой
radiatio, onis f	radiation	лучистость
radius, i m	radius, radial (spoke) bone	лучевая кость
radix, icis f	root	корень, корешок
ramus, i m	branch	ветвь
raphe, es f rraphe	seam, rraphe	шов (на мягких тканях)
reanimatio, onis f	resuscitation	реанимация
receptum, i n	prescription	рецепт
recessus, us m	recess	углубление, карман
recipe!	take!	возьми!
recipio, ere III	take	взять
rectalis, e	rectal	ректальный
rectificatus, a, um	rectified	очищенный
rectum, i n	rectum	прямая кишка
rectus, a, um	straight	прямой, правильный
regio, onis f	region	область
relatio medica	medical certificate, certificate of health	медицинское свидетельств
remedium, i n	remedy	средство
ren, renis m	kidney	почка
renalis, e	renal	почечный
repeto, ere III	repeat	повторять
resectio, onis f	resection, excision	резекция
respiratio, onis f	respiration, breathing	дыхание
respiratorius, a, um	respiratory	дыхательный
rete, is n	network	сеть, сетка
reticularis, e	reticular	ретикулярный
retina, ae f	retina	сетчатка
retinaculum, i n	retaining band	удерживатель
retromandibularis, e	retromandibular	позадиинжнечелюстной
retroperitonealis, e	retroperitoneal	забрюшинный
Rheum, i n	rhubarb	ревень
rhizoma, atis n	rhizome	корневище
rhomboideus, a, um	rhombic	ромбовидный
Ricinus, i m	castor-oil plant	клещевина
rima, ae f	slit	щель
Rosa, ae f	wild rose	роза, шиповник
rotator, oris m	rotator (muscle)	вращатель (мышца)
rotundus, a, um	round	круглый (отверстие)
ruber, bra, brum	red	красный
rubor, oris m	redness	покраснение
ruptura, ae f	rupture	разрыв
S		

Saccharum, i n	sugar	сахар
sacer, cra, crum	sacred	крестцовый (кость)
sacralis, e	sacral	крестцовый
sacroccocygeus, a, um	sacroccocygeal	крестцово-копчиковый
sagittalis, e	sagittal	сагиттальный (стреловидный)
sal, salis m	salt	соль
salicylas, atis m	salicylate	салицилат
salicylicus, a, um	salicylic	салициловый
Salvia, ae f	sage	шалфей
sanguineus, a, um	bloody	кровеносный, кровавый
sanguis, inis m	blood	кровь
sapo, onis m	soap	мыло
sarcoma, atis n	sarcoma	саркома
satis	enough	довольно, достаточно
scabies, ei f	scabies	чесотка
scalenus, a, um	scalenus (muscle)	лестничная мышца
scaphoideus, a, um	scaphoid	ладьевидный
scapula, ae f	shoulder blade	лопатка
scatula, ae f	box	коробка, коробочка
sceleton(um), i n	skeleton	скелет
secretum, i n	secretion	секрет
sectio, onis f	section	рассечение, вскрытие
sectio caesarea	c(a)esarean section	кесарево сечение
sectio legalis	post mortem, sectio legalis	судебно-медицинское вскрытие
secundarius, a, um	secondary	вторичный
secundus, a, um	the second	второй
sedativa (remedia), n/pl	sedatives	седативные, лекарственные средства
sella, ae f	saddle	седло
semen, inis n	seed, semen	семя, семенная жидкость
semicircularis, e	semicircular	полукружный
semilunaris, e	semilunar	полулунный, серповидный
senilis, e	senile	старческий
sensorius, a, um	sensory	чувствительный, сенсорный
sensus, us m	sense	чувство
septalis, e	septal	перегородочный
septem	seven	семь
septimus, a, um	the seventh	седьмой
septum, i n	partition	перегородка
serosus, a, um	serous	серозный

serotinus, a, um	late	поздний, запоздалый
serum, i n	serum	сыворотка
seu	or	или
sex	six	шесть
sextus, a, um	the sixth	шестой
siccus, a, um	dry	сухой
sigmoideus, a, um	sigmoid	сигмовидный
signatura, ae f	signature	сигнатура
simplex, icis	simple, easy	простой
singularis, e	singular	единственный
sinister, tra, trum	left	1. левый 2. неблагоприятный
sinus, us m	sinus	пазуха, синус
sirupus, i m	syrup	сироп
skeleton, i n	skeleton	скелет
solubilis, e	soluble	растворимый
solutio, onis f	solution	раствор
solutio Ammonii caustici	liquid ammonia	нашатырный спирт, раствор аммиака
solutus, a, um	dissolved, solute	растворённый
spasmolyticus, a, um	spasmolytic	спазмолитический
spatium, i n	space	пространство
species, ei f	tea	сбор (трав), чай
sphenoidalis, e	sphenoid	клиновидный
sphincter, eris m	sphincter (muscle)	сфинктер (мышца)
spina, ae f	spine	ость
spinalis, e	spinal	спинномозговой
spinosus, a, um	spinous, spinal	остистый
spirituosus, a, um	spirituous, alcoholic	спиртовой
spiritus, us m	alcohol	спирт, алкоголь
spissus, a, um	thick	густой
splanchna pl.	internal organs	внутренности
splen, splenis m	spleen	селезенка
spongiosus, a, um	spongy	губчатый
spritz-tubulus, i m	syrette	шприц-тюбик
squama, ae f	scale	чешуя
sqamosus, a, um	squamous	чешуйчатый
sub signo veneni, s.s.v.	under "poison" label	с обозначением (на этикетке) "яд!" сокр. в рецептах
stapes, edis m	stapes	стремя, стремени слуховая косточка
status, us m	state	положение, состояние
stenosis, is f	stenosis	стеноз, сужение

steriliso, are I	to sterilize	стерилизовать
sternocleidomastoideus, a, um	sternocleidomastoid	грудино-ключично-сосцевидный
sternocostalis, e	sternocostal	грудино-рёберный
sternohyoideus, a, um	sternohyoid *	грудино-подъязычный
sternothyreoides, a, um	sternothyroid *	грудино-щитовидный
sternum, i n	breast-bone	грудина
stoma, atis n	mouth, artificial opening	рот, уста, искусственное отверстие
stratum, i n	layer	слой
stroma, atis n	stroma	строма, остов
Strophanthinum, i n	strophanthine	строфантин
stylohyoideus, a, um	stylohypoglossal	шилоподъязычный
styloideus, a, um	styloid	шиловидный
stylopharyngeus, a, um	stylopharyngeal	шилоглоточный
sub (<i>with Acc., Abl.</i>)	under	под
subcarbonas, atis m	basic carbonate	основной карбонат
subcutaneus, a, um	subcutaneous	подкожный
subhepaticus, a, um	subhepatic	подпечёночный
subitus, a, um	sudden	внезапный, неожиданный
sublingualis, e	sublingual	подъязычный
submandibularis, e	submandibular	поднижнечелюстной
subnitras, atis m	basic nitrate	основной нитрат
subscapularis, e	subscapular	подлопаточный
substantia, ae f	substance	вещество
succus, i m	juice	сок
sulcus, i m	groove	борозда, бороздка
sulfas, atis m	sulphate	сульфат
Sulfur, uris n	sulphur	сера
supercilium, i n	eyebrow	бровь
superficialis, e	superficial	поверхностный
superficies, ei f	superficies	наружная поверхность
superior, ius	superior	верхний
supinatio, onis f	supination	супинация, поворот ладони вверх
supinator, oris m	supinator (muscle)	супинатор (мышца)
suppositorium, i n	suppository (pl suppositories)	суппозиторий, свеча
supra	over	над, выше, на
supraclavicularis, e	supraclavicular	надключичный
suprahyoideus, a, um	suprahyoid	надподъязычный
supraorbitalis, e	supraorbital	надглазничный
suprarenalis, e	suprarenal	надпочечный
supremus, a, um	the highest	самый высокий

suspensio, onis f	suspension	суспензия
sutura, ae f	suture	шов
sympathicus, a, um	sympathic	симпатический
Synoestrolum, i n	synestrol*	синэстрол
synovialis, e	synovial	синовиальный
systema, atis n	system	система
T		
tabes, is f	tabes	сухотка
tabuletta, ae f	tablet	таблетка
taenia, ae f	band	лента
Talcum, i n	talc	тальк
talocruralis, e	talocrural	голеностопный
talus, i m	ankle bone	таранная кость
tanninum, i n	tannin, tannins	танин
tarsus, i m	tarsus	предплюсна, хрящ века
tegmen, inis n	roof	покрышка, крыша
temporalis, e	temporal	височный
tempus, oris n	temple, time	висок, время
tendo, inis m	tendon	сухожилие
tenius, e	delicate	тонкий, нежный
tensor, oris m	tensor muscle	напрягающая мышца
teres, etis	round and long	круглый
ter in die	three times a day	три раза в день
terminalis, e	terminal	терминальный, конечный
terminatio, onis f	end	конец, окончание
tertius, a, um	third	третий
testis, is m	testicle	яичко, семенник
thalamus, i m	thalamus	таламус (зрительный бугор)
therapeutica, ae f	therapeutics	терапевтика, наука о лечении болезней, наука о терапии
therapia, ae f	therapy	терапия
thiosulfas, atis m	thiosulphate	тиосульфат
thoracicus, a, um	thoracic	грудной
thymus, i n	thymus	вилочковая железа
thorax, acis, m	chest	грудная клетка, грудь
thyreoides, a, um	thyroid	щитовидный
thyrohyoideus, a, um	thyrohyoid	щито-подъязычный
tibia, ae f	shin bone	большеберцовая кость
tibialis, e	tibial	большеберцовый
tinctura, ae f	tincture	настойка
tonica (remedia) n/pl	tonics	тонизирующие лекарственные средства

tonicus, a, um	tonic	тонизирующий
tonsilla, ae f	tonsil	миндалина
toxicus, a, um	toxic, poisonous	токсический, ядовитый
trachea, ae f	trachea	трахея
tractus, us m	tract	путь, тракт
transfusio, onis f	transfusion	переливание
transversus, a, um	transverse	поперечный
trauma, atis n	trauma	травма
tredecium	thirteen	тринадцать
tres, tria	three	три
triangularis, e	triangular	треугольный
triceps, cipitis	triceps (muscle)	трёхглавый
tricuspidalis, e	tricuspid	трёхстворчатый
trigeminus, a, um	trigeminal ([V cranial] nerve)	тройничный (нерв)
triginta	thirty	тридцать
Triticum, i n	wheat	пшеница
trochanter, eris m	trochanter	вертел
trochantericus, a, um	trochanteric	вертельный
trochlea, ae f	trochlea	блок
trochlearis, e	trochlear	блоковый, относящийся к блоку
trophicus, a, um	trophic	трофический
truncus, i m	trunk	туловище
tuba, ae f	tube	труба
tuber, eris n	tuber	бугор
tuberculum, i n	tubercle	бугорок
tuberositas, atis f	tuberosity	бугристость
tuberosus, a, um	tuberosus	бугристый
tubulus, i m	tubule	трубочка
tumor, oris m	tumour	опухоль
tunica, ae f	coat	оболочка
tussis, is f	cough	кашель
tympanicus, a, um	tympanic	барабанный
tympanum, i n	drum	барабан
U		
ulcerosus, a, um	ulcerative	язвенный
ulcus, eris n	ulcer	язва
ulna, ae f	elbow bone	локтевая кость
ulnaris, e	ulnar	локтевой
undecim	eleven	одиннадцать
undecimus, a, um	the eleventh	одиннадцатый
unguentum, i n	ointment	мазь
unguis, is m	nail	ноготь

unus, a, um	one	один
ureter, eris m	ureter	мочеточник
urethra, ae f	urethra	уретра
urethralis, e	urethral	уретральный
urinarius, a, um	urinary	мочевой
urogenitalis, e	genitourinary	мочеполовой
Urtica, ae f	nettle	крапива
uterinus, a, um	uterine	маточный
uterus, i m	uterus, womb	матка
uvula, ae f	uvula	язычок (небный)
V		
vagina, ae f	vagina, sheath	вагина
vaginalis, e	vaginal	вагинальный
vagus, a, um	vagus nerve (Xth cranial nerve)	блуждающий (нерв)
Valeriana, ae f	valerian	валериана
Valeriana officinalis	common [cat's] valerian, garden heliotrope	лекарственная
valetudo, inis f	health	здоровье
valva, ae f	valve	клапан (в целом)
valvula, ae f	valvule	заслонка, клапан
varicella, ae f	chicken-pox	варицелла, ветряная оспа
varices, m, f /pl	varicosis	варикозное расширение ве
varicosus, a, um	varicose	варикозный
variola, ae f	smallpox	натуральная оспа
varix, icis m, f	varix, varicose vein	варикозная вена
vas, vasis n	vessel	сосуд
vascularis, e	vascular	сосудистый
vena, ae f	vein	вена
venenum, i n	poison	яд
venosus, a, um	venous	венозный, венный
venter, tris m	abdomen, belly	брюшко (мышцы), брюхо
ventralis, e	1.ventral 2.abdominal	вентральный
ventricularis, e	ventricular	желудочковый
ventriculus, i m	ventricle	желудочек, желудок
venula, ae f	venule	маленькая вена
vermiformis, e	vermiform	червеобразный
vertebra, ae f	vertebra	позвонок
vertebralis, e	vertebral	позвоночный
vertex, icis m	crown of the head	темя, вершина
verto, ere III	turn	поворачивать
vesica, ae f	bladder	пузырь
vesica fellea, vesica	gallbladder	желчный пузырь

biliaris		
vesica urinaria	urinary bladder	мочевой пузырь
vesicula, ae f	vesicle	везикула, пузырек
vesicularis, e	vesicular	везикулярный
vesiculosus, a, um	vesiculose	везикулярный, пузырчатый
vestibularis, e	vestibular	преддверный, вестибулярный
vestibulum, i n	vestibule	преддверие
via, ae f	way	путь
viginti	twenty	двадцать
villus, i m	villus	ворсинка
vinculum, i n	band	связка
Viola, ae f	violet	фиалка
virus, i n	virus	яд, вирус
viscera, um n pl	viscera	внутренности, внутренние органы в брюшной полост
viscus, eris n	viscera	внутренность
vita, ae f	life	жизнь
vitaminum, i n	vitamin	витамин
vitrum, i n	test-tube	склянка, пробирка
vivus, a, um	alive	живой
volvulus, i m	twisted bowels	заворот кишок
vomer, eris m	plowshare	сошник
vortex, icis m	vortex (of heart)	завиток (сердца)
vulnus, eris n	wound	рана
X		
Xeroformium, i n	xeroform	ксероформ
Z		
zygoma, atis n	cheek bone	скула, скуловая кость
zygomaticus, a, um	zygomatic	скуловой

CLINICAL COMBINING FORMS LATIN-ENGLISH

A

abdomino-, laparo- = abdomen
acro-, -acria = limb
acromio- = acromion
adeno- = gland
-masto- = mammary gland
-pancreato- = pancreas
-parotido = parotid gland
-prostato- = prostate
-thymo- = thymus
-thyreo-, thyr(e)-oideo- = thyroid gland
adeno- = lymph node
-ganglio- = ganglion
aesthesio-, -aesthesia = sensitivity
aetio- = cause
aëro- = air
algo-, -algia, -algesia, -odynia = pain
allo- = other, different
andro-, andria = male
angio- = vessel
aniso- = unequal
anthropo- = human
aorto- = aorta
arterio- = artery
arthro- = joint
astheno-, -asthenia = weakness
auto- = self

B

bath(y)- = deep
bio- = life
blastus, blasto- = embryonic
blepharo- = eyelid
brachy- = short
brady- = slow
bary- = heavy
brachi- = shoulder

C

carcino-, carcinoma(at)o- = cancer
cardio-, -cardium = heart
cele = hernia

centesis = puncture
cephalo-, -cephalia, kephalo- = head
cervico-, trachelo- = cervix of uterus
cheilo-, -cheilia = lip
cheiro-, chiro, -cheiria = hand
chloro- = green; chlorine
chol-, -cholia = bile
chohangio- = bile duct
cholecysto- = gallbladder
cholecho- = common bile duct
chondro- = cartilage
chrom(at)o-, chromia = colour
chromo- = colouring
chrono- = time
clasia- = destruction
colpo-, vagino- = vagina
copro-, sterco- = feces
cox- = thigh
crino-, -crinia = secretion
cryo- = low temperature
cyano- = blue, cyanic
cysto- = bladder
-cholecysto- = gallbladder
cyt-, cyto- = cell
cytosis = increased amount (of blood cells)

D

dacryo- = tear
dacryocysto- = lacrimal sac
dactylo- = finger
derma, dermo-, dermat- = skin
desis = binding
dolicho- = elongated
dynamo-, -dynamia = force, power

E

ectasia, -ectasis = dilation
ectomia = excision
encephalo- = brain
entero- = intestine
-colo- = colon
-colo- = large intestine
-duodeno = duodenum
-entero- = small intestine
-ileo- = ileum

-jejuno- = jejunum
-procto- = rectum
-sigmoido- = sigmoid colon
-typhlo- = caecum
ergo-, -ergia = reactivity
erythro- = red
eu- = normal
euryasis = dilation of hollow organ

G

galacto- = milk
gastro-, -gastria = stomach
genio-, -genia = chin
genesis = development
genus = caused by, causing
ger(i)-, gero-, geronto- = senile
glosso-, -glossia = tongue
glyco-, gluco- = glucose
gnatho-, -gnathia = upper jaw
-genia = lower jaw
gnosia, -gnosis = knowledge
gono- = knee
gramma = record
graphia = recording
gyn(aec)o- = female

H

haemo-, haemato-, -aemia = blood
hemi- = half
hepato- = liver
hetero- = different
hidro- = sweat
hist(io)- = tissue
homeo- = same
hydro- = water
hystero-, metro-, -metra-, -metrium = uterus

I

iater- = physician
iatria-, -therapia = treatment
irido- = iris
iso- = equal
itis- = inflammation

K

kerato- = cornea
kinem(at)o-, kineto-, kinesis = movement

L

laparo- = abdomen
laryngo- = larynx
lepto- = soft
leuco- = white
lien-, spleno- = spleen
lipo- = fat
litho- = stone
logia = study
logo- = word
logo-, -lalia = speech
lymphaden- = lymph node
lymphangio- = lymph vessel
lympho-, chylo- = lymph
lysis = destruction
lyt-, -lysis = dissolution

M

macro- = large
malacia = softening
macro- = large
melo- = cheek
megal(o)-, -megalia, macro- = enlargement
melano- = dark, black
meningo- = meninges
 leptomeningo- = soft meninx
 -pachymeningo- = hard meninx
metr-, -metria = measuring
micro- = small
 -oligo- = scanty
mnesia- = memory
morpho- shape; form
myelo- = medullary substance
 -myelo- = spinal cord
 -osteomyelo- = bone marrow
myo-, -mysium = muscle

N

nephro-, nero- = kidney
noso- = disease
neo- = new
necro- = death

O

odonto-, -odontia = tooth
oligo- = insufficient
omphalo- = navel
onco-, -oma = tumour
onycho-, -onychial = nail
oophoro-, ovario- = ovary
oo- = ovum
op-, -opia, ophtalmo-, ophthalmia = eye
opsia = vision
orchid-, orchido-, -orchia, -orchidia = testicle
ortho- = straight
osis = condition
osteo- = bone
oto-, -otia = ear
oxia, oxy- = oxidation
oxy-, oxygenio- = oxygen

P

pachy- = thick
paedo- = child
pan-, panto- = whole, all
patho-, -pathia = disease
penia = decreased number
perineo- = perineum
peritoneo- = peritoneum
pexia = fixation
phaco-, -phakia = lens
phago-, -phagia = eating
pharmaco- = drug
pharyngo- = pharynx
philo-, -philia = predisposition to
phlebo- = vein
phobia = fear
phono-, -phonia = sound, voice
phreno-, psycho- = mind
phrenico- = diaphragmatic
plasia = development
plastica = plastic surgery
platy- = flat
plegia = paralysis
pneumo-, pneumono- = lung; air in organ
pnoë- = respiration
podo-, -podia = foot

poly- = multiple
poësis = formation
privus = deprived
procto- = anus
pseudo- = false
psycho- = mind
ptosis = prolapse
pyelo- = renal pelvis
pyloro- = pylorus
pyo- = pus
pyr(et)o- = fever

R

retino- = retina
rhachio- = spine
rhaphia = suturing
rhexis = rupture
rhino- = nose
rrhagia- = bleeding
rrhoea = discharge

S

salpingo- = tube
-salpingo- = fallopian tube
-salpingo- = Eustachian tube
schiso-, -schisis = cleft
sclero-, pachy- = hard
sclero- = white of eye
scopia- = visual examination
sialo-, -sialia = saliva
soma, somato- = body
spasmo- = spasm
sphygmo-, -sphygmia = pulse
splachno- = viscera
spondylo- = vertebra
stasis = control; arrest; congestion
steno-, stenosis = tightening
stetho- = chest
stom(at)o- = mouth
stomia - = placing a fistula

T

tachy- = fast
tensio = hydrostatic pressure
tel(e)o- = distant

teno- = tendon
thalamo- = thalamus
thermo-, -thermia = heat
thoraco- = chest
tomia = dissection
tomo- = layer
tono-, -tonia = tone; pressure
topo- = place; location
tox-, toxi(c)o- = poison(ous)
tracheo- = windpipe
tricho-, -trichia = hair
tropho-, -trophia = nourishment
tropo-, -tropia = affecting

U

ulo- = gum
urano- = palate
uretero- = ureter
uro-, -uresis, -uria = urination

X

xantho- = yellow
xero- = dry

ENGLISH-LATIN

A

abdomen = abdomino-, laparo-
acromion = acromio-
affecting = tropo-, -tropia
affixing = -pēxis, -pexia
air = aëro-
all = pan-, panto-
anus = procto-
aorta = aorto-
artery = arterio-

B

bile = chol-, -cholia
bile duct = cholangio-
binding = -desis
black = melano-
bladder = cysto-
bleeding = -rrhagia

blood = haemo-, haemato-, -aemia
blue = cyano-
body = soma, somato-
bone = osteo-
bone marrow = -osteomyelo-
brain = encephalo-

C

cancer = carcino-, carcinoma((at)o)-
cartilage = chondro-
cause = aetio-
caused by, causing = genus
cell = cyt-, cyto-, kytos
cervix of uterus = cervico-, trachelo-
cheek = melo-
chest = stetho-, thoraco-
chin = genio-, -genia
child = paedo-
cleft = schiso-, -schisis
colour = chrom(at)o-, -chromia
colouring = chromo-
common bile duct = choledocho-
condition = -osis
congestion = -stasis
control = -stasis
cornea = kerato-
cutting = -tomia
cyanic = cyano-

D

dark = melano-
death = necro-
decreased number (of blood cells) - penia
deep = bath(y)-
deprived = -privus
destruction = -clasia
destruction = -lysis
development = -genesis; -plasia
diaphragmatic = phrenico-
different = allo-; hetero-
dilation = -ectasia, -ectasis
dilation of hollow organ = -euryasis
discharge = -rrhoea
disease = noso-; patho-, -pathia
dissolution = lyt-, -lysis

dissection = -tomia
distant = tel(e)o- . tele-, telo-
drug = pharmaco-
dry = xero-

E

ear = oto-, -otia
eating = phago-, -phagia
elongated = dolicho-
embryonic = blastus, blasto-
enlargement = megal(o)-, -megalia, macro-
equal = iso-
examination = -scopia
excision = -ectomy
eye = op-, -opia, ophthalmo-, -ophthalmia
eyelid = blepharo-

F

false = pseudo-
fast = tachy-
fat = lipo-
fear = -phobia
female = gyn(aec)o-
feces = copro-, sterco-
fever = pyr(et)o-
finger = dactylo-
fixation = -pexia
flat = platy-
foot = podo-, -podia
force, power = dynamo-, -dynamia
formation = -poësis
formed, shaped = -plastos

G

gallbladder = cholecysto-
ganglion = ganglio-
gland = adeno-
- mammary gland = masto-
- pancreas = pancreato-
- parotid gland = parotido-
- prostate = prostato-
- thymus = thymo-
- thyroid gland = -thyreo-, thyr(e)(oideo)-
glucose = glyco-, gluco-
green = chloro-

gum = ulo-

H

hair = tricho-, -trichia

half = hemi-

hand = cheiro-, chiro-, -cheiria

hard = sclero-, pachy-

head = cephalo-, -cephalia, kephalo-

heart = cardio-, -cardium

heat = thermo-, -thermia

heavy = bary-

hernia = -cele

human = anthropo-

hydrostatic pressure = -tensio

I

incision = -tomia

increased amount (of blood cells) = -cytosis

indurated = sclero-, pachy-

inflammation = -itis

insufficient = oligo-

intestine = entero-

- large intestine = colo-

- caecum = typhlo-

- colon = colo-

- duodenum = duodeno-

- ileum = ileo-, -ileum

- jejunum = jejuno-

- rectum = procto-

- sigmoid colon = sigmoido-

- small intestine = entero-

iris = irido-

J

jaw: - lower jaw = -genia

- upper jaw = gnatho-, -gnathia

joint = arthro-

K

kidney = nephro-, reno-

knee = gono-

knowledge = -gnosia, -gnosis

L

lacrimal sac = dacryocysto-

large = macro-
larynx = laryngo-
layer = tomo-
lens = phaco-, -phakia
life = bio-
limb = acro-, -acria
lip = cheilo-, -cheilia
liver = hepato-
location = topo-
low temperature = cryo-
lung; air in organ = pneumo-, pneumono-
lymph = lympho-, chylo-
lymph node = adeno-
lymph node = lymphadeno-
lymph vessel = lymphangio-

M

male = andro-, -andria
measuring = metr-, -metria
medullary substance = myelo-
memory = -mnesia
meninges = meningo-
- soft meninx = leptomeningo-
- hard meninx = -pachymeningo-
milk = galacto-
mind = phreno-, psycho-
mouth = stom(at)o-
movement = kinem(at)o-, kineto-, -kinesia
multiple = poly-
muscle = myo-, -mysium

N

nail = onycho-, -onychia
navel = omphalo-
new = neo-
normal = eu-
nose = rhino-
nourishment = tropho-, -trophia

O

other = allo-
ovary = oophoro-, ovario-
ovum = oo-
oxidation = -oxia, oxy-
oxygen = oxy-, oxygenio-

P

pain = algo-, -algia, -algesia, -odynia
palate = urano-
paralysis = -plegia
perineum = perineo-
peritoneum = peritoneo-
pharynx = pharyngo-
physician = iater-
place = topo-
placing a fistula = -stomia
plastic surgery = -plastica
poison(ous) = toxo-, toxi(c)o-
predisposition to = philo-, -philia
pregnancy = cyēsis
pressure = tono-, -tonia
prolapse, a falling = -ptosis
pulse = sphygmo-, -sphygmia
puncture = centesis
pus = pyo-
pylorus = pyloro-

R

reactivity = ergo-, -ergia
record = -gramma
recording = -graphia
red = erythro-
renal pelvis = pyelo-
resemblance = -eidos
respiration = pnoë-
retina = retino-
rupture = -rhexis

S

saliva = sialo-, -sialia
same = homeo-
scanty = -oligo-
secretion = crino-, -crinia
self = auto-
senile = ger(i)-, gero-, geronto-
sensitivity = aesthesio-, -aesthesia
shape, form = morpho-
shaping = -plasia
short = brachy-
shoulder = brachi-

skin = derma, dermo-, dermato-
slow = brady-
small = micro-
soft = lepto-
softening = -malacia
sound, voice = phono-, -phonia
spasm = spasmo-
speech = logo-, -lalia
spinal cord = myelo-
spine = rhachio-
spleen = lieno-, spleno-
stomach = gastro-, -gastria
stone = litho-
straight = ortho-
study = -logia
suffering = pathos
suturing = raphia
sweat = hidro-
swallowing = phago-, -phagia

T

tear = dacryo-
tendon = teno-
testicle = orchid-, orchido-, -orchia, -orchidia
thalamus = thalamo-
thick = pachy-
thigh = cox-
tightening = steno-, -stenosis
time = chrono-
tissue = hist(io)-
tone = tono-, -tonia
tongue = glosso-, -glossia
tooth = odonto-, -odontia
treatment = -iatria, -therapia
tube = salpingo-
Eustachian tube = salpingo-
fallopian tube = salpingo-
tumour = onco-, -oma

U

unequal = aniso-
ureter = uretero-
urination = uro-, -uresis, -uria
uterus = hystero-, metro-, -metra-, -metrium

V

vagina = colpo-, vagino-

vein = phlebo-

vertebra = spondylo-

vessel = angio-

viscera = splanchno-

vision = -opsia

visual examination = -scopia-

W

water = hydro-

weakness = astheno-, -asthenia

white = leuco-

white of eye = sclero-

whole = pan-, panto-

windpipe = tracheo-

word = logo-

write = -grapho

Y

yellow = xantho-

APPENDIX

LATIN PROVERBS, QUOTATIONS AND MEDICAL PHRASES

- *A Deo rex, a rege lex* — "Of God the King, of the King the law". Attributed to [*James I of England*](#)
- *A mari usque ad mare* — "From sea to sea," motto of [*Canada*](#).
- *Ab esse ad posse* — "From being to knowing" from the existence of things one can make sure of their possibilities.
- *Ab Iove principium* — "Let's start with the most important [Jupiter]."
- *Abusus non tollit usum* — "Abuse is no argument against proper use", legal phrase meaning that just because something can be abused there is no reason for putting an end to its legitimate use
- *Acta est fabula* — "The fable is ended" ([*Augustus*](#)' last words)
- *Ad astra* — "To the stars," title of the magazine published by the [*National Space Society*](#).
- *Ad astra per aspera* — "To the stars through difficulties," motto of [*Kansas*](#). (More frequently as *per aspera ad astra*.)
- *Ad impossibilia nemo tenetur* — "Nobody must keep a commitment to do impossible things."
- *Adde parvum parvo manus acervus erit.* — "Add little to little and there will be a big pile" — [*Ovid*](#).
- *Aegroto dum anima est, spes est* — "As long as a sick person is conscious (or, has a good character, or reacts), there is still hope."
- *Amor patriae nostra lex* — "Love of the fatherland is our law."
- *Amor vincit omnia* — "Love conquers all."
- *Anamnesis morbi* – present case history
- *Anamnesis vitae.* – past history
- *Aquila non capit muscas.* — "An eagle doesn't hunt flies"
- *Ars est celare artem.* — "Art is to conceal art"
- *Ars gratia artis.* — "Art for art's sake," motto of [*Metro Goldwin Mayer*](#).

- ***Ars longa, vita brevis.*** — "Art is long, life is short." The [Latin](#) translation by [Horace](#) of a phrase from [Hippocrates](#), often used out of context. The art referred to in the original aphorism was the craft of medicine, which took a lifetime to acquire.
- ***Audaces fortuna iuvat.*** — "Luck helps those who are brave." ([Virgil](#), [Aeneis](#) 10,284)
- ***Audi, vide, tace, si tu vis vivere.*** — "Hear, see, be silent, if you wish to live."
- ***Audiatur et altera pars.*** — "Hear both sides." (a legal fairness principle).

B

- ***Beati pauperes spiritu.*** — "Lucky are those of a poor spirit" ([Vulgate](#), [Matthew](#) 3:5)
- ***Bene diagnoscitur, bene curatur.*** — "Something that is well diagnosed can be cured well."
- ***Bis dat, qui cito dat.*** — "He who gives quickly gives twice."
- ***Bona diagnosis, bona curatio.*** — "Good diagnosis, good cure."
- ***Bona valetudo melior est quam maximae divitiae.*** — "Good health is worth more than the greatest wealth."

C

- ***Casus extraordinarius*** - extraordinary case
- ***Casus ordinarius*** – ordinary case
- ***Cibi condimentum est fames*** — "Hunger is a spice for any meal."
- ***Civis romanum sum.*** — "I am a Roman" ([Cicero](#))
- ***Claude os, aperi oculos!*** — "Shut up and watch!"
- ***Cogito ergo sum*** — "I think, therefore I am." Argument used by [René Descartes](#) as proof of his own existence.
- ***Concordia salus.*** — "well-being through harmony."
- ***Consuetudinis vis magna est*** — "The power of habit is great."

- ***Consuetudo altera natura est*** — "Habit is second nature."
- ***Contra vim mortis non est medicamen in hortis*** — "There's no herb against the power of death."
- ***Contraria contrariis curantur*** — "Opposites are cured by their opposites."
- ***Cuiusvis hominis est errare*** — "Every human can err." ([Cicero](#))
- ***Cum recte vivis, ne cures verba malorum*** — "If you live properly, don't worry about what the evil ones say" ([Cato the younger](#))
- ***Cura te ipsum*** — "Cure thyself." An exhortation to [medical doctors](#) or experts in general.
- ***Cura, ut valeas!*** — "Take Care!"

D

- ***Damnant quod non intellegunt.*** — "They condemn what they do not understand."
- ***De gustibus non est disputandum.*** — "Matters of taste ought not to be disputed."
- ***De mortuis nihil nisi bene.*** — "Of the dead, nothing but good." I.e., "Say only good things about the dead"
- ***Deliriant isti Romani.*** — "They are mad, those Romans"; — [René Goscinny](#), [Asterix](#) and [Obelix](#) comic
- ***Deo Vindice*** — "[With] God as [our] protector" — motto of the [Confederate States of America](#).
- ***Deserta faciunt et pacem appellant*** - "They destroy everything and they call it peace." (Tacitus)
- ***Deus vult!*** — "God wills it!," slogan of the [Crusades](#).
- ***Divide et impera*** — "[Divide and govern](#)". Attributed to [Julius Caesar](#).
- ***Docendo discimus*** — "We learn by teaching" ([Seneca](#))
- ***Dominus Illuminatio Mea*** — "The Lord is my light," motto of [Oxford University](#).

- ***Donec eris felix multos numerabis amicos.*** — "As long as you're happy, you'll have many friends." ([Ovid](#), *Tristia* I,9,5)
- ***Dosis facit venenum*** — "It is the dose that makes the poison."
- ***Dosis pro cursu*** – dose for the course of treatment
- ***Dosis pro die*** – daily dose
- ***Dosis pro dosi*** – single dose
- ***Draco dormiens nunquam titillandus*** — "Never tickle a sleeping dragon," motto of [Hogwarts](#) School in the [Harry Potter](#) novels by [J. K. Rowling](#).
- ***Dulce enim etiam nomen est pacis.*** "The name 'peace' is sweet itself."
- ***Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori.*** "It is sweet and honorable to die for the fatherland." By [Horace](#), *Odes* III, 2, 13
- ***Dum spiro, spero.*** — "As long as I breathe, I hope."
- ***Duo cum faciunt idem, non est idem*** — "When two do the same, it isn't the same"
- ***Duobus litigantibus, tertius gaudet.*** — "While two men argue, the third one rejoices."
- ***Dura lex, sed lex.*** — "The law is harsh, but it is the law."
- ***Dura necessitas.*** — "Necessity is harsh."

E

- ***E fructu arbor cognoscitur.*** — "The tree can be recognized by its fruits."
- ***[Errare humanum est.](#) Perseverare diabolicum.*** — "To err is human. To persist in error is of the Devil." ([Seneca](#))
- ***Et ipsa scientia potestas est.*** — "And knowledge itself, is power" ([Francis Bacon](#), *Meditationes sacræ*)
- ***Ex astris, Scientia*** — "From the stars, Knowledge" (the motto of Starfleet Academy in [Star Trek](#))
- ***Ex nihilo nihil fit*** — "Nothing comes from nothing" (you need to work for something; also the [Conservation Law](#) in philosophy and modern science). ([Lucretius](#))

- ***Ex oriente lux*** — "From the East [comes] the light [i.e. culture]"
- ***Exegi monumentum aere perennius*** — "I have built a monument more durable than bronze." ([Horace](#)).
- ***Exitus lethalis*** – mortal outcome

F

- ***Festina lente !*** — "Make haste slowly" (i.e. proceed quickly but with caution, a motto of [Augustus Caesar](#)).
- ***Fiat justitia et pereat mundus*** — "Let justice be done, though the world perish" ([Ferdinand I](#))
- ***Fiat lux*** — "Let there be light."
- ***Fluctuat nec mergitur*** — "Shaken by the waves, but it will not sink" (inscription on [Paris](#)' coat of arms).
- ***Fortasse erit, fortasse non erit*** — "Maybe it will be, maybe it will not"

G

- ***Gloria victis.*** — "Glory to the defeated."
- ***Graeca sunt, non leguntur*** — "It is [Greek](#) [and] isn't read". Something incomprehensible that is skipped.
- ***Graecia capta ferum victorem cepit, et artes intulit agresti Latio*** — "Captive Greece captured her ferocious victor, and brought the arts into the rustic Latium" ([Horace](#)'s "Epistulae")
- ***Gratis*** – free of charge
- ***Gutta cavat lapidem [non vi, sed saepe cadendo].*** — "A drop drills the rock [not with force but by falling repeatedly]." ([Ovid](#), *Epistulae ex Ponto*)
- ***Gutta cavat lapidem non bis, sed saepe cadendo; sic homo fit sapiens bis non, sed saepe legendo.*** — "A drop drills a rock by falling not twice, but many times; so too is a human made smart by reading not two, but many books" ([Giordano Bruno](#)).

H

- *Habitus aegroti* – “The patient’s outward appearance”
- *Hic locus est, ubi mors gaudet succurrere vitae* – “This is the place where death helps life” (that is, the mortuary)
- *Hodie mihi, cras tibi.* — “What’s to me today, tomorrow to you.”
- *Homines quod volunt credunt.* — “Men believe what they want to.” ([Julius Caesar](#))
- *Homo homini lupus est.* — “Man is a wolf to man.” [Thomas Hobbes](#)
- *Homo proponit, sed Deus disponit* — “Man proposes, God disposes.” ([Thomas à Kempis](#))
- *Homo sum, humani nihil a me alienum puto.* — “I am human, so nothing that is human is foreign to me.” ([Terence](#))
- *Honores mutant mores.* — “Honors change behavior”
- *Hora incerta, mors certa* — “Hour uncertain, death certain”
- *Hygiena amica valetudinis* – “Hygiene is a friend of health”.

I

- *Ignorantia iuris nocet* — “Being ignorant of law harms.”
- *Ignorantia legis non excusat* — “Ignorance of the law is no excuse.”
- *Ignoti nulla cupido* — “The unknown does not tempt.”
- *In dubio pro reo* — “When in doubt, in favour of the accused”. ([Corpus Juris Civilis](#))
- *In statu praesente* – “In the present condition”.
- *In statu quo ante* – “In the same condition as before”.
- *In vino veritas.* — “There is truth in wine.” That is, “Wine will bring out truth.”
- *Infinitus est numerus stultorum* — “Infinite is the number of fools” ([Vulgate, Ecclesiastes 1:15](#)).
- *Ira furor brevis est.* — “Anger is a short rage” ([Horace](#)).

- ***Iura novat curia.*** — "The law is known to the court." Legal principle (e.g. in [Germany](#)) that says lawyers are not to argue the law because that is the office of the court.
- ***Iustitia omni auro carior.*** — "Justice is more precious than all gold."

J

- ***Justitia omnibus.*** — "Justice for all.", motto of the [District of Columbia](#).

L

- ***Labor omnia vincit.*** — "Work conquers all things." Motto of the State of [Oklahoma](#)
- ***Laborare est orare.*** — "To work is to pray." A common school motto.
- ***Libertati viam facere.*** — "Making a road to freedom."

M

- ***Mala herba cito crescit*** — "Weeds grow fast."
- ***Manus manum lavat*** — "One hand washes the other."
- ***Mater artium necessitas.*** — "Necessity is the mother of invention" ([Apuleius](#))
- ***Maxima debetur puero reverentia*** — "One owes the greatest possible care for the child" ([Juvenal](#))
- ***Medica mente, non medicamentis*** – "Cure with your knowledge rather than drugs".
- ***Medice, cura te ipsum*** – "Doctor, cure yourself".
- ***Medicus curat, natura sanat*** — "The doctor cares [for his patient], nature heals [him]." or "Doctor cures, nature saves"
- ***Memento mori.*** — "Remember your mortality." Also, ironically, "Remember to die." it is the motto of the Friars of Trappa.
- ***Mens agitat molem*** — "Minds move mountains" (The motto of the [University of Oregon](#) and the [Eindhoven University of Technology](#)).

- ***Mens sana in corpore sano*** — "Healthy mind in healthy body."

N

- ***Natura abhorret vacuum.*** — "Nature abhors a vacuum."
- ***Natura non facit saltum, ita nec lex.*** — "Nature makes no leaps, and neither does the law".
- ***Naturalia non sunt turpia*** — "Natural things are not shameful"
- ***Nemo iudex in causa sua.*** — "No-one is a judge in his own case".
- ***Nemo me impune lacessit.*** — "No-one attacks me with impunity," the Scots national motto.
- ***Neque ignorare [medicum] oportet quae sit aegri natura.*** — "Nor does it behoove [the doctor] to ignore the sick man's temperament." A. Cornelius Celsus, 'De Medicina'.
- ***Nil admirari*** — "To not admire anything" you shouldn't let yourself be taken away by anything ([Horace](#))
- ***Nomen est omen.*** — "A name is an omen."
- ***Nomina sunt odiosa*** — "Names are odious" ([Cicero](#))
- ***Non bis in idem.*** — "Not twice in the same (matter)." Legal principle forbidding [Double jeopardy](#).
- ***Non fui, fui, non sum, non curo.*** — "I was not, I was, I am not, I don't care." (found on [tombstones](#) abbreviated NFFNSNC)
- ***Non nobis solum nati sumus*** — "We are not born for ourselves alone"
- ***Non scholae, sed vitae discimus.*** — "We don't learn for school but for life."
- ***Non ut edam vivo, sed ut vivam edo.*** — "I don't live to eat, but I eat to live."
- ***Non vestimentum virum ornat, sed vir vestimentum.*** — "Not the raiment graces the man, but the man the raiment."
- ***Nosce te ipsum!*** — "Know thyself!" ([Cicero](#), from the Greek *gnōthi seauton*, on the [Temple of Apollo](#) at [Delphi](#)).
- ***Nulla dies sine linea.*** — "No day without a line."

- ***Nulla est medicina sine lingua Latina.*** — "No medicine without Latin."
- ***Nulla poena sine lege*** — "No punishment without a law."
- ***Nulla regula sine exceptione.*** — "No rule without exception."
- ***Nulla res tam necessaria est quam medicina.*** — "Nothing is so necessary as medicine."
- ***Nunc aut nunquam*** — "Now or never"

O

- ***Oculi plus vident quam oculus.*** — "Several eyes see more than only one."
- ***Omne vivum ex ovo*** — "Everything living comes from the egg"
- ***Omnia mea mecum porto.*** — "All that's mine I carry with me."
- ***Omnia vincit amor*** — "Love conquers all" More fully, *Omnia vincit amor, nos et cedamus amori*: "Love conquers all, let us too yield to love" ([Virgil](#), *Eclogues* 10:69).
- ***Omnium artium medicina nobilissima est.*** — "Medicine is the noblest of all arts."
- ***Optimum medicamentum quies est.*** — "Peace is the best medicine."
- ***Ora et labora.*** — "Pray and work." ([Benedictine](#) motto)

P

- **[Pacta sunt servanda.](#)** — "Agreements must be honoured."
- ***Pax melior est quam iustissimum bellum.*** — "Peace is better than the most just war."
- ***Per ardua ad astra.*** — "Through hardship to the stars" (motto of the [Royal Air Force](#) and [Royal New Zealand Air Force](#) and [Royal Australian Air Force](#)).
- ***Per aspera ad astra.*** — "Through hardships to the stars" (motto of [NASA](#)) from [Seneca](#).
- ***Per fas et nefas.*** — "With right and wrong" by any means necessary
- ***Per scientiam ad salutem aegroti.*** — "To heal the sick through knowledge."

- *Per vias naturales* – “(Delivery) through natural passages”.
- *Periculum in mora* — “[There’s] danger in delay” ([Livy](#))
- *Plenus venter non studet libenter.* — “A full belly doesn’t like studying.”
- *Post cenam non stare sed mille passus meare.* — “Do not rest after dinner, but walk a mile.”
- *Post hoc non est propter hoc.* — “‘After this’ is not ‘because of this’.”
- *Post partum* – “After delivery”.
- *Potius sero quam nunquam* — “Better late than never” ([Livy](#))
- *Praesente medico nihil nocet.* — “In the presence of a doctor nothing can harm.”
- *Praevenire melius est quam praeveniri.* — “It is better to precede than to be preceded.”
- *Primum ego, tum ego, deinde ego.* — “First I, then I, thereafter I.” (The author of this confident statement, a Roman emperor, will be added soon!)
- [Primum noli nocere](#) — “First, do no harm” (often falsely attributed to the [Hippocratic Oath](#)).
- *Pro analysi* – “For analysis”.
- *Pro auctore seu pro me* – “For the author or for myself” (when the doctor makes out a prescription for himself).
- *Prognosis optima (pessima)* – “Favourable (unfavourable) prognosis”.
- *Pulvis et umbra sumus* — “We are dust and shadow” ([Horace](#), *Carmina*, Book IV, 7, 16).

Q

- *Qualis rex, talis grex* — “Like king, like people”
- *Quem dii oderunt, paedagogum fecerunt.* — “Whom the gods hated, they made them pedagogues”
- *Qui dormit non peccet.* — “He who sleeps does not sin”
- *Qui rogat, non errat.* — “Who asks isn’t wrong.”
- *Qui scribit, bis legit.* — “Who writes, reads twice.”

- ***Qui tacet consentit*** — "He who is silent, agrees"
- ***Quidquid discis, tibi discis*** — "Whatever you learn, you learn it for yourself."
- ***Quidquid latine dictum sit, altum viditur.*** — "Anything said in Latin sounds profound."
- ***Quod medicina aliis, aliis est acre venenum.*** — "One person's medicine is another's foul poison."
- ***Quod nocet, saepe docet*** — "That which harms, often brings a benefit"
- ***Quod non est in actis, non est in mundo.*** — "What is not in the documents does not exist"
- ***Quot capita, tot sententiae.*** — "As many opinions as people."

R

- ***Radix malorum est cupiditas*** — "Greed is the root of all evil." (theme of the Pardoner's Tale from the [Canterbury Tales](#))
- ***Repetitio est mater studiorum.*** — "Repetition is the mother of study."
- ***Restitutio ad integrum*** – "Recovery to the initial healthy state".
- ***Risus abundat in ore stultorum*** — "Laughs are plentiful in the mouth of the foolish."
- ***Romani ite domum*** — "Romans Go Home!" [Monty Python's Life of Brian](#)

S

- ***Saepe morborum gravium exitus incerti sunt.*** — "The effects of serious illnesses are often unknown."
- ***Salus aegroti suprema lex.*** — "The well-being of the patient is the most important law."
- ***Salus populi suprema lex esto*** — "Let the welfare of the people be the supreme law" (motto of the [U.S. state of Missouri](#)).
- ***[Sapere aude](#)*** — "Dare to be wise."
- ***Scio me nihil scire*** — "I know that I know nothing" ([Socrates](#))

- ***Si quaeris peninsulam amoenam circumspice*** — "If you seek a pleasant peninsula, look about you" (the motto of the [U.S. state](#) of [Michigan](#)).
- ***Si tacuisses, philosophus mansisses.*** — "If you had kept your silence, you would have stayed a philosopher."
- ***Si vis pacem, para bellum.*** — "If you want peace, prepare for war."
([Vegetius](#)) ***Si vis pacem, para iustitiam.*** — "If you want peace, prepare justice."
- ***Sic Deus pro nobis, quis contra nos?*** — "If God is with us, who can be against us", ([Vulgate](#), [Romans](#) 8:31)
- ***Sic gorgiamus allos subjectatos nunc*** — "We gladly feast on those who would subdue us" (motto of [The Addams Family](#)).
- ***Sic semper tyrannis*** — "Thus always to tyrants" (motto of the [U.S. state](#) of [Virginia](#); attributed to assassin [Brutus](#), perhaps [John Wilkes Booth](#) also).
- ***Sic transit gloria mundi*** — "Thus passes the glory of the world." In Bible; also, during papal coronations, a barefoot monk interrupts the procession three times, holding a burning tow, and after it goes out says "Pater sancte (Holy Father), sic transit gloria mundi" — to remind the new Pope that, despite the grand procession, he is still a mortal man.
- ***Similia similibus curantur.*** — "Like cures like." ([Samuel Hahnemann](#), founder of [homeopathy](#)).
- ***Situs viscerum inversus*** – "Inverse position of internal organs".
- ***Sol lucet omnibus*** — "The sun shines for everyone"
- ***Soli Deo gloria*** — "Glory to God alone"
- ***Statim!*** – "Immediately! (Urgently!)".
- ***Status communis*** – "General state (of the patient)".
- ***Status praesens aegroti*** – "The patient's present condition".
- ***Sunt facta verbis difficiliora*** — "Works are harder than words." i.e. "Easier said than done."
- ***Suum cuique*** — "To each what he deserves"

T

- ***Tarde venientibus ossa.*** — "For those who come late, only the bones."
- ***Tempora mutantur et nos mutamur in illis.*** — "The times are changed, and we are changed in them." ([John Owen](#))
- ***Teneo te, Africa!*** — "I have you, Africa!" Svetonius attributes this to [Caesar](#), when the emperor was on the African coast.
- ***Tres faciunt collegium.*** — "Three makes a company."

U

- ***Ubi bene, ibi patria*** — "Where one feels good, there is one's country."
- ***Ubi concordia, ibi victoria.*** — "Where there is harmony, there is victory."
- ***Ubi dubium, ibi libertas.*** — "Where there is doubt, there is freedom."
- ***Ubi fumus, ibi ignis.*** — "Where there's smoke, there's fire."
- ***Una hirundo non facit ver*** — "One swallow doesn't make spring"
- ***Usus magister est optimus.*** — "Practice makes perfect."
- ***Ut ameris, amabilis esto.*** — "Be amiable, then you'll be loved."
- ***Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas*** — "Even if the powers are missing, the will deserves praise" ([Ovid](#))
- ***Ut sementem feceris, ita metes.*** — "You'll reap what you sow." ([Cicero](#), "De oratore")

V

- ***Vae Victis*** — "Woe to the conquered." Attributed by [Livy](#) to the chief of the [Gauls](#) as they sacked Rome in [390 BC](#).
- ***Vanitas vanitatum et omnia vanitas*** — "Vanity of vanities and everything is vanity." ([Vulgate](#), [Ecclesiastes](#) 1:2)
- ***Vasa vana plurimum sonant*** — "Empty pots make the most noise"
- ***Verba docent, exempla trahunt.*** — "Words instruct, illustrations lead."
- ***Verba volant, scripta manent.*** — "Words fly, written stays."

- ***Victrix causa diis placuit sed victa Catoni*** — "The victorious cause was pleasing to the Gods, but the lost cause to Cato" ([Lucanus](#), *Pharsalia* 1, 128) (Dedication on the south side of the Confederate Memorial at [Arlington National Cemetery](#))
- ***Video meliora proboque deteriora sequor*** — "I see the better and acknowledge it, but I follow the worse" ([Ovid](#))
- ***Vincit Omnia Veritas*** — "Truth Conquers All"
- ***Vis medicatrix naturae*** – "Nature's salutary power".
- ***Vox populi, vox dei.*** — "The voice of the people is the voice of God."
- ***Vulpes pilum mutat, non mores!*** — "A fox may change its skin but never its character" ([Suetonius](#))

COMPREHENSIVE TABLE OF DECLENSIONS

Nouns						Adjectives					
Declen- sion	Gen-der	Nom. sing.	Gen. sing.	Nom. pl	Gen pl.	Group	Gen-der	Nom. sing.	Gen. sing.	Nom. pl	Gen pl.
I	f	-a	-ae	-ae	-arum	1 st Superlative Degree (I-II decl.)	m	-us, -er	-i	-i	-orum
							f	-a	-ae	-ae	-arum
II	<div>m n</div>	<div>-us, -er -um, -on</div>	-i	<div>-i -a</div>	-orum		n	-um	-i	-a	-orum
III	m	-os, -or, -o -er, -ex, -es	-is	-es	-um	2nd (III decl.)	m, f	-is, -x, -s <i>etc.</i>	-is	-es -ia	-ium
	f	-s, -x, -do -go, -io			<i>or</i>		n	-e, -x, -s <i>etc.</i>			
	n	-en, -us, -ur, -ma, -l, -ut -e, -al, -ar		<div>-a -ia</div>	-ium						
IV	m	-us	-us	-us	-uum	Comparative Degree (III decl.)	m, f	-ior	-ioris	-iores	-iorum
	n	-u		-ua			n	-ius		-iora	
V	f	-es	-ei	-es	-erum						

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. **Arnaudov G.D.** Terminologia Medica Polyglota (Latinum – Русский – English – Français – Deutsch) – Editio Medicina et Physcultura. – Sofia, Bulgaria, 1979 – 943 p.
2. **Hornby A.S.** Advanced Learner's Dictionary. Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1995.
3. **Англо-русский биологический словарь.** Ок. 70 000 терминов – 7-е изд., стереотип. / О.И. Чибисова и др. – М.: РУССО, 2000 – 736 с.
4. **Англо-русский медицинский словарь.** Ок. 70 000 терминов / Акжигитов Г.Н., Бенюмович М.С., Чикорин А.К. – 3-е изд., исп. – М.: РУССО, 1996 – 608 с.
5. **Англо-русский медицинский энциклопедический словарь:** Гл. ред. А.Г. Чучалин, науч. ред. Э.Г. Улумбеков, О.К. Поздеев – М.: ГЭОТАР, 1995 – 717 с.
6. **Большой русско-английский медицинский словарь.** Ок. 70 000 терминов. – М.: РУССО, 2001. – 704 с.
7. **Годман А., Пейн ЕМФ** Толковый словарь английской научной лексики. – М.: Рус. яз., 1987 – 728 с.
8. **Чабнер Д.-Э.** Язык медицины. Пособие по английскому языку для медицинских вузов = The Language of Medicine. – М.: Высш. школа, 1981 – 431 с.
9. **Чернявский М.Н.** Латинский язык и основы медицинской терминологии: Учебник. – М.: Медицина, 2002. – 336 с.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction	4
Section 1. Anatomy Terms.	
Unit 1. Phonetics: The Latin Alphabet. Orthography. Pronunciation	8
Unit 2. Syllables. Accent	21
Unit 3. Declensions of Nouns	30
Unit 4. Adjectives	49
Unit 5. Comparison of Adjectives	57
Unit 6. Numerals	64
Unit 7. Third Declension of Nouns: Masculine Nouns	75
Unit 8. Feminine Nouns of III Declension	91
Unit 9. Neuter Nouns of III Declension	96
Unit 10. Nominative Plural	101
Unit 11. Genitive Plural	108
Section II. Clinical Terms	113
Unit 1. Term Building. Clinical Terms	113
Unit 2. Compound Words	125
Unit 3. Suffixes –ōsis, -īasis, -ītis, -ōma, -īsmus in Clinical Terms	134
Unit 4. Word Building: Prefixation	143
Unit 5. Revision	149
Unit 6. Combining Forms Designating Functional and Pathological Processes	155
Unit 7. Combining Forms Designating Various Properties, Qualities and Relations	163
Unit 8. Revision	172
Section III. Pharmaceutical Terminology	176
Unit 1. Drug Names. Standards	176
Unit 2. Verbs: Conjugation of the Verb	186
Unit 3. Accusative and Ablative Cases. Prepositions. Basic Rules of Prescription Format	198
Unit 4. Chemical Nomenclature. Names of Chemical Elements. Acids	209
Unit 5. Chemical Nomenclature. Oxide and Salt Names	217
Unit 6. Common Abbreviations in Prescription. Chemical Combining Forms	224
Unit 7. Revision	232
English-Latin Glossary	236
Latin-English Glossary	270
Clinical Combining Forms	304
Appendix: Latin Proverbs, Quotations and Medical Phrases	318
Comprehensive Table of Declensions	332
Bibliography	333